

CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



FROM

The Estate of G.L.Burr



The original of this book is in the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in the United States on the use of the text.

STUDIES

IN

AMERICAN HISTORY.

BY

MARY SHELDON BARNES, A.B.,

FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF MISTORY IN WELLESLEY COLLEGE, AND TEACHER OF HISTORY IN OSWEGO NORMAL SCHOOL, N.Y., AUTHOR OF SHELDON'S "STUDIES IN GENERAL HISTORY,"

AND

EARL BARNES, M.S.,

PROFESSOR OF THE HISTORY AND ART OF EDUCATION IN THE LELAND STANFORD
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY; FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF HISTORY IN
TRE UNIVERSITY OF INDIANA.

BOSTON, U.S.A.:
D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS.
1891.

--->o**>o**:co----

COPYRIGHT, 1891, BY MARY SHELDON BARNES.

TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON.
PRESSWORK BY BERWICK & SMITH, BOSTON.

A WORD TO THE TEACHER.

This book is meant for somewhat younger pupils than the Studies in General History; but it is based upon the same simple principle,—namely, to train the pupil to think for himself, and enter into living sympathy with others, by giving him as material for his work, Historical Sources,—that is, the first original records of the eye-witnesses, actors, and makers of each period he studies.

These sources or records consist of the mass of traditions, books, manuscripts, papers, relics, monuments, and institutions in which a generation embodies itself for all time. From these sources all historical judgments in the past have been drawn, and to them all historical judgments in the future must appeal. What is more to our purpose, it is only by dealing with the sources of past history, that our pupils can be rightly trained to deal with the historic sources of his own time, and to form independent and unprejudiced judgments concerning the mass of opinions, actions, institutions, and social products of all sorts in which he finds himself involved. In other words, whatever else our young people will become, citizens they must be; and the citizen must constantly form judgments of the historical sort, which can only be based upon contemporary sources. To enable him to do this should perhaps be the primary aim of the study of history. But to present the sources of our past in so small a book as this, seems at first sight an impossible task, and indeed would be so, were it not that out of the mass of the records of the past, whether written, monumental, or institutional, there are always some which stand as types, and which remain forever the open sesame to our first understanding of the generation to which they belong. Such types are the sermons of the Mathers, the Declaration of Independence, the songs of the Civil War. From such types one must get his first general view, his first large judgment of the time. Such types from the sources we have tried to bring together here as an introduction to the understanding of the evolution and character of our people and time.

To these types, then, as to the first bases of true historical judgment, we would bring the fresh mind at once, and let the pupil, from the first, come into the closest possible sympathy with the thought and feeling of the time he tries to understand. Nothing can effect this like the source. Not the most brilliant pages of Parkman's great work on the Jesuits can give that direct contact which one feels in reading the *Relations* of the Fathers themselves.

Not only is there this dramatic advantage, as we may call it, in the use of the source, but it has the further advantage of giving historic training from the very start. In using the sources, the pupil must do his own feeling and thinking; no one tells him that Drake was a pirate, or that the last days of Columbus were pathetic and bitter with ingratitude; he has the chance to see these things for himself; his opinions are formed, his sympathies aroused, by the nearest possible contact with the man and the deed.

In this way, the use of the source has a vast advantage over the mere reading of a narrative. The use of the source means the use of one's faculties upon it, and beside it the reading of a narrative is but passive work. In the latter case, the work is already done; the sources alone give one a chance to *study* history rather than to read it, and to interpret it according to the light of his own time. The narrative is like a painted curtain before the drama of life which you behold in the sources. But in that very drama we must train our children to play their part.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

A Word to the Teacher	P. iii
Group I. — Geography before Columbus: 1000 b.c1492 a.d.	
1. What the ancients knew about geography	
2. Sagas of the North	
3. Marco Polo	
4. List of important events connected with the development	
of geography, 1000 a.d1492 a.d	
GROUP II. — THE AGE OF DISCOVERY: 1492-1607.	
1. Christopher Columbus	
2. Columbus' great discovery	
3. Three famous voyages: John Cabot; Vasco da Gama;	
Columbus 	
4. Spaniards in Florida: De Soto; the founding of St. Angus-	
tine	
5. Spanish monks in the new world: Las Casas; Father	
Marco	
6. Three English captains: Drake; Frobisher; Raleigh	
7. List of important voyages and enterprises, 1492–1607 .	
GROUP III THE AGE OF PLANTATION: 1607-1763.	
1. Indian life and remains	
2. The planting of Jamestown; or, the beginnings of Virginia,	
3. Samuel de Champlain; or, the beginnings of Canada .	
4. The Pilgrim Fathers; or, the beginnings of New England.	
5. The beginnings of New York, Rhode Island, and Maryland,	
6. The opening of the region of the Great Lakes	
7. English colonial governments; Virginia and New England,	
8. King Philip's War and Bacon's Rebellion	
9. The opening of the Mississippi Valley	
10. The beginning of Pennsylvania and Georgia	

			PAGE
11. The New England Charters			96
12. The English over the Alleghanies; or, the causes		he	
French and Indian War			101
13. The French and Indian War on the Western from	tier		105
14. French and Indian War; siege of Quebec .			109
15. On the new frontier			118
16. List of important events during the Age of Plan	ıtatic	n,	
1607-1763			118
~			
GROUP IV. — REVOLUTIONARY RECORDS: 1763-1783.			
1. Colonial merchants and captains	•	•	126
2. English laws on colonial commerce	•	•	131
3. The Stamp Act			134
4. From the Stamp Act to the Boston Tea-party.	•	•	139
5. The United Colonies	٠	•	144
6. Lexington and Concord	•	•	148
7. The siege of Boston	٠	•	152
8. The Declaration of Independence		•	158
9. The Tories		. •	163
10. Second and third years of the war; with Washin	gton	in	
the Jerseys	•	•	166
11. Third year of war; Burgoyne's invasion.	•	•	170
12. Foreign relations; Franklin; Lafayette			178
13. The Revolution in the West; Boone and Clark			177
14. Last years of the war; Arnold; the heroes of	Kin	g's	101
Mountain	•	•	181
15. Yorktown and peace		•	185
16. List of important events of the Revolutionary per	iod	•	190
GROUP V. — THE GROWTH OF LAND AND STATE: 1783-	1950		
	1000	•	100
1. The Confederation; troubles and opinions .	•	•	196
2. The North-west Territory; government and life	•	•	199
3. The making of the Constitution, 1787 4. The new Constitution	•	•	208
4. The new Constitution	•	•	207
6. The Louisiana purchase	•	•	211
7. Trade and life in the thirteen original states .	•	•	215
8. Trade and life in the new states and territories	•	•	220 225
o. Trade and the in the new states and territories			1.15

		٠	
v	7	1	
٠	*	•	

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
9. Troubles with England, and beginning of War of 18	12 . 229
10. War of 1812 continued	. 233
11. Threats to the Union	. 237
12. Threats to the Union; the slavery question	. 241
13. Trade and life from 1815-1840; local pictures .	\sim 245
14. Trade and life from 1815-1840; country in general	. 250
15. The Oregon question and the Oregon trail	
16. The Spanish West	. 261
17. The Mexican War; or, the winning of the Spanish W	
18. The Mexican War; invasions of Mexico, 1846-1847	. 272
19. Gold in California	. 276
20. List of leading events from 1783-1850	. 281
GROUP VI. — CIVIL CONFLICT.	
1. The Fugitive Slave Law in the Senate; Clay, Calh	oun,
Webster, Seward	. 291
2. The Fugitive Slave Law in execution; Frederick De	
lass; Jerry	. 299
3. The struggle for Kansas	
4. John Brown in Kansas; at Harper's Ferry	
5. Trade and life in the 50's; Cotton is King6. The election of Lincoln and the secession of South C	. 308
	. 314
	. 318
7. The question of the hour	. 322
8. The formation of the Confederacy	
9. The first shot and the call to arms, North and So	
10. The first year of the war; special study on Bull Run	
the Blockade	
11. The second year of the war; special study on the M mac and Monitor and the fall of New Orleans	
12. The war and the slave; emancipation and the contrab	
13. The third year of the war; Gettysburg and Vicksburg	
	348
14. War pictures	. 354
15. The last campaigns: Sherman's march 16. The last campaigns: Before Richmond	
	. 362
18. End of the war	
19. List of leading events from 1849-1809	. 5/0

						PAG
GROUP VII. — THE COMPLETE	D Uni	on:				
1. Settlement of war ques	stions					370
2. The Indian question						381
3. The immigrant .						386
4. The New South .						390
5. The Great West .						394
6. The questions of to-day	v .					39
7. List of leading events	from 1	865-	1891			40
· ·						
LIST OF AUTHORITIES			_	_		40

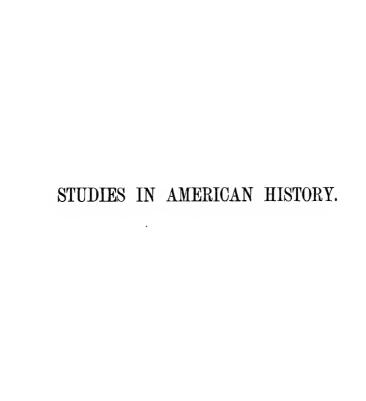
LIST OF MAPS.

		PAGE
1.	Ptolemy's Idea of the World	5
2.	Lands and Seas of the North	10
3.	Marco Polo's Asia	15
4.	Reference Map of Western Europe Facing	16
5.	Toscanelli's Marine Chart Facing	20
6.	Idea of the South-west in 16th Century, after Sloane MSS	38
7.	Reference Map of Mexico, Central America, and the Indies	50
8.	Reference Map of Physical Geography and Native Races of North	
	America. Colored Facing	51
9.	Joliet's Map of North America	88
10.	Reference Map of French Settlements in North America (Mac-	
	Coun). Colored Facing	100
11.	Reference Maps of English Settlements in North America:	
	New England Facing	118
	Middle Atlantic States Facing	120
	Southern States Facing	122
12.	Bunker Hill	,153
13.	Yorktown	187
14.	Reference Map of Mississippi Valley Facing	195
15.	Land Claims of the Thirteen Original States (MacCoun). Col-	
	ored Facing	199
16.	The Louisiana Purchase	216
17.	The Idea of the West in 1823	255
18.	Reference Map of United States West of the Mississippi, Facing	283
19.	Reference Map of British America	290
20.	Charleston Harbor	326
21.	Reference Map for Civil War Facing	370
	Reference Map of United States in 1891. Colored Facing	402

OUTLINE MAPS NEEDED FOR WORK.

- 1. Outline Map of World.
- 2. Outline Map of North America.
- 3. Outline Map of United States West to Santa Fé.
- 4. Outline Map of United States West to Mississippi.
- 5. Outline Map of United States West from Mississippi.

6. Outline Map of Southern and Middle States for use in Civil War.



"Looms there the New Land:
Locked in the shadow...
Silent it sleeps now;
Great ships shall seek it,
Swarming as salmon;
Noise of its numbers
Two seas shall hear.
Men from the Northland,
Men from the Southland,...
There shall be mingled;...
Pick of all kindreds,...

Them waits the New Land;
They shall subdue it,
Leaving their sons' sons
Space for the body,
Space for the soul...
They shall make over
Creed, law, and custom;
Driving men, doughty
Builders of empire,
Builders of men."

Sons of the poor.

- Lowell, The Voyage to Vinland.

STUDIES IN AMERICAN HISTORY.

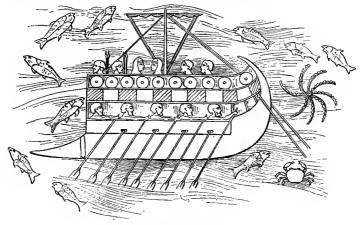
·0;25:00

GROUP L

GEOGRAPHY BEFORE COLUMBUS: 1000 B.C.-1492 A.D.

1. WHAT THE ANCIENTS KNEW ABOUT GEOGRAPHY.

And we set in order all the gear throughout the ship and sat us down; and the wind and the helmsman guided our barque. And all day long her sails were stretched in her seafaring; and the sun sank and all the ways were darkened. She came to the limits of the world, to the deep-flowing Ocean.—Homer, Odyssey, xi.1



A PHŒNICIAN SHIP.

(From Alabaster Slab found in the Palace of Sennacherib. - RAWLINSON'S Phanicia.)

The Men of Tyre and Sidon.—A thousand years before Christ was born, the men of Tyre and Sidon were putting to sea

[The small figures scattered through the text refer to the list of authorities placed *** **after the index; the . . . found throughout the extracts indicate omissions.]

in their good ships of cedar and fir, with cargoes of cloth, scarlet and blue, — with trinkets of glass and porcelain, — with fine cut gems and fragrant spices; and sailing along the Mediterranean and about the Arabian Gulf and the Red Sea, they traded off their wares for all manner of things, and brought home again to their great gay fairs, linen from Egypt and silver from Spain, — spices and wool and precious woods from Arabia, — gems from Persia, — slaves and silver and wool from Greece, — ebony, ivory and slaves from the African shore.

Herodotus and the Greeks.—The men of Tyre and Sidon never made any record of what they knew about geography, but the Greeks, after they came to be civilized, tried to make maps of those parts of the world which were known. These early maps are now all lost, but we can tell something how they looked from what Herodotus wrote about the world. He was a Greek of Asia Minor, who lived and wrote about 500 years before Christ. He says:

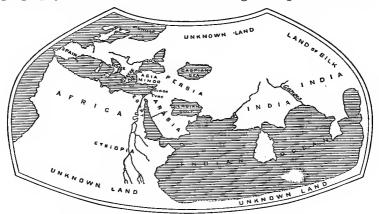
The extreme parts of the inhabited world somehow possess the most excellent products.... For in the first place, India is the farthest... ward the east...: in this part then all animals... are much larger than they are in other countries.... In the next place, there is abundance of gold there.... And certain wild trees there bear wool... that in beauty and quality excels that of sheep; and the Indians make their clothing from these trees. Again, Arabia is the farthest of inhabited countries towards the south; and this is the only region in which grow frankincense, myrrh, cassia, einnamon...; and there breathes from Arabia, as it were, a divine odour. [Towards the south-west, Ethiopia is] the extreme part of the habitable world. It produces much gold, huge elephants,... and ebony....

These, then, are the extremities of Asia and Libya [Africa]. Concerning the western extremities of Europe...though I have

diligently inquired, I have never been able to hear from any man who has himself seen it, that there is a sea on that side of Enrope.²

Within a hundred years after this, the Greeks knew that the world was a sphere, and suspected that India could be reached by sailing westward from Spain.

The Roman Geographers.—About the time that Christ was born, the Romans were the strongest and most civilized people in the world; and about 43 A.D. one of them wrote a book on geography in which we find the following description of India:



ROMAN IDEA OF THE WORLD. (Adapted from Ptolemy's Geography of 1507.)

India is a fertile land, rich in sundry sorts of men and beasts. There grow ants no smaller than the biggest dogs, which, they say, like griffins, guard the gold dug from the depths of the earth, putting those that touch it in danger of their lives. So fat and fertile is the soil in places, that honey droppeth from the leaves and the trees bear wool. . . .

Near Tamos [in India], is the Golden Isle, and near Ganges, the Silvery Isle; and the Ancients say, that the soil of the one is gold, and that of the other, silver.³

But the most famous of all the Roman geographers was **Ptolemy**, who lived about 150 years after Christ. The oldest maps now in Europe are those in his book, and the map on page 5 is a copy of one of these old maps.

STUDY ON I.

1. How long ago did the men of Tyre and Sidon live? 2. Make a list of the countries that they knew about. 3. How did they come to know about these countries? 4. How long ago did Herodotus live? 5. If he had made a map of the world, what part of Asia would have been missing? 6. Of Africa? 7. Of Europe? 8. What continents and important islands? 9. How do you know what part of the world he meant by Ethiopia? 10. What could he have meant by trees that bear wool? 11. What does he mean by the word "Indian"? 12. Why was India a desirable place to know about and to reach? 13. About what countries did the Romans know that Herodotus did not? 14. What was the "Land of Silk"? 15. What oceans and lands were unknown to Ptolemy? 16. In what direction were they from Europe? 17. What proof that the Romans did not know much of India?

2. SAGAS OF THE NORTH.

⊸∞⊱950∞—

"Let our trusty band Haste to father-land; Let our vessel brave, Plow the angry wave, While those few who love Vinland, here may rove, Or, with idle toil, Fetid whales may boil, Here on Ferdustrand, Far from father-land."

-THORHALL, in Thorfinn's Saga.4

What Sagas are.—For hundreds of years after Ptolemy there are no new records of discovery; but in the Royal Library at Copenhagen they will show you among their treasures, certain leaves of vellum, yellow and brown with age, and written close with ancient characters, brightened here and there with dashing capitals of red. They were written out, letter by let-

ter, about 1400 A.D., by the hands of pious monks, who called to their aid "Omnipotent God and the Virgin Mary" as they worked. These are the Sagas of the North, and tell us the stories of the ancient Vikings, or the Northmen.

bungs-rüaß þigiklim i lægtekm a uldurð fom vær kurða út tór allt man polk. Fund vin bogaðs eya sama vetr v leyn: senks hus unda mi Orta vel mong i tok v klim ey ta su mar e 612 pæt illsz sendi Ork. ley't græn tózær boga fiktim pæt to svin t grøn log. han ray i harim atkys plakir halpadið, þa ray v

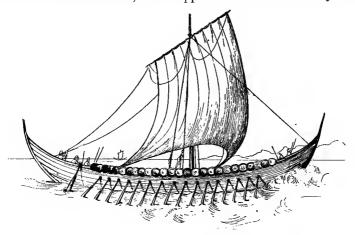
FAC-SIMILE OF A BIT OF AN OLD SAGA MANUSCRIPT.

From the Sagas of Erik the Red.—In the saga or story of Erik the Red, it stands written:

The land some call Greenland, was discovered and settled from Iceland. Eric the Red was the name of the . . . man who went from here [Iceland] to there, and took possession of that part of the land which later was called Ericsfiord. He named the land and called it Greenland, and said it would encourage people to come there if the land had a good name. They found there, both east and west, ruins of houses and pieces of boats, and stone implements. Learned men say that twenty-five ships went that summer to Greenland from [Iceland], . . . but only fourteen arrived. Of the rest, some were driven back and others were wrecked. [A.D. 986.]

From the Saga of Leif the Fortunate.—Now there came to Brattalid in Greenland where Erik lived a man named Biarne, who told of land far westward, seen as he was driven by storm that way; and afterwards

There was much talk about discovering unknown lands. Leif, a son of Erik Red of Brattalid, went over to Biarne... and bought the ship from him, and manned the vessel... and went to sea when they were ready. They first came to the land which Biarne had... discovered, sailed up to it,... and went on shore; but there was no grass to be seen. There were large snowy mountains up the country; but all the way from the sea up to these snowy ridges, the land was one field of snow, and it appeared to them a country of no



RESTORATION OF VIKING SHIP.

(From Fragments found in the Burial Mound of a Viking. - NORDENSKIOLD'S Voyage of the Vega.)

advantages. Leif said: "It shall not be said of us, as it was of Biarne, that we did not come upon the land; for I will give the country a name, and call it Helluland." Then they went on board again and put to sea, and found another land... The country was flat, and overgrown with wood;... then Leif said: "We shall give this land a name according to its kind," and called it Markland. Then they hastened on board, and put to sea again with the wind from the north-east, and were out for two days and made land.... They resolved to put things in order for wintering there, and they

erected a large house. They did not want for salmon, . . . and they thought the salmon larger than any they had ever seen before. The country appeared to them of so good a kind, that it would not be necessary to gather fodder for the cattle for winter. There was no frost in winter, and the grass was not much withered. Day and night were more equal than in Greenland and Iceland. . . .

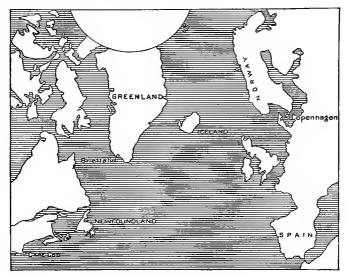
It happened one evening that a man of the party was missing, and it was the south countryman, Tyrker. Leif was very sorry for this because Tyrker had long been in his father's house, and he loved Tyrker in his childhood. Leif blamed his comrades very much, and proposed to go with twelve men . . . to find him; but they had gone only a short way . . . when Tyrker came to meet them, and he was joyfully received. Leif soon perceived that his foster father was quite merry. Tyrker had a high forehead, sharp eyes, with a small face, and was little in size, and ugly; but was very dexterous in all feats. Leif said to him, "Why art thou so late, my foster father? and why didst thou leave thy comrades?" He spoke at first long in German, rolled his eyes and knit his brows; ... after ... some delay, he said in Norse, "I did not go much further than they; and yet I have something altogether new to relate, for I found vines and grapes." "Is that true, my foster father?" said Leif. "Yes, true it is," answered he, "for I was born where there was no scarcity of grapes." They slept all night, and the next morning Leif said to his men, "Now we shall have two occupations ...; namely, to gather grapes or cut vines, and to fell wood in the forest to lade our vessel." This advice was followed. It is related that their stern boat was filled with grapes, and then a cargo of wood was hewn for the vessel. Towards spring they made ready and sailed away, and Leif gave the country a name from its products, and called it Vinland. They now sailed into the open sea and had a fair wind until they came in sight of Greenland and the lands below the ice mountains.

From the Saga of Thorfinn. --

The conversation often turned at Brattalid, on the discovery of Vinland the Good, and they said that a voyage there had great hope

of gain. After this Thorfinn . . . made ready for going on a voyage there the following spring. . . . There were, in all, forty men and a hundred. . . .

It is said that Thorfinn with... his comrades, sailed along the coast south. They sailed long until they came to a river flowing down from the land.... Having come to the land, they saw that where the ground was low corn grew, and where it was higher, vines were found. Every river was full of fish.



LANDS AND SEAS OF THE NORTH.

... There was a great number of all kinds of wild beasts in the woods. They stayed there half a month and enjoyed themselves, and did not notice anything; they had their cattle with them. Early one morning, when they looked around, they saw a great many skin boats, [and the people in them] rowed towards them, wondering at them, and came to land. These people were swarthy and fierce, and had bushy hair on their heads; they had very large

eyes and broad cheeks. They stayed there for a time, and gazed upon those they met, and afterward rowed away southward....

Thorfinn and his people ... wintered there, and there was no snow, and all their cattle fed themselves upon the grass. But when spring came [A.D. 1009] they saw one morning early, that a number of canoes rowed from the south...; so many, as if the sea were sown with coal;... Thorfinn and his people then raised up the shield [a white shield in token of peace], and when they came together they began to trade. These people would rather have red cloth; for this they offered skins and real furs....

It happened that a bull, which Thorfinn had, ran out of the wood and roared aloud; this frightened the Skrellings, and they rushed to their canoes and rowed away toward the south. After that they were not seen for three whole weeks. But at the end of that time, a great number of Skrellings' ships were seen coming from the south like a rushing torrent, . . . and they all yelled very loud. Then Thorfinn's people took a red shield [in sign of war] and held it toward them. The Skrellings leaped out of their vessels, and after this they went against each other and fought. There was a hot shower of weapons, because the Skrellings had slings. . . .

Thorfinn and his people now thought they saw, that although the land had many good qualities, they still would always be exposed to the fear of attacks from the original dwellers. They decided, therefore, to go away and to return to their own land.⁵

This Thorfinn was a brother-in-law of Leif; and men say that his saga was written out by one of his own descendants, a learned bishop of Iceland. After he returned from Vinland, there was little talk of going thither, though the Pope made a bishop for it, and now and then, the sagas say, men went there for lumber. The last such voyage noted was in the year 1347.

STUDY ON 2.

1. What was the occupation of the Vikings? 2. What lands did they inhabit? 3. What lands discover? 4. What proof can you give that peo-

ple had been in Greenland before the time of Eric? 5. What proofs have we that the Norsemen were brave men? 6. What land was Vinland? 7. What reasons have you for thinking so? 8. Why should the Northmen reach Vinland more easily than any other men of Europe? 9. Whom would you call the discoverer of Vinland, Biarne or Leif? 10. Why should the Vikings call Vinland "The Good"? 11. On whose word must we depend for there being vines in Vinland? 12. What reasons have we for believing him? 13. Make a list of the productions of Vinland. 14. Why should the sagas be such treasures? 15. How long after Ptolemy did Leif live? (See list, p. 17.) 16. How long after Herodotus?

Supplementary Reading.—Longfellow's Discoverer of the North Cape, and The Skeleton in Armor. Baring-Gould's Grettir the Outlaw.

3. MARCO POLO.

Great Princes, Emperors, and Kings,...Counts, Knights, and Burgesses! and People of all degrees who desire to get knowledge... of the sundry regions of the World, take this Book and cause it to be read to you. For ye shall find therein all kinds of wonderful things,... according to the description of Messer Marco Polo, a wise and noble citizen of Venice, as he saw them with his own eyes.—Beginning of Marco Polo's Book.6

Marco Polo's Book. — Just about the time that the Vikings gave up going to Vinland, the merchants of Italy began to trade more and more to the eastward. Now among these merchants was Marco Polo, a Venetian, who went so far and did so well that the Great Khan kept him in his own service seventeen years, sending him on embassies to every part of Asia. And when he came back to Europe, he wrote a famous book of travels, and here are some of its contents:

Book I., ch. XXXIX. Of the City of Lop and the Great Desert....

Lop is a large town at the edge of the Desert, which is called the Desert of Lop.... Now, such persons as propose to cross the Desert take a week's rest in this town to refresh themselves and their

cattle; and then they make ready for the journey, taking with them a month's supply for man and beast. On quitting this city they enter the Desert.... Where its breadth is least, it takes a month to cross it. 'Tis all composed of hills and valleys of sand, and not a thing to eat is to be found on it....

Book II., ch. X. Concerning the Palace of the Great Khan...

You must know that for three months of the year, . . . the Great

Khan resides in the capital city of Cathay, which is called Cambalue.... In that city stands his great Palace, and now I will tell you what it is like....

The roof is very lofty, and the walls of the Palace are all covered with gold and silver. They are also adorned with representations of dragons, beasts and birds, knights and idols.... And on the ceiling too you see nothing but gold and silver and painting.



THE GREAT KHAN.

(From Chinese Manuscript of Marco Polo's time.

— YULE'S Marco Polo.)

The Hall of the Palace is so large that it could easily dine

6000 people; and it is quite a marvel to see how many rooms there are besides.... The outside of the roof also is all coloured with vermilion and yellow and green and blue and other hues, which... shine like crystal, and lend a resplendent lustre to the Palace as seen for a great way round.

Book II., ch. XXII. Concerning the City of Cambaluc. . . .

You must know that the City of Cambaluc hath . . . a multitude of houses, and . . . a vast population inside the walls and outside. . . .

... No day in the year passes that there do not enter the city 1000 cart-loads of silk alone, from which are made quantities of cloth of silk and gold....

Book II., ch. LV. Concerning the Province of Bangala. . . .

The people... grow cotton,... and also spices such as spikenard,... ginger, sugar, and many other sorts.

Book III., ch. II. Description of the Island of Chipangu. . . .

Chipangu is an Island toward the east in the high seas, ... and a very great Island it is.

The people are white, civilized, and well-favoured. They are Idolaters, and dependent on nobody. And I can tell you the quantity of gold they have is endless;... I will tell you a wonderful thing about the Palace of the Lord of that Island. You must know that he hath a great Palace which is entirely roofed with fine gold... Moreover, all the pavement of the Palace, and the floors of its chambers, are entirely of gold, in plates like slabs of stone, a good two fingers thick; and the windows also are of gold, so that... the richness of this Palace is past... all belief....

They have also pearls in abundance, which are of a rose colour. . . .

Book III., ch. VI. Concerning the Great Island of Java. . . .

The Island is of surpassing wealth, producing black pepper, nutmegs, spikenard, . . . cloves, and all other kinds of spices.

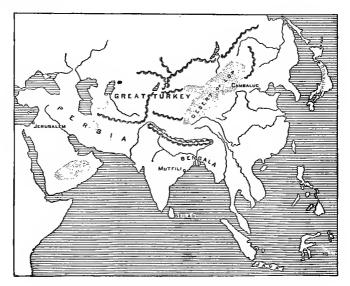
Book III., ch. XIV. Concerning the Island of Seilan. . . .

You must know that rubies are found in this Island and in no other country of the world but this. They find there also, sapphires and topazes and amethysts, and many other stones of price. And the King of this Island possesses a ruby which is the finest and biggest in the world; . . . it is quite free from flaw and is as red as fire.

Book III., ch. XIX. Concerning the Kingdom of Mutfili. . . . [See map.]

It is in this kingdom that diamonds are got; ... no other country but this kingdom of Mutfili produces them, but there they are found both abundantly and of large size. Those that are brought to our part of the world are only the refuse, as it were, of the finer and larger stones. . . .

In this kingdom also are made the best and most delicate buckrams, [cotton stuffs]... in sooth they look like tissue of spider's web! There is no King nor Queen in the world but might be glad to wear them.



SKETCH MAP OF ASIA, ACCORDING TO MARCO POLO.

Book IV., ch. XXI. Concerning the Land of Darkness.

Still further north, [from Great Turkey]... there is a region which bears the name of Darkness, because neither sun nor moon nor stars appear, but it is always as dark as ... in the twilight.... Those people have vast quantities of valuable peltry... Sables ... Ermine... the Black Fox, and many other valuable furs.... And the people who are on their borders, where the Light is, pur-

chase all those furs... and the merchants who purchase these make great gain thereby, I assure you.

STUDY ON 3.

1. Of what country was the Khan lord? 2. What country was "Cipangu"? 3. "Seilan"? 4. "Cathay"? 5. "The Land of Darkness"? 6. Give your reasons for thinking so in each case. 7. What new countries did Marco Polo describe to Europe? [See Ptolemy's Map, p. 5.] 8. Why was his evidence about these countries especially valuable? 9. Why should people now be more anxious than ever to find safe and easy ways of getting to India, and the other countries of the east? 10. What made it hard to get to these countries? 11. What were "spices"? 12. Make a list of the products of Asia mentioned in these extracts from Marco Polo. 13. How long after Christ was born did Marco Polo live? (See list, p. 17.)

Supplementary Readings. — The return of Marco Polo to Venice, in Yule's Marco Polo, Vol. I., p. 4 of the introduction. Coleridge's Kubla Khan, a poem inspired by the reading of Marco Polo.

LIST OF IMPORTANT EVENTS CONNECTED WITH THE DEVELOPMENT OF GEOGRAPHY, 1000 B.C.-1492 A.D.

A. BEFORE THE BIRTH OF CHRIST.

1000 B.C. - Men of Tyre and Sidon trade to Southern Europe.

500 B.C. — Herodotus writes on geography and history.

327 B.C. - Alexander the Great makes an expedition to India.

B. AFTER THE BIRTH OF CHRIST.

1st Century. — Strabo and Pomponius Mela write works on geography.

2d Century. — Ptolemy's geography appears. (See p. 6.)

5th Century. — Some Chinese priests, according to the Chinese records, sail thousands of miles eastward, and reach a great country they call Fusang.

875. — Northmen settle in Iceland.

983. — Erik the Red goes to Greenland.

1000. - Leif in Vinland.

1006. — Thorfinn in Vinland.

1095.—The Crusades begin, and the Crusaders bring the mariner's compass into Europe.



REFERENCE MAP OF WESTERN EUROPE.

Facing p. 16.

1170. — Prince Madoc of Wales, with his Welsh companions, is said to have sailed westward, and is thought by some to have reached America.

1271. — Marco Polo's travels begin. (See p. 12.)

14th Century. — Gunpowder begins to be used in Europe.

1402. — Canary Islands colonized.

1419. - Madeira Islands colonized by the Portuguese.

1420-1450. - Printing invented, by German and Dutch workmen.

By the help of Almighty God...this book was printed...in the year of our Lord 1460, in the good town Mainz, belonging to the famous German nation...and that too, without the help of pen or pencil...but by the wonderful fitting together...of Types.—Inscription at the end of one of the first books ever printed.

1460. — Cape Verde Islands discovered by the Portuguese.

1469. — The mouth of the Congo discovered by the Portuguese.

1486. — The Cape of Good Hope discovered by the Portuguese.

1471-1492.— The writings of Pomponius Mela, Ptolemy, Marco Polo, John Mandeville, and other geographers and travellers, printed; among them, a rare old book called *The Image of the World*, in which a learned cardinal maintains that one could if the wind were favorable... go from the Arabian Gulf to the Pillars of Hercules [Gibraltar] in a few days.

FIRST STUDY ON LIST.

1. Take outline map of the world, and mark with a blue pencil or paint, the coast-lines of those parts of the world known to Herodotus; in red, the coast-lines of the new parts known to the Romans, in green the coast-lines of those parts discovered by the Northmen, and of those made known to Europe by Marco Polo; in black, of those parts discovered by the Portuguese before 1492. 2. What parts of the world were still unknown to Europe in 1492? 3. Who had made Asia known to Europe? 4. Africa? 5. How long did it take to explore from the Canaries to the Cape of Good Hope? 6. What motive had led people to discover new countries? 7. What land might Fusang have been? 8. Write at least five lines on The way to India before 1492.

SECOND STUDY ON LIST.

1. In what century was printing invented? 2. In what two ways were records kept before this time? 3. Give an example of each way from your previous lessons. 4. Which was the safest of these two ways of keeping records? 5. Why? 6. Why should books be cheaper after printing was

invented? 7. Why should more people learn how to read after printing was invented? 8. Before this, how did most men find out what was in books? (See inscription given from Marco Polo's book, p. 12.) 9. If printing had been invented before Leif discovered Vinland, what might have happened? 10. If gunpowder had been known to the Northmen, how would it have helped them keep Vinland? 11. How would the mariner's compass have helped them? 12. How could men tell which way was east or north before they had the compass? 13. When would these means fail them?

GROUP II.

THE AGE OF DISCOVERY: 1492-1607.

1. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

God made me the messenger of the new heaven and the new earth . . . and he showed me the spot where to find it.— Columbus to a Lady of the Spanish Court. 10

Columbus' Early Life. — More famous than the Vikings, more famous than any other sailor on the Sea of Darkness, as men once called the Atlantic, was Christopher Columbus; he was born about 1445 A.D., and his own letters and journals give us our next records. In a letter written to Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain, he writes:

Most serene princes; I went to sea very young [in another letter he says at fourteen years of age] and have continued it to this day; ... and I have dealt and conversed with wise people, ... Latins, Greeks, Indians, and Moors, ... and our Lord has ... made me very skilful in navigation, knowing enough in astrology, and so in geometry and arithmetic. God hath given me a genius and hands apt to draw this globe, and on it the cities, rivers, islands, and ports, all in their proper places. During this time I have ... endeavored to see all books of cosmography [geography] ... and of other sciences. ...

In one of his memoranda he adds:

In . . . 1467, I sailed . . . an hundred leagues beyond Thule. . . . To this island, which is as big as England, the English trade, especially from Bristol. At the time when I was there, the sea was not frozen.

From 1470 to 1484 Columbus lived in Lisbon, where his son tells us,

he knew there were many Genoese, his countrymen, [and] where ... he set up house and married a wife;... his father-in-law... being dead, they went to live with the mother-in-law,... and she seeing him so much addicted to cosmography... gave him the journals and sea-charts left her by her husband, [a famous sailor and explorer under Prince Henry the Navigator of Portugal; and these] still more inflamed the admiral.¹¹

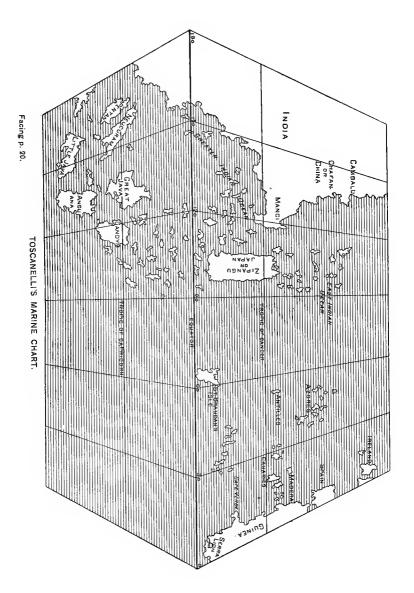
Then, too, old histories of that time say, sailors had told Columbus of picking up pieces of wood far out at sea, wrought by man's hand, but not with tools of iron; furthermore,

The Sea cast upon the Island of *Flores* [one of the Azores] two dead bodies of men, who seemed to have very broad faces and different features from the Christians... *Antony Leme*, married in the Island of *Madera*, affirm'd, that having sail'd... a considerable Space to the Westward, he fancy'd he had seen three Islands near to the Place where he then was; and many in... the *Azores* asserted that they every year saw some Islands to the Westward.¹²

Toscanelli's Letter. — While living here in Portugal, he had the following letter from Toscanelli, a Florentine physician and astronomer:

I have become acquainted with the great and noble wish entertained by you, to visit the country of spices, on which account I send in answer to your letter, the copy of one directed by me, a few days since, to one of my friends, in the service of the king of Portugal.... The copy... is as follows:

... Although I have spoken many times concerning the short passage by sea from hence to the Indies, ... I have determined to mark down the route in question upon a marine chart... The whole territory is ... under the dominion of a prince called Great Can... This is a noble country, and ought to be explored by us,



on account of ... the quantity of gold, silver, and precious stones, which might be obtained there. . . . ¹³

How Columbus seeks Royal Help. -

Now Columbus being very positive in this Notion . . . that there were new Lands undiscovered . . . resolved to make the same publick; but being sensible that such an enterprize was only fit for great Princes, he . . . proposed it to King John, of Portugal, who. though he gave him a favourable hearing, being then taken up with the Discovery of the Coast of Africk . . . did not think fit to undertake so many things at once; ... [Columbus now] resolv'd to go away into Spain. . . . Their Catholic majesties giving some Attention to the Affair referr'd it to . . . the Queen's Confessor. . . . He held an Assembly of Cosmographers [1487] who debated about it; ... some alledging, that since ... from the Creation of the World. Men so well versed in Marine Affairs had known nothing of those Countries which Columbus persuaded them . . . must be found, it was not to be imagin'd, that he could know more than all of them. Others urg'd, that the world was so large, that there would be no coming to the utmost extent of the East in Three Years Sail. . . . There were still others who affirm'd that . . . whosoever should go beyond the Hemisphere known by Ptolemy, would fall down so low that it would be impossible ever to return. . . .

After much delay, their Catholick Majesties order'd this answer to be given to Columbus. That being engag'd in several Wars, . . . they could not enter upon fresh Expences. . . . Having receiv'd this Answer . . . Columbus went away to Seville, very melancholy and discontented, after having been five Years at Court to no Effect. . . . [In January, 1492, he set out] from Santa Fé for Cordova, in great Anguish. . . . The same day . . . a Clerk of the Revenue of the Crown . . . told the Queen, he wonder'd, that she, who had never wanted a Spirit for the greatest Undertakings, should now fail . . . inasmuch as it became great and generous monarchs to be acquainted with the Wonders and Secrets of the World, by which other Princes have gained everlasting Renown. . . . [The Queen at last

consented and ordered a court-messenger] to go post after Columbus [and fetch him to court, where after eight years in which he had endured] many Crosses and Hardships, [he was made] Admiral in all those Islands, and Continents that by his Industry shall be discovered.¹⁴

STUDY ON I.

1. Of what country was Columbus a native? 2. What was his occupation? 3. His education? 4. Whom does he mean when he says *Indians* in the first letter quoted? 5. What books in geography could he have seen? 6. Give reason why he should have thought that land was westward. 7. What did he think this land was? 8. Give the reasons why he should think so. 9. Why was such an enterprise fit only for great Princes? 10. What was going on in Portugal while Columbus was there? 11. Why should the Portuguese king give him a favorable hearing? 12. What were the discouragements of Columbus? 13. What had he to encourage him? 14. How long did he have to wait for success? 15. What do you think of the arguments of the Cosmographers? 16. What other princes did the Clerk of the Revenues of the Crown probably mean?

2. COLUMBUS' GREAT DISCOVERY.

Let the king and queen, our princes and their most happy kingdoms, and all the other provinces of Christendom, render thanks to our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, who has granted us so great a victory and such prosperity. Let processions be made, and sacred feasts be held, and the temples be adorned with festive boughs. Let Christ rejoice on earth, as he rejoices in heaven, in the prospect of the salvation of so many nations hitherto lost.— Columbus to the Royal Treasurer of Ferdinand and Isabella. 15

The Voyage Westward.—Shortly after, Columbus set sail from Palos to find the new way to India. The Journal he kept on this voyage is lost, but large parts of it are quoted in a narrative written by Las Casas soon after Columbus' return. It runs thus:

Whereas, Most Christian, High, Excellent and Powerful Princes, King and Queen of Spain and of the Islands of the Sea, our Sovereigns, this present year 1492, . . . determined to send me, Christopher Columbus, to the . . . countries of India, to see the . . . princes, people, and territories, and to learn their disposition and the proper



COLUMBUS PARTING FROM FERDINAND AND ISABELLA.

(Copied from De Bry's Voyages, a Book of the l6th Century.)

method of converting them to our holy faith; and ... directed that I should ... proceed ... by a Westerly route, in which direction we have hitherto no certain evidence that any one has gone. ... Hereupon I... proceeded to Palos, ... where I armed three vessels ... and ... set sail ... on Friday, the third of August. ...

Sunday, Sept. 16th. - Sailed day and night, West. . . . The Ad-

miral [Columbus] here says that from this time... the mornings were most delightful, wanting nothing but the melody of the nightingales....

Monday, Sept. 17th. — Steered West and sailed day and night, above fifty leagues. . . . They saw a great deal of weed which . . . came from the West. . . . They were of opinion that land was near. The pilots . . . found that the needles varied to . . . a whole point of the compass; the seamen were terrified, and dismayed. . . . At dawn they saw many more weeds . . . and among them a live crab, which the Admiral . . . says . . . are sure signs of land.

[Saturday, Sepi. 22d.—Here they had the wind ahead, and the Admiral says,] This head wind was very necessary to me, for my crew had grown much alarmed, dreading that they never should meet in these seas with a fair wind to return to Spain....

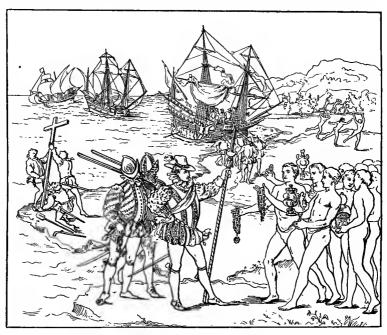
Tuesday, Sept. 25th.—... At sunset Martin Alonzo called out with great joy from his vessel that he saw land.... The Admiral says when he heard him declare this, he fell on his knees and returned thanks to God, and Martin Alonzo with his crew repeated, "Glory to God in the highest," as did the crew of the Admiral... all declared they saw land....

Wednesday, Sept. 26th. — . . . discovered that what they had taken for land was nothing but clouds. . . .

Wednesday, Oct. 10th.—... Here the men lost all patience, and complained of the length of the voyage, but the Admiral encouraged them... representing the profits they were about to acquire, and adding that it was to no purpose to complain, having come so far, they had nothing to do but continue on to the Indies, till, with the help of our Lord, they should arrive there....

Thursday, Oct. 11th.—... The land was first seen by a sailor ... although the Admiral at ten o'clock that evening ... saw a light, but ... could not affirm it to be land; calling to ... [the] groom of the King's wardrobe, he ... bid him look that way, which he did and saw it.... The Admiral held it for certain that land was near... At two o'clock in the morning, the land was discovered, at two leagues distance; ... they found themselves near a small is-

land.... Presently... the Admiral landed in the boat.... [He] bore the royal standard, and the two captains each a banner of the Green Cross.... Arrived on shore, they saw trees very green, many streams of water and diverse sorts of fruits. [The Admiral, in the presence of his captains, straightway] took possession... of



THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS. (Copied from De Bry's Voyages.)

that island for the King and Queen.... Numbers of the people of the island straightway collected together.... As I saw that they were very friendly... and perceived that they could be much more easily converted to our holy faith by gentle means than by force, I presented them with some red caps, and strings of beads... wherewith they... became wonderfully attached to us. After-

wards they came swimming to the boats, bringing parrots, balls of cotton thread, javelins....

Sunday, Oct. 14th. — After having taken a survey of these parts, I returned to the ship, and setting sail, discovered such a number of islands that I knew not which first to visit. . . .

Tuesday, Oct. 23d. — It is now my determination to depart for the island of Cuba, which I believe to be Cipango. 16

The Return to Spain.—After coasting about in these islands, of which Columbus says, "There are not under the sun better lands"—and building on one of them a little fort, in which he left thirty-nine men, the Admiral started for Spain, Jan. 16th, 1493. He had lost one of his ships among the islands, the others were leaky, it was midwinter, they met terrible storms; in one of these, Columbus was in great fear lest he might never reach Spain with the news of his discovery. But he remembered how he had been saved upon the outward voyage, when "the crew rose up against him, and with an unanimous and threatening voice, resolved to return back, but the eternal God gave him spirit and valor against them all." So now "it pleased our Lord to sustain them," and our old histories tell us:

[In the] Beginning of the Year 1493, came into the River of Lisbon, Christopher Columbus, who had been on his West Indian Discovery...; and had brought from one of the Islands some Men, Gold, and great Tokens of Riches.... King John...looked on him now with Regret... and though some offered to kill him... to conceal his Discoveries from Spain, yet was he sent away with Honour. [On his return to Spain], their Catholick Majesties... thought fit to acquaint the Pope with what had happened, and desir'd his Holiness to grant them the Lordship over these newly discovered Lands. The Pope was much rejoyc'd at this, and granted their Catholic Majesties all the Islands and Continents already dis-

cover'd or that should be discover'd, [westward of a line drawn] from Pole to Pole, . . . an hundred Leagues to the Westward of the Islands Azores; [all eastward therefrom he granted to the King of Portugal]. 18

STUDY ON 2.

1. In how many and in what sort of ships did Columbus start out?
2. Compare them with those we have now. 3. How was Palos different from one of our American towns? 4. Why did the king and queen of Spain send Columbus on this voyage? 5. How long was it? 6. What were its difficulties and dangers? 7. How long did they think they had found land before they did? 8. When they at last found it, what land did they think it was? 9. Why should they think so? 10. What land was it? 11. What sort of people lived there? 12. How did they treat the Spaniards? 13. In what month and year were these new lands found? 14. Why does Columbus deserve more glory for this discovery than any of his sailors? 15. Why should the Portuguese wish to conceal his discoveries from Spain? 16. What parts of the world did the Pope grant to the king and queen of Spain? 17. To whom did he grant the rest of it? 18. Name five traits in the character of Columbus. 19. Give an instance in which he displayed each trait.

Supplementary Reading. — Irving's The Discovery of America by Columbus in Effingham Maynard & Co.'s Historical Classical Readings, or in Irving's Life of Columbus. Tennyson's poem on Columbus.

3. THREE FAMOUS VOYAGES.

~~```

When newes were brought that Don Christopher Colonus... had discovered the coasts of India, whereof was great talke,... insomuch that all men... affirmed it to be a thing more divine than humane to saile by the West into the Easte, where spices growe, by a map that was never knowen before,—by this fame and report there increased in my heart a great flame of desire to attempt some notable thing.—Sebastian Cabot. 19

Voyage of John Cabot, 1497. — After the return of Columbus, the world was full of explorers; expedition after expedi-

dition sailed to the westward, one of the first and most famous being that of John Cabot, on whose return, an Italian living in London wrote thus to a friend:

It may not displease you to learn how his Majesty here has won a part of Asia without a stroke of the sword. There is in this kingdom a Venetian fellow, ... John Cabot by name, ... who seeing that those most serene kings . . . of Portugal . . . and . . . Spain, have occupied unknown islands, determined to make a like acquisition for his Majesty. . . . And having obtained royal grants that he should have the . . . [use] of all that he should discover, provided that the ownership... be reserved to the crown... he... set out from Bristol . . . and . . . began to steer . . . [westward] . . .; and, having wandered about considerably, at last he fell in with terra firma [the mainland], where, having planted the royal banner and taken possession on behalf of this king, . . . he has returned thence. . . . And they say it is a very good and temperate country, and they think that Brazil-wood and silks grow there; and they affirm that that sea is covered with fishes.... And this I heard... Master John... and ... his comrades say that they will bring so many fishes that this kingdom will no longer have need of Iceland, from which country there comes a very great store of [cod-fish].20

Voyage of Vasco Da Gama.—In this same year of 1497, Vasco Da Gama sailed from the port of Lisbon southward, sent by the king of Portugal to follow up the discoveries of Prince Henry the Navigator. And, rounding the Cape of Good Hope, he came in a year and five months to the coast of India. There he was received by the king of Calecut, who is thus described by one of Da Gama's companions:

The King... was a very dark man, half naked, and clothed with white cloths from the middle to the knees: one of these cloths ended in a long point on which were threaded several gold rings with large rubies, which made a great show. He had on his left

The king of Calcut and the other kings of India gave the Portuguese rich gifts of gold and silk and gems; and the Portuguese so traded with them that they brought back to Lisbon great store of pepper, cinnamon, cloves, ginger, mace, and nutmegs.

Last Voyages of Columbus.— Not so important as these, but quite as interesting, are the last voyages of Columbus. On his second, he had settled a Spanish colony in the West Indies, and on his way home from the third, he stopped to see how it prospered. He found it in disorder and rebellion, and, as governor of all the Indies, he at once began to reduce it to peace and order. Meanwhile, his enemies in Spain persuaded King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella that Columbus was managing badly, and that they should send out a new governor. This new man, on reaching the Indies, seized Columbus, put him in chains, threw him into prison, and presently sent him to Spain. Columbus' son writes:

When they were at sea, the master [of the ship]... would have knocked off the Admiral's irons, which he would never permit, saying, that since their Catholic Majesties... directed him to perform whatever [the governor] did command..., he would have none but Their Highnesses themselves to do their pleasure herein; and he was resolved to keep those fetters as relicks, and a memorial of the reward of his many services; as accordingly he did; for I always saw those irons in his room, which he ordered to be buried with his body.²²

But when Ferdinand and Isabella saw how he had been treated, they quickly released him, and gave him great honor at court. Although they did not make him governor again, they sent him out on a fourth voyage to find out some passage through the West Indies that would lead on to India. In the letter describing this voyage he says:

[From Jamaica I] pushed on for terra firma, in spite of the wind and a fearful contrary current, against which I contended for sixty days.... All this time... there ... was... rain, thunder and lightning; ... during which I... saw neither sun nor stars; my ships lay exposed, with sails torn, and anchors, ... lost; my people were very weak... and ... many whom we looked upon as brave men [showed much fear]. But the distress of my son who was with me grieved me to the soul, ... for he was but thirteen years old.... Our Lord, however, gave him strength even to ... encourage the rest, and he worked as if he had been eighty years at sea, and all this was a consolation to me. I myself had fallen sick, and was many times at the point of death, but from a little cabin that I had ... constructed on deck, I directed our course.

In this same letter Columbus says:

I was twenty-eight years old when I came into your Highnesses' service, and now I have not a hair upon me that is not grey.... Such is my fate, that the twenty years of service through which I

have passed with so much toil and danger, have profited me nothing, and at this very day I do not possess a roof in Spain that I can call my own; if I wish to eat or sleep, I have nowhere to go but to the inn or tavern, and most times lack wherewith to pay the bill.²³

Soon after Columbus returned to Spain from his last voyage, Queen Isabella died. King Ferdinand did not keep his promises to the great discoverer, and Christopher Columbus died poor and in debt.

STUDY ON 3.

1. What country was Cabot thought to have discovered? What country did he probably discover? (See list, p. 46.) 2. What reasons for thinking so can you find in the text? 3. For what country was this land claimed? 4. In what direction does it lie from the countries discovered by the Spaniards? 5. What land did Vasco da Gama find? 6. What desirable things could people get in this country? 7. Describe the way Columbus was treated in his last years. 8. Who was to blame for this treatment? 9. Why should he wish to wear his chains back to Spain? 10. What discouragements and troubles did he meet in his last voyage? 11. What was the real way to India? 12. What land did Columbus think he had found on his last voyage? 13. What in the text shows this? 14. What parts of North America were known in 1504? (See list, p. 46.)

Supplementary Reading.—Columbus in irons at the Spanish court. Washington Irving's *Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus*, Book XIV., ch. I.

4. SPANIARDS IN FLORIDA.

~•>₩;••

Right high, right mightie . . . lord . . . what then may the sight of your lord-ship and your people doe to mee and mine . . . ? especially being mounted on such fierce beasts as your horses are, entring with such violence and furie into my countrie. — From Speech of an Indian Chief to De Soto.²⁴

How the Expedition of De Soto set forth. — Among the many expeditions now setting forth to explore or conquer a

new world, that of **De Soto** was famous. One of De Soto's companions was a Portuguese knight, called the gentleman of Elvas, who afterward wrote a book about *The foure yeeres continuall travell and discoverie for above one thousand miles east and west* of De Soto and his men. From this book we take the following account of the expedition:

Captaine Soto was the son of a [Spanish] squire.... He went into the Spanish Indies,... and there he was without anything else of his owne, save his sword and target [shield]: and... hee went with Fernando Pizarro to the conquest of Peru....

After he returned from Peru, he went to court, where he met a man who had gone out with Narvaez, and who had wandered across from Florida to Mexico. [See list, 1527.] This man told such wonderful tales of the great New World, that De Soto begged the emperor to let him, too, go exploring in



SPANISH KNIGHT OF XVI. CENTURY.

(After old portraits.)

Florida. And the emperor consented, and made him governor of Florida, and marquis of the lands he might discover.

And out of Salamanca, ... and Valencia, ... and from other partes of Spaine, many people of noble birth assembled at Sivil [to join De Soto]; insomuch that ... many men of good account which had sold their goods remained behind for want of shipping. ... And he commanded a muster to be made, at the which the Portagales shewed themselves armed in verie bright armour, and the Castellans [Spaniards] very gallant with silke upon silke. ... So those ... were ... enroled, which Soto liked [600]

able men in seven ships].... In the yeere of our Lord 1538, in... Aprill... hee went over the barre of

San Lucar . . . with great joy, commanding his trumpets to be sounded.

How De Soto came to Cale.—On reaching Florida, De Soto at once began to ask of the Indians if they knew any rich country where there was gold.

They told him they did; and that towards the west, there was a province . . . called Cale; . . . where the most part of the yeere was sommer, and that there was much gold: . . . that . . . these inhabitants of Cale did weare hats of gold. [Then De Soto, with all his men, took the way to Cale. But he] found the towne without people, [and his own men] were sore vexed with hunger and evill waies, because the countrie was very barren of maiz, low, and full of water, bogs, and thicke woods; and the victuals which they brought with them . . . were spent. Wheresoever any towne was founde, there were some beetes, and hee that came first . . . did eate them without any other thing.

How the Spaniards were served.—Further on their route, De Soto sent two captains to seek the Indians.

They tooke an hundred men and women.... They led these Indians in chaines with yron collars about their neckes; and they served to carrie their stuffe, and to grind their maiz, and for other services that such captives could doe.

Of the Great River.—So, with hunger, and toil, and sickness, and fighting, pressing on through forests and swamps, De Soto came to what he called the Great River.

[There], in thirtie daies space, . . . they made four barges. . . . The river was of great depth, and of a strong current; the water was alwaies muddie: there came downe the river continually many trees and timbers, which the force of the water brought downe.

How De Soto died, and how his Followers came to New Spain. — After long wanderings westward of the Great River,

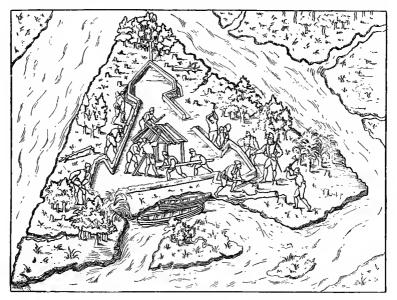
De Soto sent one of his men to find the sea; after eight days he returned, having gone only fourteen or fifteen leagues, "because of the great creekes... and groves of canes and thick woods... and... hee had found no habitation." At that De Soto fell sick, and shortly after died; and his men, to hide his death from the Indians, wrapped his body in mantles weighted with sand, and, carrying it in a canoe, sank it in the Great River. His followers now once more sought a way to the sea; but, finding none, camped again by the Great River.

[There, they gathered] all the chaines together, which everie one had to lead Indians in; ... and ... set up a forge to make nailes, and cut downe timber.... And a Genowis, whom it pleased God to preserve... (for there was never another that could make ships but hee) with four of five... carpenters [made some ships]. The Indians, which dwelt two dayes journie above... because the [Spaniards] demanded mantles of them, as necessarie for sailes, came many times, and brought many mantles, and great store of fish.... They brought also some cords....

And because the countrie was fertill, and the people used to feed of maiz, and the Christians had gotten all...they had,...they were...so weake and feeble, that they had no flesh left on their bones; and many...died...for pure hunger.... [At first the Spaniards refused them food; but] when they saw that the hogges wanted it not...they gave them part. [They set sail in July, 1543, 322 men in all; and after fifty-two days, came to land where] they saw Indian men and women apparelled like Spaniards, whom they asked in what countrey they were? They answered in Spanish... that the towne of the Christians was fifteen leagues up within the land... Many went on shore and kissed the ground, and kneeling...ceased not to give God thankes.²⁵

The Founding of St. Augustine. — For twenty-five years after De Soto, the Spaniards from time to time tried to explore

or settle Florida. Meanwhile, the French Huguenots (see list, 1535) had found their way to this coast, and built two forts, one at Port Royal, and the other, Fort Caroline, near the present site of St. Augustine. The Spaniards were now more set on Florida than ever, and sent out Menendez to dislodge the



BUILDING OF FORT CAROLINE. (After contemporary drawing in De Bry.)

French and found a Spanish fort. After hard fighting, he drove the French away from Fort Caroline, and then started a Spanish fort, whose beginning is thus described by the chaplain of the Spanish fleet:

Two companies of infantry now disembarked; ... they were well received by the Indians, who gave them a large house belonging to a chief, and situated near the shore of a river. [The captains of these

two companies at once] ordered an intrenchment to be built around this house, with a slope of earth and fascines [bundles of small sticks], these being the only means of defense possible in that country, where stones are nowhere to be found. Our fort is at a distance of about fifteen leagues from that of the enemy (Fort Caroline). The energy and talents of those two brave captains, joined to the efforts of their brave soldiers, who had no tools with which to work the earth, accomplished the construction of this fortress of defense; and when the general disembarked he was quite surprised with what had been done.

On Saturday, the 8th, the general landed with many banners spread, to the sound of trumpets and salutes of artillery. As I had gone ashore the evening before, I took a cross and went to meet him, singing the hymn We praise thee, O God. The general marched up to the cross, . . . and there they all kneeled and embraced the cross. A large number of Indians watched these proceedings and imitated all they saw done. The same day the general took formal possession of the country in the name of his Majesty.²⁶

This was the beginning of St. Augustine. After this, the Spaniards became masters of Florida, and their new settlement grew and flourished.

STUDY ON 4.

1. Through what states must De Soto and his men have wandered?
2. What were they looking for? 3. To what class of men did his followers mostly belong? 4. Describe their treatment of the Indians. 5. Why could they conquer the Indians more easily than the Indians could conquer them? 6. Tell three things about the character of De Soto. 7. What was the Great River, and why do you so decide? 8. What had De Soto to discourage him? 9. Why should his followers be afraid to have the Indians know that he was dead? 10. Find four differences between the way that the Spaniards started out from San Lucar, and the way they left the Great River. 11. How long did the wanderings of De Soto's party last? 12. Who had tried to explore Florida before? (For this and the next two questions, see list at end of Group.) 13. Who had discovered it? 14. Who had probably discovered the Great River before De Soto saw it? 15. What was

the first house at St. Augustine, and who built it? 16. How was it defended? 17. Why should the first settlements in Florida be forts? 18. How did the French make Fort Caroline?

Supplementary Reading. - Parkman, Pioneers of France in the New World, ch. ix. Menendez, same, ch. vii. Massacre of the Heretics, same, ch. viii. The Vengeance of De Gourges, same, ch. viii.; also in Library of American Literature, viii, 97.

--05**26**500--

5. SPANISH MONKS IN THE NEW WORLD.

Thus did the Castilians enter of yore, O my children; but it was a fearful thing when they entered; their faces were strange, and the chiefs took them for gods. - From an Indian Record.27

Las Casas. — One of the companions of Columbus was a young Spanish monk called Las Casas, who devoted his whole life to the Indians, and whom the Spanish monarchs named their Universal Protector. For them he crossed the ocean fourteen times, and suffered much hardship and sorrow. From his books we learn how the Indians were treated in the West Indies.

The main care was to send the men to work in the gold mines..., and to send the women to... till the ground.... The men perished in the gold mines with hunger and labor, the women perished in the fields.... And as for the blows (After a photograph.) which they gave them with whips, cudgels, and



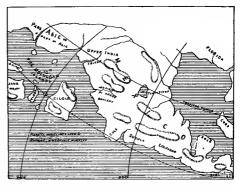
SPANISH MONK.

their fists . . . I could be hardly able to make . . . a narration . . . of those things. [One of the chiefs having fled] to escape these torments [assembled the Indians and told them the Spaniards were coming. Then] taking up a little chest filled with gold, he proceeded in these words: "Behold here the god of the Spaniards. . . . If we do keep this god till he be taken from us, we shall be surely

slain, and therefore I think it good . . . to cast it into the river"; so . . . the chest was cast into the river 28

Father Marco's Expedition. - Now, among the friends of

Las Casas was the viceroy or governor of Mexico; and he "was for
reducing the Indians
rather by preaching of
religious men, than by
force of arms." So,
wishing to explore the
country northward, he
sent out a Franciscan
monk, Father Marco by
name, in company with
another monk, and with



EUROPEAN IDEA OF AMERICA IN 1530. (From a 16th Century Map.)

Indian guides. His orders were:

You will take the greatest care to observe the... peoples... the plants... the wild animals... the stones and metals.... You are to keep yourself constantly informed as to the neighborhood of the sea.... You are to make the people of the country understand that there is a God in heaven and an emperor on earth.²⁹

Father Marco had for one of his guides a negro, one of the four men who had been left from Narvaez' expedition, and who had made their way from Florida to Mexico. (See list of events, 1527.) The record of Father Marco's journey runs thus:

In thirty leagues, ... he met with nothing worth observation.... He held on his way through a desert, four days' journey, leaving behind many Indians, and then came upon others who . . . gave the Father much provision, touched his habit, called him a man come from heaven, and by means of the interpreters, he preached to them the knowledge of the true God. These said that four days up the country ... was a ... spacious plain, where the people ... had vessels of gold . . . and ornaments of it hanging in their ears and noses.... [He] advanced four days among these same people, till he came to a town...where he was well entertained, and stayed till Easter. [From here he despatched messengers, who in a few days sent back word of a large country called Cibola], where were seven great cities . . . , the houses of stone, one or two stories high,... the doors adorned with turkey-stones [turquoises], and the inhabitants all clothed. [So Father Marco set out for Cibola. The Indians along the way presented him with provisions and brought] their sick to him to be cured, over whom he read the Gospels. [On his way he came to] a pleasant town, where they watered their fields with trenches, and abundance of men and women came out to meet him clothed in cotton and cows' hides. . . . Holding on his way [through] deserts and through pleasant vales, [he met at last an Indian] very melancholy [who said that the messenger and some of his companions had been killed and that] there was no going to Cibola. [The Indians then] weeping and wailing . . . refused to go forward; and the Father went aside to pray. [After a little, with a few of the Indians he went on till be came in sight of one of the cities.] Father Marco having made all the observations he thought necessary, with the assistance of the Indians . . . laid together an heap of stones . . . and erected a cross on it, taking possession for the king of Spain of the seven cities, ... and so returned. . . . The fame of Father Marco's relation . . . excited the viceroy to undertake that conquest.30

Many think that these seven cities of Cibola were settlements of Pueblo Indians. (See Map No. 8.) One of our army officers visited these Indians in 1858, and says that as the sun went down, one of their distant towns looked "like the

towers and battlements of a castle." Built on a lofty cliff, it was defended by a stone wall fifteen feet high, and the houses



PUEBLO OF TAOS. (After a Photograph.)

were in stories. The gardens were watered from pipes that led from a common cistern or reservoir of stone. The town was reached by a long flight of steps cut in the rock. "The scene, ... animated by the throngs of Indians in their gaily colored dresses, was one of the most remarkable I had ever witnessed." 31

STUDY ON 5.

1. How did it happen that the Spaniards could so enslave the Indians?
2. What reasons had the Indian chief for thinking that the god of the Span-

iards was gold? 3. Why should the viceroy of Mexico want Father Marco to observe the people carefully on his expedition? 4. The plants, animals, and stones? 5. What great differences between the expeditions of De Soto and Father Marco? 6. What reason for these differences? 7. What was the connection of each expedition with that of Narvaez? 8. Judging from the map on p. 38, where did each expect to arrive? 9. What discovery had to be made before people would stop expecting this? 10. What part of our country did Father Marco explore? 11. Give three reasons for thinking that Cibola was the Pueblo country. 12. What were the cows' hides that Father Marco found the people wearing? 13. Of what use was the expedition of Father Marco?

Supplementary Reading.—Frank Cushing's Life among the Zunis, Century Magazine, August and December, 1882, and February and May, 1883. Coronado's Letter to Mendoza in Old South Leaflets.

The Land of the Pueblos, by Susan E. Wallace.

6. THREE ENGLISH CAPTAINS.

ം;പ്⇔ം—

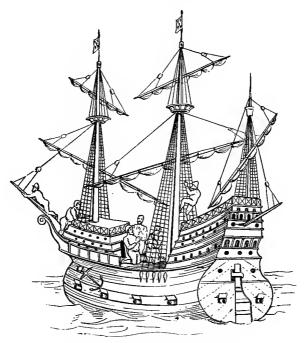
He is not worthy to live at all who for fear or danger of death shunneth his country's services or his own honor, since death is inevitable and the fame of virtue immortal. — SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT, Raleigh's half-brother.³²

Sir Francis Drake plunders the Spaniards and finds New Albion.—In 1577, that "right rare captain," Sir Francis Drake, set sail from Plymouth with five ships in company, to plunder the Spanish Main [South America]. After doubling Cape Horn, they soon heard of a Spanish ship lying at Valparaiso. From one of the journals kept on this voyage, we read:



ENGLISH KNIGHT IN XVI. CENTURY. (After portrait of Raleigh.)

We found indeed, the ship riding at anchor, having on her eight Spaniards... We stowed them under hatches all save one, ... who suddenly... leaped overboard, ... and swam ashore to the town.... Our General manned his boat... and went to the town, and being come to it, we rifled it, [as well as the ship, where] we ... found... good store of the wine of Chili and 25,000 pieces of



SPANISH GALLEON. (From De Bry's Voyages.)

very pure and fine gold.... So going on our course,... we went to a certain port... where being landed, we found by the seaside a Spaniard lying asleep, who had lying by him thirteen bars of silver...; we took the silver and left the man....

[At Lima], we found ... about twelve sail of ships.... Our

General rifled these ships, and found in one of them a chest full of ... plate, and good store of silks and linen cloth and took the chest into his own ship and good store of the silks and linen. In which ship he had news of another. [Near Panama], we took this prize [and] found in her great riches, as jewels and precious stones, thirteen chests full of ... plate, four score pounds weight of gold, and six and twenty tons of silver.

Drake then sailed northward to thirty-eight degrees, where it pleased God to send us into a fair and good bay, [where] we an-The news of our being there being spread . . . the people that inhabited round about came down [singing and dancing], and amongst them the king himself, a man of goodly stature . . . with many other tall and warlike men. . . . The general permitted them to enter within our bulwark, where they ... made signs ... that they would resign unto him their right and title of the whole land.... In which to persuade us the better, the king and the rest ... joyfully singing a song, did set the crown upon his head, [and] enriched his neck with all their chains; . . . which thing our General thought not meet to reject.... Wherefore in the name and to the use of her Majesty, he took the scepter, crown, and dignity of the said country in his hands. . . . Our General called this country Nova Albion, and . . . at our departure . . . set up a monument ... of her Majesty's right and title to the same, namely, a plate nailed upon a fair great post, whereupon was engraven . . . the free giving up of the province and the people into her Majesty's hands.

[Thence sailing, they returned to England by the East Indies and the Cape of Good Hope.] 33

The North-west Passage.—Sir Humphrey Gilbert wrote a long argument to prove that America is an island, and "that there lyeth a great sea between it, Cataia, and Grondland, by which any man of our countrey, that will give the attempt, may with small danger, passe to Cataia, the Molluccae, India, . . . in much shorter time, than either the Spaniard or Portugal doeth,"

and "be able to sell all manner of merchandise" far cheaper.³⁴ This was the famous *north-west passage* which Martin Frobisher made three voyages to find, exploring the region round Frobisher's Bay. In the records of these voyages we read:

[Captain Frobisher set forth in a] tall shippe of hir Majesties, ... [hoping] that there wil be found a thorough passage into the sea, which lieth on the back side of ye said New found land . . ., by the which we maye go unto Cataya, . . . the East india, and all the dominions of the Great Cane of Tartaria. . . . At our arrivall heere, all the seas about this coast were so covered over with huge quantitie of great ise that we thought these places might only deserve the name of the Isie Sea. [While on these coasts, a sudden storm came up; part of the men being on land], laye there al night upon harde cliffes of snowe and ise, both wette, and cold, and comfortlesse, [while the ships had] . . mountaines of fleeting ise on every side, . . . the least of all of them . . . able to have split asunder the strongest shippe of the worlde. . . . But God being our best steresman . . . we did happily avoyde those present daungers. . . . 35

Sir Walter Raleigh fits out an Exploring Expedition.— Sir Walter Raleigh was a good English knight, who had fought with the Huguenots in the long French wars. And there he had met one of the Frenchmen who had escaped from Fort Caroline, and became good friends with him; and having now great wealth from the favor of the Queen, he resolved to spend it in making new discoveries and settlements westward. So he asked from the Queen a charter, wherein it was set forth that "Elizabeth, by grace of God of England . . . Queen," gives "to our trusty and well-beloved servant Walter Raleigh Esquire . . . free liberty . . . to discover . . . such remote heathen and barbarous land . . . as to him . . . shall seem good, and the

same to have, hold, occupy and enjoy... forever." This charter was fairly written out on a great piece of parchment and sealed with the Queen's great seal. Raleigh then sent out "two barks well furnished with men and victuals," and the captains kept the records of the voyage. In these records we read:

[After leaving the West Indies, they came at last to anchor by an island called Roanoke which] had many goodly woods full of ... the highest and reddest cedars in the world.... The next day there came to us divers boats, and in one of them the king's brother accompanied with forty or fifty men, very handsome and goodly people, and in their behaviour as mannerly and civil as any of Europe, ... he made all signs of joy and welcome, ... making show the best he could of all love.... He sent us every day ... fat bucks, ... hares, fish the best of the world ... melons, walnuts, cucumbers ... peas ... and of their country corn, which is very white, fair and well-tasted... 36

Beyond this island there is the mainland, which the captains described as like the island for its fertile soil and gentle people. When Sir Walter heard such report of this new land, he named it Virginia, in honor of his virgin Queen, and sought two several times to plant an English colony at Roanoke, spending great sums thereon. But the colonists for the most part returned to England, and of those who remained behind, no man knows the story.

STUDY ON 6.

1. Why did Drake wish to plunder the Spanish colonies? 2. If a man should start out now with a ship and do as Drake did, what would we call him? 3. Where was New Albion? 4. How did the natives receive Drake? 5. What right had he to claim the country for Elizabeth? 6. Give two adjectives which would describe Drake's character. 7. What advantage would there be in a north-west passage from Europe to India? 8. Why would the English be able to sell "all manner of merchandise" far cheaper

than the Spanish and Portuguese if they could find a north-west passage, and keep it to themselves? 9. What were the difficulties on making the passage? 10. How did Frobisher and his men meet these difficulties? 11. What else was Frobisher after beside the north-west passage? 12. Who besides these men had tried to find a way through or around America to India? 13. What sort of a man was Raleigh? 14. What was a charter? 15. In what part of the present United States did his captains land? 16. What were its native productions? 17. How did the natives receive them? 18. What were the occupations of the natives?

Supplementary Readings. — Longfellow's Sir Humphrey Gilbert. Kingsley's Amyas Leigh; or, Westward Ho.



7. LIST OF IMPORTANT VOYAGES AND ENTER-PRISES, 1492-1607.

A. 1492-1519. — Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen in Spain; Henry VII., king of England; all civilized Europe CATHOLIC.

1492.—COLUMBUS discovers certain West Indian islands. (See p. 22.) 1493.—Columbus discovers Jamaica and establishes a Spanish colony there. Las Casas accompanies him and begins his work for the Indians. (See p. 37.)

1497.—John Cabot discovers land in the vicinity of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. (See p. 27.)

Vasco Da Gama, a Portuguese captain, sailing in the service of the Portuguese king, rounds the Cape of Good Hope, and reaches India in 1498. (See p. 28.)

1498. — Columbus discovers Trinidad and enters the Orinoco River.

1499. — Amerigo Vespucci, a Florentine of good merchant-family, sailing in the service of the king of Spain, discovers the northern coast of South America. He claims to have reached it in a previous voyage in 1497.

1502.—Columbus, on a fourth and last voyage, discovers the coasts adjoining the Bay of Honduras. (See p. 29.)

1504. — French fishermen fish for cod on the banks of Newfoundland and enter the St. Lawrence.

1513. — Ponce de Leon, a Spanish nobleman, fits out an exploring expedition at his own expense, and in the name of the king of Spain discovers and claims the peninsula of Florida.

Balboa, a Spanish captain at Darien, fits out an exploring expedition and discovers the Pacific Ocean, which he claims for the monarchs of Spain.

- B. 1519-1558.— The Emperor Charles the Fifth, ruling over Germany, Austria, Spain, and Spanish America; King Henry VIII., King Edward VI., and Queen Mary reigning in England; King Francis I., the Gentleman, ruling in France; LUTHER preaching against the Pope, and many people leaving the Roman Catholic Church and becoming PROTESTANTS.
- 1519-1521.— Cortez, a Spanish officer, enters and conquers Mexico for the king of Spain, and the Spaniards begin to settle in Mexico and Central America.
- 1519–1522. **MAGELLAN**, a Portuguese gentleman of good family, sailing in the service of the king of Spain, circumnavigates the world, going by way of the Straits of Magellan.
- 1524. Verrazano, a Florentine captain in the service of the king of France, sailing directly across the Atlantic in search for Cathay, coasts the American shore from about Cape Fear to near Newfoundland. (Sometimes doubted.)
- 1527. Narvaez, a Spanish gentleman, is given a charter by the king of Spain to enter and colonize the country between Mexico and Florida; the expedition lands in Florida, but all are lost, save four men, who, after nine years of wandering, reach Mexico.
- 1531-1532.—Pizarro, son of a Spanish gentleman, conquers Pern in the name of the king of Spain, and Spaniards begin to settle it.

Expeditions sent out by Cortez begin to explore the Pacific coast.

1533. — First printing-press in America set up in Mexico.

1534.—Jacques Cartier, a French sailor in the service of the king of France, coasts along Labrador and about the mouth of the St. Lawrence.

Parliament decrees that what the king commands in the way of worship shall be obeyed by all his subjects.

Cortez enters and settles Lower California.

1535. — Cartier, sailing as before, enters the St. Lawrence, and hoping that it may prove the way to India, explores it as far as the present site of Montreal.

Calvin, a French Protestant, founds the Presbyterian sect. His followers are called Huguenots in France.

1539. - Ferdinand De Soto fits out his expedition. (See p. 3I.)

Father Marco sent to explore northward from Mexico. (See p. 37.)

1540.—Coronado, a Spanish gentleman and captain, in the service of the viceroy of Mexico, heads an exploring expedition which makes its way through the present territories of New Mexico and Arizona, discovering the Colorado, and entering the lands of Colorado and Kansas, in search for the great and wealthy city of Quivira.

Loyola, a Spanish Catholic, founds the Jesuits, an order of men who vow never to marry, never to work for riches or fame, but only for the glory of God and the Catholic Church.

- 1542.—Cabrillo, a Portuguese captain in the employ of Spain, sails along the western American coast, to somewhere beyond Cape Mendocino.
- 1553. Queen Mary the Catholic crowned in England, and 800 Protestants flee to the Continent, for fear of persecution unless they turn back to the Pope.
- C. 1558-1607. Queen Elizabeth ruling in England; wars between Catholics and Huguenots in France; Catholics persecuted in Protestant countries, and Protestants persecuted in Catholic countries.
- 1562. French Huguenots attempt to make a settlement at Port Royal, S.C.; build a fort, but the settlement is a failure.
- 1563.—John Hawkins, an English captain, brings 300 negroes to the West Indies to sell for slaves. This sort of trade was begun by the Portuguese nearly fifty years before.

1564. — French Huguenots build Fort Caroline. (See p. 35.)

1565. — Spaniards found St. Augustine. (See p. 34.)

1572. — Francis Drake, fitting out an expedition at his own expense, goes marauding among the Spanish settlements in America.

1576. — Martin Frobisher sails to find a north-west passage to India and China. (See p. 44.)

1577-1579.— Francis Drake, sailing as before, plunders the Spaniards, visits New Albion, and circumnavigates the world. Is made a knight by Queen Elizabeth. (See p. 41.)

1584.—Sir Walter Raleigh, an English knight, sends out men at his own expense, to explore the North American coast, north of the Spanish

settlements. The land about Roanoke Island explored, named VIRGINIA, and claimed for Queen Elizabeth. (See p. 44.)

- 1585. Raleigh sends out a colony to settle at Roanoke. Nearly perishing of want, they are removed by Drake the next year.
- 1587. Raleigh fits out a second colony, part of whom return, and part of whom are lost.
- 1598-1599. Spaniards conquer and occupy New Mexico along the course of the Rio Grande.
- 1602. Those who are discontented with the Church of England and will have neither Pope, king, nor bishops over them, form a church of their own in North England; are persecuted for it. (Separatists.)
- 1603.—French fur-traders, accompanied by Champlain, enter the St. Lawrence; Champlain explores the Saguenay and the shores of Nova Scotia. They return to France with a rich cargo of furs.
- 1604.—French nobles and fur-traders obtain a charter from the French king, giving them a monopoly of the fur trade; that is, no one else can buy or sell the furs of the St. Lawrence region. Champlain accompanies the expedition, and they try to make a settlement at *Port Royal* in Nova Scotia.

1605. — Champlain explores southward along the New England coast as far as Martha's Vineyard.

FIRST STUDY ON LIST.

1. Take the outline map of North America, and mark with green all the parts first discovered by Spaniards, and the places settled by them. 2. Mark the same for the French with blue. 3. For the English with red. 4. Print on your map, opposite the place most closely connected with it, each of the following names: Columbus, Cabot, Ponce de Leon, Balboa, Cortez, Cartier, De Soto, Sir Walter Raleigh. 5. What parts of the United States had been entered by explorers?

SECOND STUDY ON LIST.

1. Up to 1513, what was the native land and the occupation of most of the discoverers? 2. Who sent them out and paid their expenses? 3. Answer the same questions for the discoveries between 1513 and 1519. 4. For those between 1519 and 1558. 5. For those between 1558 and 1607. 6. Who made the first successful settlement within the present boundaries of the United States, and where was it? 7. What other people had tried to make settlements within our present boundaries and had failed?

THIRD STUDY ON LIST.

1. To what church did most of the people of Europe belong when Columbus discovered America? 2. What new churches had sprung up before 1607? 3. Who first found the continent of North America? 4. Who first found that of South America? 5. Who first found India? 6. What was the first proof that men had that the world was certainly round? 7. Why should the Portuguese have found the best way to India before the Spaniards did? (See list, p. 14.) 8. Why should Columbus be regarded as the greatest of all the discoverers?

General Supplementary Reading for Period of Discovery.—Irving's Columbus and the Companions of Columbus. Prescott's Conquest of Mexico and Conquest of Peru. Higginson's Young Folks' History of Explorers. Edward Eggleston's Montezuma.

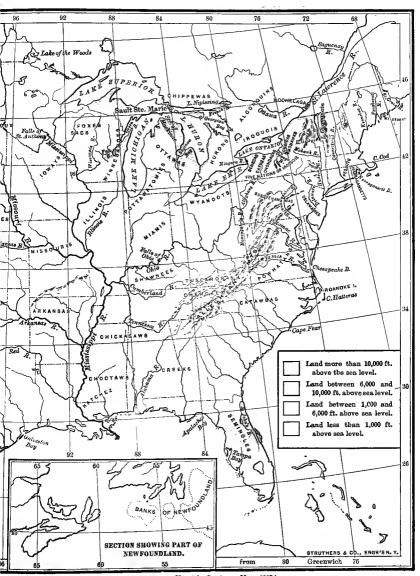
Eggleston's, Higginson's, and Scudder's United States History.



REFERENCE MAP OF MEXICO, CENTRAL AMERICA, AND THE WEST INDIES.



(Compiled from H. H. Bancroft's "Native Races," Lewis and Clarke's Expedit



tilin's North American Indians, and Eggleston's Chart in Century, May, 1883.)

GROUP III.

COLONIAL TIMES: 1607-1763.

1. INDIAN LIFE AND REMAINS.

Here thorny ways, and here falling trees, and here wild beasts lying in ambush. Either by these you might have perished, my offspring, or here by floods you might have been destroyed, my offspring, or by the uplifted hatchet in the dark outside the house. Every day these are wasting us; or deadly invisible disease might have destroyed you, my offspring.—Iroquois Book of Rites.³⁷

Native Races of America. — Columbus, De Soto, Father Marco, Drake, and Raleigh's men, all have something to tell us of Indians. But these Indians were not all alike. They were divided into many distinct tribes, each having its own chief, its own ideas, its own language, its own manners and customs. The names of some of the more important and better-known tribes are inserted in the map, as nearly as possible in the places where they were first found. But the Indians have changed their ranges so often since the white men came, that the map cannot be exact.

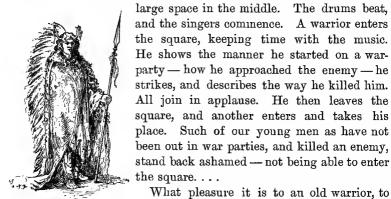
Life in an Indian Village of the Sacs and Foxes.—A famous chief among the Sacs and Foxes, has told us in his autobiography, how life went on in one of the villages of his people. He says:

When we returned to our village in the spring, from our wintering grounds, . . . the next thing to be done was to bury our dead. . . . We would next open the caches [little concealed cellars] and take

out corn and other provisions, which had been put up in the fall, and then commence repairing our lodges. As soon as this is accomplished we repair the fences around our fields, and clean them off, ready for planting corn. This work is done by our women. The men, during this time, are feasting on dried venison, bear's meat, wild fowl, and corn, prepared in different ways; and recounting to each other what took place during the winter.

Our women plant the corn, and as soon as they get done, we make a feast, and dance the crane dance, in which they join us, dressed in their best, and decorated with feathers. At this feast our young braves select the young woman they wish to have for a wife. . . .

When this is over, we feast again, and have our national dance. The large square in the village is swept and prepared for the purpose. The chiefs and old warriors take seats on mats which have been spread at the upper end of the square, the drummers and singers come next, and the braves and women form the sides, leaving a



What pleasure it is to an old warrior, to SIOUX CHIEF. (After Catlin.) see his son come forward and relate his exploits. It makes him feel young, and induces

him to enter the square, and [fight his battles over again]....

When our national dance is over, our corn-fields hoed, and every weed dug up, and our corn about knee-high, all our young men would start in a direction towards sun-down, to hunt deer and buffalo — being prepared, also, to kill Sioux if any are found on our hunting grounds, . . . and the remainder of our people start to fish, and get mat stuff. Every one leaves the village, and remains about forty days. They then return: the hunting party bringing in dried buffalo and deer meat, and sometimes Sioux scalps, when they are found trespassing on our hunting grounds. . . .

The others [bring] dried fish, and mats for our winter lodges. Presents are now made by each party; the first, giving to the others dried buffalo and deer, and they, in exchange, presenting them with lead, dried fish and mats. This is a happy season of the year—having plenty of provisions, such as beans, squashes, and other produce, with our dried meat and fish, we continue to make feasts and visit each other, until our corn is ripe. Some lodge in the village makes a feast daily, to the Great Spirit. . . . Every one makes his feast as he thinks best, to please the Great Spirit, who has the care of all beings created. Others believe in two Spirits: one good and one bad, and make feasts for the Bad Spirit, to keep him quiet!...

When the corn is fit to use, another great ceremony takes place, with feasting, and returning thanks to the Great Spirit for giving us corn. . . .

We next have our great ball play — from three to five hundred on a side play this game. . . . We . . . continue our sport and feasting, until the corn is all secured. We then prepare to leave our village-for our hunting grounds.³⁸

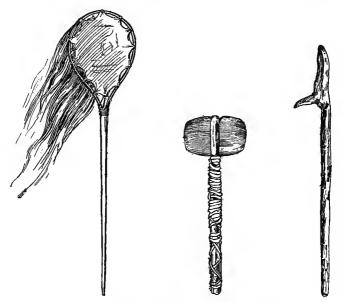
Indian Collections at Washington. — Great collections have been made at Washington of things made by our native tribes;



PIECE OF WAMPUM.

in these collections you see many specimens of wampum, or strings of shells used for money; baskets, made of bark, grass,

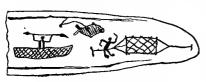
twigs; spoons, chairs, boxes, combs, war-clubs of wood; bone awls; leather lassoes; cotton sashes and scarfs; pottery, in the



A SCALP, TOMAHAWK, AND CORN DIGGER.

form of vases, plates, cups, bowls, pitchers, water-jars; arrow-heads and hatchets of stone; stone hammers and knives.

Indian Mounds and their Contents. - Not only did our



AN ALASKAN PICTOGRAPH.

(Scratched on a piece of bone, and showing an Alaskan harpooning a whale.)

first settlers find Indians dwelling in little villages all over the country, but as they pressed into the Mississippi Valley, they found here and there strange Mounds, heaped up of earth and stones, and

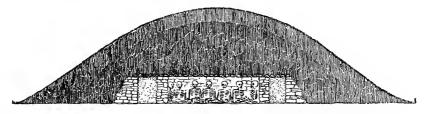
overgrown with grass and trees, and the trees were often very

old. Some of the mounds were round and smooth, like little hills: others, long and winding like great serpents; and again, they had odd shapes of animals. From that day to this, men have tried to find out who the Moundbuilders were; but they do not PIECE OF POTTERY FROM THE PUEBLO yet know, although they are com-



INDIANS. (Washington Collection.)

ing more and more to think that they were also Indians. On digging into these old mounds, they have found the following



SECTION OF AN INDIAN MOUND. (From Report of the Ethnological Bureau, Washington.)

objects: skeletons, stone arrow-points, stone knives and scrapers, copper beads and bracelets, copper axes and awls, stone pipes, broken pottery, bone awls, shell beads and ornaments.

FIRST STUDY ON I, MAP, AND PICTURES.

1. Make a list of what the Indians did for a living. 2. How was the work divided? 3. On what could they live in the winter and early spring? 4. How did they amuse themselves? 5. What sort of men were the most admired among them? 6. Why were the Foxes enemies to the Sioux? 7. Make a list of Indian manufactures, as shown by the Washington Collections. 8. Make a list of the products of the country used by them, as seen in these sources. 9. What can you add to this list from the accounts of the Indians given by Columbus, De Soto, Father Marco, Drake, and Ralefgh's men? [Let different pupils look up the different accounts.] 10. What could the Mound-builders do and make?

SECOND STUDY ON I, MAP, AND PICTURES, WITH REVIEW.

1. What had the Indians that Europeans could want? 2. What had Europeans that Indians could want? 3. How did the Indians pay each other for what they wanted? 4. How could they pay Europeans? 5. In 1607, what parts of the land which now belongs to the United States were known to the English? 6. To the Spanish? 7. To the French? 8. What civilized people were nearest California? 9. How could they easily reach it? 10. Name the waters by which the Indians and the first settlers could reach the Mississippi from the St. Lawrence. 11. In what parts of our country had the white men and the Indians already met? 12. How had the white men been received by the Indians? 13. Let each pupil give an instance. 14. Why were the Indians so named?

Supplementary Reading. — Manners and Customs of the Indians, in Old South Leaflets, published by Heath, Boston. George B. Grinnell's Pawnee Hero Stories and Folk-Tales. Charles G. Leland's Algonquin Legends of New England. Schoolcraft's White Stone Canoe, in Library American Literature, V. 281. Longfellow's Hiawatha. Cooper's Last of the Mohicans. Drake's Book of the Indians. Eggleston's Famous American Indians. Catlin's North American Indians.

See local collections of Indian relics.

2. THE PLANTING OF JAMESTOWN; OR, THE BEGINNING OF VIRGINIA.

Britons, you stay too long:

Quickly aboard bestow you;

And with a merry gale

Swell your stretch'd sail

With vows as strong

As the winds that blow you.

And cheerfully at sea,
Success you still entice,
To get the pearl and gold;
And ours to hold;
Virginia,
Earth's only Paradise.

- From a poet of Elizabeth's time. 39

The London and Plymouth Companies and their Charter.—Raleigh's colony had failed, but Englishmen had no thought of giving up so fair a country as Virginia. So, in 1606, two trading companies were formed, one in London, and the other in Plymouth, of "sundry Knights, Gentlemen, Merchants, and other Adventurers"; and, Queen Elizabeth being dead, and King James the First being come to the throne, they got from him a charter, in which he grants,

that they shall have all the Lands...Rivers, Mines...Fishings [and] Commodities whatsoever...all along the said coast [of Virginia]. And...may...search for all Manner of Mines of Gold, Silver, and Copper.40

The London Company at once began to fit out men and ships for the voyage. Among the directions they gave them were the following:

You must observe if you can, whether the river on which you plant doth spring out of mountains or out of lakes. If it be out of any lake, . . . [it] is like enough, that out of the same lake you shall find some spring which run[s] the contrary way towards the East *India* Sea. . . . ¹¹

The Founding of Jamestown.— In 1607, the London Company sent out three ships, with 105 men on board, described in the passenger-lists as six "Councillors to govern the rest," forty-eight gentlemen, four carpenters, three of them just learning their trade, twelve laborers, most of these being footmen or attendants on the gentlemen, one blacksmith, one sailor, one barber, one bricklayer, one mason, one tailor, two doctors.

The most famous of all these colonists was Captain John Smith,



JOHN SMITH.

(After a portrait on his map of Virginia.)

one of the Councillors. It is in his books on Virginia that we find the following accounts of the doings of the colonists after they had come to land, and chosen the site of Jamestown:

The Councell contrive the Fort, the rest cut downe trees, . . . some make gardens, some nets, &c. The Salvages often visited us kindly. . . .

What toyle we had to guard our workemen adayes, watch all night, resist our enemies, ... cut downe trees, and prepare the ground to plant our

Corne.... [When the ships that brought them out returned to England] there remained neither taverne... nor place of reliefe, but the common Kettell; [which furnished] halfe a pint of wheat, and as much barley boyled with water for a man a day, and this having fryed some 26. weekes in the ship's hold, contained as many wormes as graines;... our drinke was water, our lodgings Castles in the ayre.... From May to September,... fiftie... we buried....

How John Smith gets Corn for the Colony. -

[Soon after, Captain John Smith with six or seven others, went down the river to buy corn. At first, the savages] scorned him, as a famished man; and would in derision offer him a handfull



THE TOWN OF POMEIOC. A PALISADED VILLAGE OF VIRGINIA INDIANS.

(After Cut in Hariot's Virginia.)

of Corne...for...swords,...muskets, and...apparell. But seeing by trade...there was nothing to be had, he...let fly his muskets, whereat they all fled into the woods. So, marching toward their houses, they might see great heapes of corne: much adoe he

had to restraine his hungry souldiers from . . . taking of it, expecting . . . that the Salvages would assault them, as not long after they did with a most hydeous noyse. . . . Being well armed with Clubs, . . . Bowes, and Arrowes they charged the English, that so . . . received them with their muskets . . . that they . . . fled again to the woods, and ere long sent . . . to offer peace Smith told them, if onely six of them would come unarmed and loade his boat [with corn], he would not only be their friend, but . . . give them Beads, Copper, and Hatchets . . . : and then they brought him Venison, Turkies . . . bread, and what they had; singing and dauncing in signe of friendship. . . .

How Captain John Smith trained the Colonists. —

[In 1608, Captain John Smith became president of the colony.] Now . . . the Church was repaired; . . . buildings prepared for the supplyes we expected; [ships came twice from England with men and provisions]; the fort reduced to a five-square forme; . . . the whole company every Saturday exercised . . .: the boats trimmed for trade. [Meanwhile, Captain John Smith took] 30 of us . . . downe the river some 5 myles from James towne, to learne to . . . cut downe trees, and lye in woods. . . . Strange were these pleasures to their conditions [of gentlemen]; yet lodging, eating and drinking, working or playing, they but doing as the President did himselfe, . . . within a weeke . . . became Masters, making it their delight to heare the trees thunder as they fell; but the axes so oft blistered their tender fingers, that many times every third blow had a loud othe to drown the eccho . . . twentie good workmen had beene better then them all.

The Starving Time. -

[In 1609, Captain John Smith went back to England, leaving the colonists with] seaven boats,... the harvest newly gathered... 300 Muskets,... Shot Powder and Match sufficient;... Nets for fishing; Tooles of all sorts...; five or sixe hundred Swine; as many Hennes and Chickens, some Goats and some Sheepe. [But

after he was gone,] as for corne...from the Salvages, we had nothing but mortall wounds, with clubs and arrowes; as for our Hogs, Hens, Goats, [and] Sheepe...our commanders, officers and Salvages daily consumed them, till all was devoured; then swords, armes,...or anything, wee traded with the Salvages... Within six moneths after Captaine Smith's departure, there remained not past sixtie men, women and children, most miserable and poore creatures; and those were preserved for the most part, by roots, herbes, acornes, walnuts, berries, now and then a little fish:...yea, even the very skinnes of our horses.... But God that would not that this Countrie should be unplanted [sent ships and men] to preserve us [1610].⁴²

STUDY ON 2.

1. Judging from the charter, what did the companies want of Virginia?
2. What right had the English king to grant this charter?
3. Who might have disputed this right?
4. What false idea had the London Company about the geography of Virginia?
5. What do you think gentleman meant at this time?
6. Prove it.
7. Which men named in the list would make the best colonists?
8. Why?
9. Give three ways in which John Smith was a good leader for the colonists.
10. What troubles did the colonists have?
11. What do you understand by the common Kettell?
12. By the phrase, our lodgings Castles in the ayre?
13. How did the Indians in this part of our country make their living?
14. How did they defend themselves against enemies?
15. Describe a palisaded village of Virginia Indians.
16. What could the colonists have done so as not to have had a starving time?
17. What was Virginia good for?

Supplementary Reading. — The Settlement of Virginia, by Captain John Smith, in Historical Classical Readings, by Effingham Maynard & Co., N.Y. An Adventure on the Chickahominy and The Romance of Pocahontas, by Captain John Smith, Library American Literature, I. 3, 10. Charles Dudley Warner's Captain John Smith. The Adventures of Captain John Smith, in John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. Edward Eggleston's Pocahontas and Powhatan.

3. SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN; OR, THE BEGIN-NING OF CANADA.

Navigation...is the art which from my early age has won my love, and induced me to expose myself almost all my life to the impetuous waves of the ocean, and led me to explore the coasts of a part of America,...where I have always desired to see...flourish...the only religion [together with the arms of France].... This I trust now to accomplish with the help of God, assisted by the favor of your majesty.— Champlain to the French Queen-Mother. 43

The Founding of Quebec.— While the English were founding Jamestown, the French were making new attempts to settle in the regions of the St. Lawrence, under the lead of Samuel de



SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN.
(After Portrait by Moncornet.)

Champlain. Champlain was the son of a French sea-captain, and a famous captain himself. And now in 1608, he came to the St. Lawrence to found a new colony for the French fur-traders. He says:

I searched for a place suitable for our settlement, but I could find none more convenient or... better situated than the point of Quebec, ... which was covered with nut trees. I at once employed a portion of our workmen in cutting them down, that we might construct our habitation

there:...the first thing we made was the storehouse for...our supplies, which was promptly accomplished through the zeal of all.... Our quarters... were composed of three buildings of two stories.... I had a gallery made all around...at the second

story; ... there were also ditches, fifteen feet wide and six deep. [Outside of these] we placed our cannon... While the carpenters... were employed on our quarters, I set all the others to work clearing up... in preparation for gardens in which to plant grain and seeds.

Champlain and the Indians. -

Meanwhile, a large number of savages were encamped . . . near us...fishing for eels.... At their departure [to hunt the beaver] ... they entrusted to us all their eels and other things until their return.... Their supplies ... lasted them only until ... spring, when I was able to supply them with various things. [In this same winter, after heavy storms, | some Indians appeared on the other side of the river, calling us to go to their assistance, which was beyond our power, on account of the large amount of ice drifting in the river. Hunger pressed upon these poor wretches so severely that, not knowing what to do, they resolved . . . to cross the river or die, hoping that I should assist them. [At very great peril, they came over the crashing blocks of ice] to our abode, so thin and haggard that they seemed like mere skeletons. . . . I ordered some bread and beans to be given them. . . . I lent them also some bark, which other savages had given me, to cover their cabins....

Champlain's Voyages Westward.—It was during this winter that the Indians told Champlain of a beautiful lake to the westward, and promised to show him the way there if he would help them fight the Iroquois. So the next summer, Champlain set out, with two other Frenchmen and sixty Indian warriors, and found the lake which bears his name. During succeeding summers, he explored these regions still further, and discovered Lake Ontario. During these journeys, he made alliances with some of the Indian tribes, for, he says:

They hoped that we would furnish them some of our number to assist them in their wars...; for the Iroquois,... their old enemies, were always on the road, obstructing their passage... Whereupon [we] concluded that it was very necessary to assist them, not only to put them the more under obligations to love us, but also to help my... explorations... and also as... a preparatory step to their conversion to Christianity.... In view of this... I exerted myself to find some good friars, with zeal and affection for the glory of God, that I might persuade them to...go... with me to those countries, and try to plant there the [Catholic] faith.44

Father Le Caron. — One of the first missionaries sent out to Champlain by the rich men of France was a Gray Friar, named Joseph Le Caron. On his arrival in Quebec at the beginning of the winter, Champlain counselled him to remain there until spring, "as being more for his comfort." But he would not change his purpose, and with Indian guides, he started off through the wilderness, and made his way to the shores of Lake Huron, where he established a mission. He writes:

It would be hard to tell you how tired I was with paddling all day, with all my strength, among the Indians; wading the rivers a hundred times and more, through the mud and over the sharp rocks that cut my feet; carrying the canoe and luggage through the woods to avoid the rapids and frightful cataracts; and half starved all the while, for we had nothing to eat but a little sagamite, a sort of porridge of water and pounded maize, of which they gave us a very small allowance every morning and night. But I must needs tell you what abundant consolation I found under all my troubles; for when one sees so many infidels needing nothing but a drop of water to make them children of God, he feels an inexpressible ardor to labor for their conversion, and sacrifice to it his repose and his life. 45

STUDY ON 3.

1. Why was the point of Quebec a good place to choose for founding a colony? 2. What did Champlain's colonists want of a ditch? 3. How was the founding of Quebec like that of Jamestown? 4. Give two reasons why both colonies were placed on rivers. 5. How did Champlain and his Frenchmen treat the Indians? 6. Why did they treat them in this way? 7. Why did the Indians go to hunt beavers? 8. What sort of a character had Father Le Caron? 9. Of what religion were Champlain and Le Caron? 10. Mark on Outline Map No. II. Champlain's discoveries in blue. (See list also, on p. 49.) 11. What was the most direct canoe route from Montreal and Quebec to Lake Huron? 12. What lakes were discovered before 1620, and by whom? (See list, at close of Group III.)

Supplementary Reading. — Parkman's Champlain and his Associates, in Historical Classical Readings of Effingham Maynard. See same, in Parkman's Pioneers of France in the New World.



4. THE PILGRIM FATHERS; OR, THE BEGINNING OF NEW ENGLAND.

Our faithers were Englishmen which came over this great ocean, and were ready to perish in this willdernes; but they cried unto ye Lord, and he heard their voyce, and looked on their adversitie, &c. Let them therfore praise ye Lord, because he is good, & his mercies endure forever. — GOVERNOR BRADFORD.46

John Smith in New England.— Meanwhile, in 1607, the Plymouth Company had tried to make a settlement upon the coast of Maine, but this failing, for a number of years they simply sent out trading and fishing expeditions to the coast of New England, as the northern part of Virginia was already called. John Smith was on such a voyage in 1614, "to take whales, ... and also to make trialls of a mine of gold and copper; if those failed, [to get] fish and furs." He made a map of the coast for the companies and wrote:

The maine staple ... is fish.... The salvages compare the store in the Sea with the haires of their heads: [cod, haddock, herring, mackerel].

Of Bevers, Otters and Martins, blacke Foxes, and Furres of price, may yeerely be had six or seven thousand, and if the trade with the French were prevented, many more: 25,000...this yeere [1614] were brought from those northerne parts into *France*....

Of woods, ... there is ... plenty of all sorts [for] those that build ships and boats. ... 47

The Pilgrims. — Urged on by John Smith's reports, the Plymouth Company tried to establish a colony on the New England coast. But every attempt failed. The first successful settlement was made by one hundred English Separatists, sailing from Plymouth in the Mayflower in 1620. (See list, p. 49, 1602.) Two of their leaders, William Bradford and Edward Winslow, have told us their story:

It is well known unto the godly [how in the north parts of England,] many became enlightened by the word of God, [and] . . . began to reform their lives. [But they] could not long continue in any peaceable condition, but were hunted and persecuted on every side. . . . For some were taken and clapt up in prison, others had their houses beset and watched night and day, . . . and the most were fain to fly [to Leyden in Holland] where they heard was freedom of religion for all men.

After they had lived in this city about some eleven or twelve years, ... they began to [talk]... of removal to some other place. Not out of any new-fangledness, ... but for sundry weighty and solid reasons.... And first, they saw ... that if a better and easier place of living could be had, it would draw many [to join them]....

But that which was... of all sorrows, most heavy to be borne, was that many of their children, by... the... youth in that country... were drawn away... into extravagant and dangerous courses... departing from their parents.

Lastly...a great hope and inward zeal they had of ... advancing the gospel of the kingdom of Christ in those remote parts of the world....

The place they had thoughts on was some of those vast and unpeopled parts of America, which are fruitful and fit for habitation.... 48

At the length the Lord was solemnly sought in the congregation by fasting and prayer to direct us; who moving our hearts more and more to the work, we sent some ... over into England to see what favor... such a thing might find with the king.... His Majesty asking... what profits might arise in the part we intended, ... 'twas answered Fishing. To which he replied ... "Tis an honest trade; 'twas the apostles' own calling." ... [The king not seeming averse, our agents then repaired] to the Virginia Company, who... demanded our ends of going; which being related, they said the thing was of God, and granted a large [charter]...

And when the ship was ready to carry us away, the brethren that stayed at Leyden feasted us that were to go at our pastor's house ...; where we refreshed ourselves, after tears, with singing of psalms ...; and indeed it was the sweetest melody that ever mine ears heard.⁴⁹

How the Pilgrims sought out a Place of Habitation.— These, then, were the Pilgrims, or the Pilgrim Fathers. When, after many tribulations, they at last reached America and landed on Cape Cod,—

They fell upon their knees, and blessed the God of heaven, who had brought them over the vast and furious ocean.... For the season it was winter and... what could they see but a hideous and desolate wilderness, full of wild beasts and wild men? ⁵⁰

After our landing and viewing of the places, so well as we could, we came to a conclusion, by most voices, to set on the main land, in the first place, on a high ground, where there is a great deal of land cleared and hath been planted with corn three or four years ago; and there is a very sweet brook runs under the hillside...

[and a place] where we may harbour our shallops and boats exceeding well. . . .

Monday, the 25th day [of December], we went on shore, some to fell timber, some to saw, . . . and some to carry; so no man rested all that day. ⁵¹ [Three days after,] we went to measure out the grounds — [giving equal lots to all].

But that which was most sad and lamentable was, that in two or three months' time, half their company died, ... being the depth of winter, and wanting houses and other comforts... In the time of most distress, there were but six or seven sound persons who, ... fetched them wood, made them fires, dressed them meat, made their beds, washed their loathsome clothes, ... and all this willingly and cheerfully, ... two of these seven were Mr. William Brewster, their reverend Elder, and Miles Standish, their Captain.

The Pilgrims and the Indians. -

All this while the Indians came skulking about them.... And once they stole away their tools... but about the 16th of March a certain Indian came boldly amongst them, [who spoke broken English and told them many things of the country]. He told them also of another Indian whose name was Squanto,... who had been in England.... [After a time he returned with the great Indian chief, Massasoit, with whom the Pilgrims made a peace that lasted more than fifty years. Squanto came also, and] continued with them, and was their interpreter, and was a special instrument sent of God for their good.... He directed them how to set their corn, where to take fish,... and was also their pilot to bring them to unknown places... and never left them till he died.⁵²

STUDY ON 4.

1. Who had explored the New England coast before John Smith?
2. What would be the chief occupations of those first coming to New England from Europe? 3. What would they need to bring with them? 4. Why should these Plymouth settlers be called "Pilgrims"? 5. Why did they go to Holland? 6. Why to America? 7. Give three reasons why Plymouth

was a good place to choose for settlement. 8. How was it chosen? 9. What proofs that the Pilgrims treated each other as equals? 10. Use some adjectives to describe William Bradford's character. 11. What adjectives would you use to describe the Pilgrims in general? 12. What troubles did they have in getting settled? 13. What help did they have? 14. Give one difference between the settlement of Plymouth and that of Jamestown. 15. What was the nearest civilized settlement to them? 16. What reasons would there be for these two settlements being unfriendly?

Supplementary Reading.—Extracts from Bradford and Winslow's Journal, given in the Library American Literature, I. 116-124. Pilgrims and Puritans, by Miss Nina Moore. Boston, 1889. History of Plymouth Plantation, by Governor William Bradford, in Effingham Maynard's Historical Classical Readings. New York, 1890.

Longfellow's Miles Standish.

Standish of Standish, by Jane G. Austin. Colonial Times in Buzzard's Bay, by William Root Bliss. Boston, 1887.



5. THE BEGINNINGS OF NEW YORK, RHODE ISLAND, AND MARYLAND.

New Netherland, the flow'r, the noblest of all lands;
With richest blessings crowned, where milk and honey flow;—

-From "Spurring-Verses" by one of the Dutch colonists.58

The Dutch Traders.—The Dutch merchants had no mind to let the Spanish, French, and English get all the wealth of the New World, and they, too, as early as 1607, began to trade to America for furs. In an old Dutch manuscript in the state house at Albany, we find the story of their first settlement:

[The Dutch] had frequented this Country a long time ago solely for the purpose of the fur trade. Since the year 1623 the... West India Company [of merchants] caused four Forts to be erected in that Country...; the biggest stands [at the mouth of the Hudson;]...

their Honors named it New Amsterdam [New York]; ... but



DUTCH PATROON, OR LANDED PROPRIETOR.

(After old Portraits.)

it never began to be settled until every one had liberty to trade with the Indians.... [Then] many Servants, who had prospered under the Company, . . . built houses and formed plantations, spread themselves broad and wide, each seeking the best land and to be nearest the Indians in order . . . to trade with them. . . . On the other hand, the English came both from Virginia and New England. Firstly, divers Servants, whose time with their masters had expired, on account of the good opportunity to plant Tobacco here — afterwards Families . . . forced to quit that place both to enjoy freedom of conscience and to escape from the Insupportable Government of N. England ... so that in place of ... Two or three plantations which were here, men saw . . . a Hundred Plantations.54

The Barons of Baltimore. — Meanwhile, Sir George Calvert, an English Catholic, and the Baron of Baltimore, had become deeply interested in America, and wished to found still another



NEW AMSTERDAM IN 1656. (After Van der Donck's New Netherland.)

English colony. His first attempt was made in Newfoundland, but failing there, he went to Jamestown, thinking to settle, perhaps, in that part of Virginia; but the Virginians required of

him and his followers the Oath of Supremacy; that is, they wanted him to swear that the king of England was the true head of the Church. This he could not rightly do, being a Catholic, and the Virginians asked him to leave. On his return to England, however, the king promised him a charter for lands northward of the Potomac. But Sir George soon died, and the charter was given to his son Cecil, and read as follows:

Whereas our well-beloved and right trusty subject, Cecil Calvert, Baron of Baltimore,... hath humbly besought leave of us that he may transport, by his own industry and expense, a numerous colony... to... America... know ye, therefore, that we... have given... by this our present Charter [all the region of Maryland by the Chesapeake;] and we do... create... him,... and his heirs, the true and absolute Lords and Proprietaries [owners] of the region aforesaid... saving always the... allegiance... due to us. 55

People of every religion were to be allowed to worship freely in this new colony. The king, too, gave Lord Cecil full power to make the laws of Maryland, and execute the same; to build towns, wage war, and make peace, without waiting to ask the consent of the king. The first settlement was made by Cecil's younger brother:

To make his entry...safe, [he gave the Indians] Cloth,... Axes, Howes and Knives, which they accepted very kindly, and freely gave consent that hee and his company should dwell in one part of their towne...; and those Indians that dwelt in that part... freely left them in their houses, and some corne that they had begun to plant: It was also agreed between them, that at the end of harvest, they should leave the whole towne; which they did accordingly.⁵⁶

Roger Williams. — The success of the Pilgrims at Plymouth, and the excellence of the land, drew others still to

venture to America; and in 1629 and 1630, a great company of English Puritans, or men who held that the Church of England ought to be made much purer and simpler, came over under the lead of John Winthrop and began to settle Salem, Boston, and the country thereabouts. Among these was Roger Williams, a preacher at Salem. But the Puritans soon found out that he thought differently from themselves about the rights of the Indians, and about various religious subjects, so he had to leave the colony. He writes to a friend:

When I was unkindly and unchristianly, as I believe, driven from my house and land and wife and children (in the midst of a New England winter, . . .) at Salem, that ever honored Governor, Mr. Winthrop, privately wrote to me to steer my course to the Narragansett Bay and Indians. . . . I took his prudent notion as a hint and voice from God, and . . . steered my course from Salem (though in winter snow, which I feel yet) unto these parts, wherein I may say . . . that . . . I have seen the face of God. 57

The following will show how Roger Williams obtained a foothold in the Narragansett country:

I declare to posterity, that were it not for the favor that God gave me with Canonicus, [one of the Indian chiefs] none of these parts, no, not Rhode-Island had been purchased or obtained; for I never got anything out of Canonicus but by gift... And I desire posterity to see the gracious hand of the Most High, ... that when the hearts of my countrymen ... failed me, his infinite wisdom ... stirred up the barbarons heart of Canonicus to love me as a son to his last gasp.... And I never denyed him ... whatever [he] desired of me as to goods and gifts, or use of my boats, or ... the travels of my own person day and night, which though men know not nor care to know, yet the All-Seeing Eye hath seen it and his All-powerful hand hath helped me. Blessed be his holy name to eternity. Roger Williams. 58

STUDY ON 5.

1. In your note-books or on a large sheet of paper, rule off a table like this:

Colony and First Settlemeot.	Date.	Leader or Leaders.	Nationality.	Religion.	Reason for Set- tlement.
Virginia: Jamestown. Massachusetts: Plymouth, Salem.	1607	John Smith.	English	Church of England [Episcopal].	Commerce and Mining,

REFERENCE TABLE FOR THE THIRTEEN COLONIES.

Write under Virginia and Massachusetts, in the first column, the names of the following colonies, in the order given: New Hampshire, New York, Maryland, Connecticut, Rhode Island, Delaware, North Carolina, New Jersey, South Carolina, Pennsylvania, Georgia; fill in, as in the case of Jamestown, date, leader and leaders, etc., of Massachusetts, New York, Maryland, Rhode Island. 2. Why was the mouth of the Hudson a good place for the Dutch traders to choose for settlement? 3. What proof that the Baron of Baltimore was true to what he believed? 4. Answer the same question for Roger Williams. 5. When people treat others badly on account of religious belief, it is called *intolerance*. Give two cases of intolerance that you notice in this lesson.

Supplementary Reading. — Washington Irving's Knickerbocker's History of New York. Benson J. Lossing's Old Time Life in Albany, Library American Literature, VII. 184, or in Life and Times of Philip Schuyler. Paulding's Dutchman's Fireside. Kennedy's Rob of the Bowl [Maryland].

6. THE OPENING OF THE REGION OF THE GREAT LAKES.

You must love the savages with all your hearts, looking at them as bought by the blood of the Son of God, and as our brothers, with whom we are to spend the rest of our lives. — From Instructions for the Huron Missionaries. 59

The Huron Missions.—As we have seen, Father Le Caron had already founded a mission on the shores of Lake Huron; but it was in 1634 that the great missions of the Jesuit Fathers



A JESUIT FATHER.
(After Bonanni.)

were started in the region of the Upper Lakes. Father Brebeuf, one of the first of these Jesuit Fathers to make the journey to the Hurons, describes the hardships of the way much as Le Caron had done. Having reached the Hurons,—

The question arose of building a cabin. The cabins of this country are not...like the rich dwellings of our France nor even like our smallest cottages; ... I cannot describe the Huron dwellings better, than to compare them to garden arbors, ... covered with cedar bark.... There is neither window nor chimney, except a rough hole at the top of the cabin to let the smoke escape. In this style we built our own house.... Inside we fitted it up ourselves so that, although there was nothing grand about it, the

savages constantly came to see and...admire it. We divided it into three rooms. The first...served...for our store of corn, after the style of the savages. The second is where we live, and where we have our cooking, our house-keeping, our mill,...and our sleeping room.... The third part of our cabin is again divided

into two parts.... In one is our little chapel, where every day we celebrate the holy mass, and where we retire to pray to God.... In the other part, we have put our tools.... Meanwhile, as I have said, the savages do not cease coming to admire it all, especially since our mill and our clock have been set up.... As for the clock, ... they all think that it is something alive.... They call it "the captain of the day." When it strikes they say that it speaks.... They ask us what it eats. They sit whole hours, ... in order to hear it speak. They asked in the beginning what it said; we told them two things, that they remembered very well:— one is, that when it

strikes four in the afternoon..., it says, "Go away now, in order that we may shut the door"; as soon as they hear this, they rise at once and go; the other is, that at midday it says,... "Put over the kettle," and they remember this speech better still: for there are certain idle fellows among them who never fail to come at this hour to eat sagamite with us. 60

The Entrance into the Regions of Lake Michigan. — From the first founding of Quebec, the French fur-traders pushed their way among the Indian tribes, to get their wealth of furs; one of the most famous was Jean Nicolet, the first white man to enter the waters of Lake Michigan.



FRENCH FUR-TRADER.
(After Darley.)

I will add here a word on... Mr. Nicolet, interpreter and clerk for the... [fur-trading] Company of New France.... He arrived in Canada in 1618.... He was sent to spend the winter with the Algonquins, so as to learn their tongue. He lived there two years without any white companion, going with the Indians on all their expeditions, and enduring the greatest hardships; often he passed seven or eight days with little or nothing to eat, and once for seven

weeks had no other food than a little bark.... Afterwards...he spent eight or nine years with [another] . . . nation of Algonquins; he was reckoned by these Indians as one of their own number, entered into their frequent councils..., had his own cabin..., did his own fishing and hunting; [here he collected furs for the Company, until he was sent to the [Winnebagoes]...to make peace with them and the Hurons. . . . He set out from the Huron country with seven Indians. [Paddling in canoes to the head of Lake Huron, they made their way into Lake Michigan and across it to the Grand Bay on the Wisconsin Shore. Here landing, he sent one of the Indians to take the [Winnebagoes] ... news of peace, which was well received ... [When he himself appeared before them,] he was clad in a splendid dress of Chinese damask, embroidered with vari-colored birds and flowers. As soon as they perceived him, the women and children ran away, at sight of a man who carried thunder in his hands (for so they described two pistols which he held). The news of his arrival spread throughout the region [of what is now Wisconsin]: an assembly of four or five thousand Indians came together.... Peace was concluded; he returned to the Hurons, and from thence to Three Rivers, where he performed his duties to the great satisfaction of both French and Indians, who loved him equally and very much.61

The Destruction of the Huron Missions. — For fifteen years the Huron Missions went on; then the Iroquois attacked and destroyed them.

All this band of Christians fell for the most part alive into the hands of the enemy, and with them the two fathers.... They were not slain at once, God reserved them for crowns far brighter, ... [for] the death of martyrs....

[On entering the camp of the Iroquois, they received] one storm of blows [on every part of the body.] Father Brebeuf overcome by the weight of the blows, did not therefore lose thought for his flock; seeing himself surrounded by Christians whom he had taught and who were now in captivity with him: "My children," said he to them, . . . "endure with courage the few torments that remain, they will end with our lives; the glory which follows them will endure forever." "Dear father," they replied, . . . "our spirits will be in heaven, while our bodies suffer on earth. Pray God for us, that he will have mercy on us; we will call upon him until death." [Then followed terrible tortures, in the midst of which the fathers died.] **

STUDY ON 6.

1. What European nation opened up the region of the Great Lakes?
2. What two reasons led them into these regions, and what two sorts of people explored them?
3. What were the first settlements in these regions?
4. Who was the very first man to enter the St. Lawrence? (See list, p. 47.)
5. What hardships did the Jesuit Fathers have to endure?
6. What enabled them to endure these hardships?
7. Give examples.
8. What proves them to have been brave men?
9. Unselfish men?
10. In the relations given, how did they get along with the Indians?
11. Give an example.
12. How did they spend their time after they started a mission?
13. Why should a clock have astonished the Indians?
14. How did the company of New France fit Nicolet to be their agent and interpreter?
15. How did it happen that he could go through the Indian country with no companions but Indians?
16. What part of our country did he discover?
17. Who were the first men to explore Lake Superior and enter the Minnesota country beyond? (See list, at close of group.)

Supplementary Reading. — Parkman's Jesuits in North America.

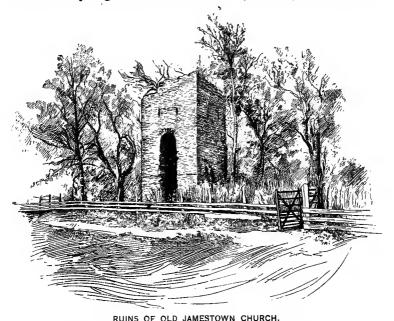


7. ENGLISH COLONIAL GOVERNMENTS.

Sir, I own that we Argue simply about The Affairs of government; but we Feel True. — A Virginia Planter. 63

In Virginia in 1619. — Twelve years after Jamestown was founded, Sir George Yeardley was sent out by the London Company to be governor of Virginia.

For fortification against a forreign ennemie there was none. . . . For people then alive about the number of foure hundred, . . . utterlie destitute of cattle, swine, Poultrie and other Provisions. . . . The natives he founde uppon doubtfull termes. [On Yeardley's arrival, proclamation was made that they were now to be governed by those free lawes which his Majesty's subjects live under in Englande. . . . And that they might have a hande in the governinge of themselves,



Erected on site of that in which the first assembly sat. (From Photograph.)

... [it was granted they should choose burgesses or land-owners of their own number] to make and ordaine whatsoever lawes . . . should by them be thought good. . . . The effect of which proceedinge gave

such incouragement to every person . . . that, . . . within the space of three yeares, our countrye flourished with many new erected Planta-

tions.

After the colonists had elected their burgesses, these met with the governor and his council, who had both been appointed by the London Company; and this meeting made the first Assembly of Virginia.

The most convenient place we could finde to sitt in was... the Churche... but forasmuche as men's affaires doe little prosper where God's service is neglected,... a prayer was said by Mr. Bucke, the Minister, that it would please God to guide... all our proceedings to his owne glory and the good of this Plantation. Prayer being ended,... every man (none staggering at it) took the othe of Supremacy.

The council then proceeded to business; the first being in regard to one Captain Martin, who was called to appear before the Assembly and be judged as to whether he had committed outrages against the Indians or not. Then various laws were passed against idleness, drunkenness, gaming, and fine apparel. Indians were to be used as servants, with the governor's consent; it was expressly enacted, "that no injury be wrought by the English against the Indians whereby present peace might be disturbed"; and a few Indian children were to be educated "in true religion." Next came laws about the planting of corn, of mulberry trees, of "silke-flax," and hemp; "all persons whatsoever upon the Sabbaoth daye shall frequente divine service and sermons both forenoon and afternoon, and all suche as beare armes shall bring their pieces, swordes, poulder and shotte," on pain of a three shillings fine. The Assembly heard also the case of a master against a "treacherous servant," and condemned the latter to "stand fower dayes with his eares nayled to the Pillory . . . and every of those fower dayes [to] be publiquely whipped."64

In Plymouth in 1620. — Before the Pilgrims of the May-flower came to land, they made a written compact with each other:

In the name of God, amen. We whose names are underwritten, the loyal subjects of our dread Sovereign Lord, King James, ... do ... solemnly and mutually in the presence of God, and of one another, ... combine ourselves together into a civil body politic ... to enact, ... such just and equal laws, ... as shall be thought most meet ... for the general good of the colony, unto which we promise all due ... obedience. In witness whereof we have hereunder subscribed our names at Cape Cod the 11th of November, ... 1620.

After this they chose ... Mr. John Carver ... their governor for that year. And after they had provided a place for their goods, ... and begun some small cottages for their habitation, ... they met and consulted of laws, ... still adding thereunto as ... cases did require. 55



The First Puriten Governor of Massachusetts.

(After Portrait by Vandyke.)

The Puritan Government of Boston, Salem, etc.— The Puritans, who had settled Salem, Boston, and the towns around, in 1630, soon after landing made the following agreement among themselves: "Wee...do hereby solemnly... Promisse and bind ourselves to walke in all our wayes according to the Rule of the Gospell."

In the second year of this settlement, the court ordered that henceforward no one

should be allowed to vote unless he was a member of one of the churches of the colony. Among their early laws we find the following: It being one chiefe project of that ould deluder, Satan, to keepe men from the knowledge of the Scriptures, . . .

It is therefore ordered, that every township...appoint one within their towns to teach all such children as shall resort to him to write and reade....

We... declare our utter detestation and dislike that men or women of meane condition, educations, and callinges should take uppon them the garbe of gentlemen, by the wearinge of gold or silver lace or buttons, or [should]... walk in greate bootes; or women of the same rank to weare silke... hoodes or scarfes, which though

allowable to persons of greater estates, or more liberall education, yet we can ... but judge it intollerable in persons of such like condition: it is therefor ordered ... that no person ... whose visible estates, ... shall not exceede the ... value of two hundred poundes, shall weare any gold



OLD MEETING-HOUSE AT HINGHAM.
(From Photograph.)

or silver lace, or gold or silver buttons, . . . or silke hoodes or scarfes, uppon the penalty of ten shillings for every such offence. . . . 66

Government in Connecticut. — In 1639 a daughter-colony was sent out from Massachusetts Bay to Connecticut, where they began the settlement of New Haven. The leader of this colony was a minister, who proposed the following rules for its government, which were accepted:

1. That the Scriptures hold forth a perfect rule for men in their family, church, and commonwealth affairs. 2. That the rules of Scripture... govern the gathering and ordering of the church, the choice of magistrates..., the making... of laws.⁶⁷

FIRST STUDY ON 7.

1. How did the people of Virginia have a hand in governing themselves?

2. Why should this be an encouragement to every person?

3. What part of the government was not chosen by the people of Virginia?

4. Who was the head of the Virginian church?

5. Which of the laws passed in the Virginia assembly were called for by the fact that the Virginians were colonists?

6. What laws did they make that we should not think it right to make?

7. What else did they do beside make laws?

8. Who made the laws in Plymouth?

9. Who chose the governor?

SECOND STUDY ON 7.

1. Who did the voting among the New England Puritans of Massachusetts and Connecticut? 2. Which of the colonies started a public school? 3. Why did they wish one? 4. What law did they make that we should not think of making? 5. What way of punishment had the colonists that we no longer use? 6. What proof that the Puritans did not think all men had equal rights? 7. Whom did they consider the head of the church? 8. Who made the laws and governed the people in Maryland? 9. Fill out Connecticut in your Reference Table for the Thirteen Colonies.

Supplementary Reading. — Hawthorne's Endicott and the Red Cross, in Twice-Told Tales.

8. KING PHILIP'S WAR AND BACON'S REBELLION.

Brothers, — you see this vast country before us, which the Great Spirit gave to our fathers and to us. . . . Brothers, these people from the unknown world will cut down our groves, spoil our hunting and planting grounds, and drive us and our children from the graves of our fathers and our council fires. — From Speech of $Philip.^{68}$

The Causes of King Philip's War. — Of all the Indian wars of the colonists, that known as King Philip's War was the fiercest and greatest. Philip, who was a great chief among the Massachusetts Indians, tried to unite them all in war against the whites. This war lasted three years, and was put down by the colonists themselves, without any help from the mother-country. Its causes, as stated by the Indians in a council held between King Philip and the whites, were:

The Indians . . . said . . . that they had a great fear to have any of their Indians called or forced to be Christian Indians. . . . Such [became disobedient to their Indian Kings]. . . .

Another grievance was... some of their Kings had done wrong to sell so much [land]. They left their people none, and some being given to drunkenness, the English made them drunk and then cheated them in Bargains....

Another grievance, the English were so eager to sell the Indians liquors, that most of the Indians spent all in drunkenness, and then abused the sober Indians.⁶⁹

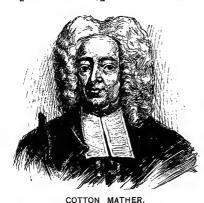
On the other hand, the famous Boston minister, Cotton Mather, says of the causes of the war:

Nor could it be expected that nations of wretches, whose whole religion was . . . devil worship, should not be instigated by the Devil to engage in some early and bloody action, for the extinction of a plantation so contrary to his interests as that of New England. . . .

So that the infant colonies of New England... unanimously resolved, that, with the assistance of Heaven, they would root this nest of serpents out of the world. 70

How the Indians harassed the Colonists.—

[At Mendham,] some Indians, wishing well to Philip's Design, had



A famous New England Puritan minister, grandson of Mr. Cotton. (After Portrait.)

made an Assault upon some of the Inhabitants, as they were at their Labour in the Field, killing five or six of them: as soon as they had done, flying away into the Woods.... Within a little Time after they killed three of [Northhampton] . . . as they were at work in a Meadow.... Six or seven of Springfield soon after going to the Mill..., and venturing without Arms, three of them were killed by some of the enemy, who took the Advantage also to burn four or five Houses. . . :

some few of them...lay lurking in the Swamps thereabouts all the winter....

The End of the Narragansetts.—The most famous action of this war was the destruction of the fort of the Narragansetts, in which the most of that tribe perished.

The Fort was raised upon a Kind of Island of five or six Acres of rising Land in the midst of a Swamp; the sides of it were made of Palisadoes [heavy posts] set upright.... The Place where the *Indians* used... to enter..., was over a long Tree upon a Place of Water, where but one Man could enter at a time, ...: But at one Corner there was a Gap made up only with a long Tree,... over

which Men might easily pass: But they had placed a Kind of Blockhouse right over against the said Tree, from whence they sorely galled our Men that first entred; some being shot dead upon the Tree, ... and some as soon as they entred ...; but at the last, ...

they made the Enemy all retire from their... fortified Places, leaving Multitudes of their dead Bodies upon the Place.... [The fort and all their wigwams were burned.]

Those that were left alive, [were] forced to hide themselves in a Cedar Swamp, not far off, where they had nothing to defend them from the Cold but Boughs of Spruce and Pine Trees. . . . Their Provision also was by the burning of their Wigwams, so much of it spoiled at the taking of their Fort, ... that it was the Occasion of their total Ruine afterwards; they being at that Time driven away from their Habitations, and put by from planting for that next Year. . . . It was confessed by one . . . amongst them, . . . that the Indians lost seven hundred fighting Men that Day, besides three hundred that died of their Wounds . . .; the Number of old Men, Women, and Children, that perished either



PURITAN SOLDIER.

(From Old Descriptions and Costumes.)

by Fire, or that were starved with Hunger and Cold, None of them could tell. . . .

Philip, like a Salvage and wild Beast, having been hunted by the English Forces through the Woods, above an hundred Miles backward and forward, at last... with a few of his best Friends [retired] into a Swamp, which proved but a Prison to keep him fast till the Messengers of Death came by Divine Permission to execute Vengeance upon him....⁷¹

Of Philip's death Cotton Mather wrote:

The World has heard what a Terrible Ruine came soon upon that

woeful Creature, and upon all his people. It was not long before the Hand which now Writes, upon a certain occasion took off the Jaw from the Blasphemous exposed Skull of that *Leviathan* [Philip].⁷²

After King Philip's War was over, the New Englanders had little trouble from the Indians.

Bacon's Rebellion. — During this very time, however, the people of Virginia and Maryland were also having troubles with the Indians.

In these frightful times...neighbors in bodies joined their labors from [one plantation to another], taking their arms into the fields, and setting sentinels; no man stirred out of doors unarmed. Indians were ever and anon espied, three, four, five or six in a party, lurking throughout the whole land....

Frequent complaints of bloodsheds were sent to Sir William Berkeley (then Governor) from the heads of the rivers, which were as often answered with promises of assistance.

These at the heads of the James and York Rivers... grew impatient at the many slaughters of their neighbours and rose for their own defence, who choosing Mr. Bacon for their leader sent oftentimes to the Governor, humbly beseeching a commission to go against those Indians at their own charge, which his Honor as often promised, but did not send. [So, at last, without permission,] they marched into the wilderness in quest of these Indians, [but after them] the Governor sent his proclamation, denouncing all [as] rebels, who should not return... But Mr. Bacon, with fifty-seven men, proceeded [until they reached an Indian fort, where] they... stormed and burnt the fort and cabins, and (with the loss of three English) slew one hundred and fifty Indians....⁷³

After this, there was war and disturbance between Bacon's followers and Governor Berkeley about various political matters until Bacon died, when the rebellion was at last put down.

STUDY ON 8.

1. What were the causes which led to King's Philip's War? 2. What sort of places did the Indians choose to fight in? 3. What advantage did these places give them? 4. Name the ways in which the Narragansetts perished. 5. If you had been one of the fighting Indians, what would you have thought of the English colonists? 6. If you had been a colonist, what would you have thought of the Indians? 7. Why did Cotton Mather feel towards them as he did? 8. In Bacon's Rebellion, who were the rebels? 9. Against whom did they rebel? 10. Why did they rebel? 11. What do you think of the justice of their rebellion?

Supplementary Reading. — King Philip's War and Witchcraft in New England, by Governor Thomas Hutchinson, in Effingham Maynard's Historical Classical Readings. Story of Mary Rowlandson's Captivity, Library American Literature, II. 52. The Beginning of King Philip's War, by William Hubbard, minister of Ipswich, and Eliot's Brief Narrative, in Old South Leaflets. The Great Rebellion in Virginia, in John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. New York, 1879. James Fenimore Cooper's Wept of the Wish-ton-wish.

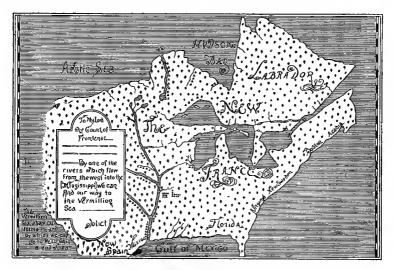
9. THE OPENING OF THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY.

~~;&;~~

It is nearly all so beautiful and so fertile; so free from forests, and so full of meadows, brooks, and rivers; so abounding in fish, game, and venison, that one can find there . . . all that is needful for the support of flourishing colonies. The soil will produce everything that is raised in France. Flocks and herds can be left out at pasture all winter.—LA SALLE, in Letter to French King about the Mississippi. The soil will be about the mississippi. The mississippi. The mississi

Joliet and Marquette. — After the French had made peace with the Iroquois, their traders and priests made their way once

more through the woods and waters of the upper lakes, and brought back news to Montreal and Quebec of a Grand River beyond Lake Superior; to find this river, Frontenac, then Governor of Canada, sent the fur-trader *Joliet*. At Michilimackinac he was joined by *Father Marquette*, and these two set out in their canoes on their work of exploration. On Joliet's return, he gave Frontenac a map of the *Grand River*, of which we give here a copy:



JOLIET'S MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

La Salle. — After Joliet's return, La Salle, a Frenchman of rich and ancient family, who had already explored the Ohio nearly to its mouth, gained permission from his king, Louis the Great, to explore to the westward, with the right to govern all the lands he might discover and colonize.

With *Tonty*, an Italian soldier, as his chief companion, he started off. Their route was marked by the forts they built,—

Fort Niagara, Fort St. Joseph, Fort Crèvecœur, or the Fort of the Broken Heart,—and it took them two years to reach the

Mississippi. At Fort Niagara they built the Griffin, a sailing-vessel, in which they went to Green Bay. Thence La Salle sent back the Griffin, laden with furs, and ordered its pilot to bring her back to meet him at the head of Lake Michigan. But the Griffin was lost, and after long waiting, La Salle started back to get new supplies, leaving Tonty at Fort Crèvecœur. La Salle wrote:

Though the thaws of approaching spring greatly increased the difficulty of the way, interrupted as it was everywhere by marshes and rivers, to say nothing of ... the danger of meeting Indians of four or five different nations, ...



FRENCH KNIGHT OF XVI. CENTURY. (After De Neville.)

as well as an Iroquois army, which we knew was coming that way; though we must suffer all the time from hunger; sleep on the open ground, and often without food; watch by night and march by day, loaded with baggage, such as blanket, clothing, kettle, hatchet, gun, powder, lead, and skins to make moccasins; sometimes pushing through thickets, sometimes climbing rocks covered with ice and snow, sometimes wading whole days through marshes where the water was waist-deep . . . though I knew all this, it did not prevent me from resolving to go on foot to Fort Frontenac. [On the way his men fell sick, he learned that his men at Fort Joseph had betrayed and robbed him, but on he went, got his supplies, and made his way once more to the country of the Illinois; Tonty was gone, Fort Crèvecœur in ruins, and the great town of the friendly Illinois] a meadow black with fire. I spent the night in a distress which you can imagine better than I can write it; and I did not sleep a moment with trying to make up my mind as to what I ought to do.75

At last he decided to go again to Montreal and start a new expedition. But on the way he found Tonty at Michilimackinac; together they returned to Fort Frontenac, and made a fresh start. La Salle writes to the king:

I think I may affirm that the Mississippi draws its source somewhere in the vicinity of the Celestial Empire, and that France... will command the trade of China, following down the new and mighty channel which I shall open to the Gulf of Mexico.⁷⁶



LA SALLE. (From Gravier.)

Once more the two comrades made the long journey to the Illinois country, and floating down the Illinois in their canoes, reached the Mississippi.

We continued our voyage until the 6th [April], when we reached three streams by which the river [Mississippi]... empties into the sea... The ... mouths being found noble, wide and deep,... we prepared a column and a cross, and on the column we painted the arms of France with this inscription: "Louis the Great, King of

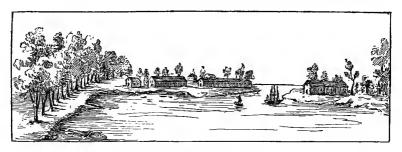
Frauce and Navarre, reigns; April 9th, 1682." All standing under arms, we sang the *Te Deum*. Then after firing off our guns and shouting, "Long live the King!" M. de la Salle put up the column and ... said in a loud voice ...:

"In the name of the most high, powerful, invincible and victorious Prince Louis the Great, by the grace of God King of France and Navarre, ... I... have today taken possession of this land of Louisiana, its seas, havens, ... bays, ... with all the nations, peoples, provinces, towns, ... mines, minerals, streams, and rivers ... along

the river... Mississippi, and the rivers which flow into it, from its source beyond the country of the Sioux... as far as its mouth at the... Gulf of Mexico,... upon the assurance that all these people have given us that we are the first Europeans [who have come into these lands]."

To which every one answered by cries of "Long live the King!"... [Then he erected the cross], before which we sang, "The banners of Heaven's King advance," and the ceremony ended with cries of "Long live the King!"

The Founding of New Orleans. — Having accomplished the complete discovery of the Mississippi, the French made a num-



NEW ORLEANS IN 1719.

(After a "Carte de la Louisiana, par M. de Sérigny" in Thomassy's "Géologie Pratique.")

ber of attempts to found a colony at its mouth, but did not succeed until 1718, when New Orleans was founded by a colony sent out by a great French trading company. Its leader was Bienville, "the Father of New Orleans."

STUDY ON 9.

1. What had prepared the way for the discovery of the Mississippi? 2. What proof is there that Joliet discovered the Mississippi? 3. How far did he go? (See list, 1673.) 4. What false ideas had he about the geography of North America? 5. What good did he think the exploration of the Mississippi would do? 6. Explain the term New Sweden in his map.

(See list, 1638.) 7. Why was the Mississippi country of value to white men? 8. Give proof that La Salle was a man of great determination and energy. 9. At what point of the story does he show these qualities the most clearly? 10. Why should La Salle choose Niagara as a base of supplies, and as a place at which to build a ship? 11. Why was he so anxious to explore the Mississippi to its mouth? 12. What right had La Salle to take possession of Louisiana? 13. What did he mean by Louisiana? 14. What became of La Salle afterwards? (See list, 1684.) 15. Why should the French be so anxious to found a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi? 16. What parts of our country had been taken possession of by the French before 1700? (See list at close of Group.)

Supplementary Reading. — Mrs. Mary Catherwood's Story of Tonty. Parkman's La Salle and the Discovery of the Great West. Maurice Thompson's Story of Louisiana, in Story of the States Series.

10. THE BEGINNING OF PENNSYLVANIA AND GEORGIA.

---05**0**500---

The Englishmen do not love Quakers, but the Quakers are honest men and do no harm; and this is no Englishmen's sea or land, and the Quakers shall come here and welcome. — Words of an Indian Chief. 78

William Penn's Grant.—While the English colonies were growing up in America, a new sect had arisen in England, calling themselves Friends, but called by others in derision, Quakers; and being oppressed and persecuted by the Church of England, they, too, like the Puritans, thought of coming to America. But the Puritans would not hear to their settling with them, and the Virginians were of the Church of England,—so they had to find a place for themselves. Some had already come over to the Jerseys, when, in 1680, William Penn, a Friend of rich and noble family, who had been in prison four times on account of his opinions, petitioned the king for a tract of land in America, and obtained a charter for

the lands lying north of Maryland. So Penn became the proprietor of the province of Pennsylvania. He writes:

I have been these thirteen years the servant of truth and Friends and for my testimony sake lost much, not only the greatness... of this world, but £16,000 of my estate.... But I murmur not; the Lord is good to me.⁷⁹

Penn's Description of his Province. —

The People are a Collection of divers Nations in Europe; As, French, Dutch, Germans, Sweeds, Danes, Finns, Scotch, Irish and



WILLIAM PENN.

English; and of the last equal to all the rest.... [Philadelphia has advanced to 357 houses], divers of them large, well-built, with good cellars, three stories, and some with belconies.... The hours for Work and Meals to Labourers, are fixt, and known by Ring of Bell.—After nine at Night, the officers go the Rounds, and no Person... suffered to be at any Publick-House that is not a Lodger....

[Some of those who came poor are gaining] even to the beginnings of an Estate; The difference of labouring for themselves and others... being never better understood....

With the *Natives*, . . . we have liv'd in great friendship. I have made seven Purchasses, [of land] and in Pay and Presents they have received at least twelve hundred pounds of me. . . . They generally leave their guns at home, when they come to our settlements; they offer us no affront, not so much as to one of our *Dogs*; and if any of them break our Laws, they submit to be punisht by them. . . . We leave not the least indignity to them unrebukt, nor wrong unsatisfied. Justice gains and aws them. They have some great men amongst them, I mean, for Wisdom, Truth, and Justice. ⁸⁰

The government consisted of, 1st, the proprietor, as governor; 2d, a council elected by the people; 3d, an assembly elected by the people. The governor and council made and executed the laws; the assembly approved or disapproved of them.

The English Debtors. — About 1729, General James Oglethorpe, a wealthy English gentleman, became deeply interested in the poor debtors of England. At that time, —

For a debt of one shilling a man could be imprisoned.... When his last farthing was gone, he was crowded with forty or fifty others into a little room sixteen feet square. If he offended his keepers, he was subjected to horrible punishments.... He usually in a few days grows weak for want of food, with the symptoms of a hectic fever; and when he is no longer able to stand, ... he obtains the liberty of being carried into the sick ward, ... and there dies. ⁵¹

The Georgia Charter. — Oglethorpe and his friends proposed to found a colony in America where these poor debtors could go and have a new chance for themselves; and not only the debtors, for, wrote Oglethorpe, "this colony is chiefly intended for the unfortunate. . . . It is highly for the honor of our holy religion to assign a new country to the poor Germans who have left their own for the sake of truth."

In 1732, King George II. gave Oglethorpe and his friends, under the name of *Trustees of Georgia*, a charter with these conditions:

During the term of twenty-one years the corporation [of Trustees]...may...prepare...laws...necessary...for the government of the colony...such laws...being approved by us [the King]....

There shall be liberty of conscience allowed in the worship of God to all persons . . . within . . . said province . . . except papists. . . .

The corporation shall have...power...to constitute courts [of law]...for the hearing of all causes...to appoint...all... governors, judges, magistrates, ministers and officers.... Provided .. that every governor shall be approved by us.⁸²

General Oglethorpe in Georgia. — Soon after landing Oglethorpe wrote back to the Trustees:

Our people arrived at Beaufort [S.C.] on the 20th of January [1733], where I lodged them in some new barracks, . . . while I went myself to view the Savannah River. I fixed upon a healthy situation about ten miles from the sea. Upon the river side . . . I have marked out the town and the common; half of the former is already cleared, and the first house was begun yesterday. . . . 83

[In June], Mr. Oglethorpe received the Indians in one of the new houses. The Indians being all seated, . . . a very tall old man . . . stood out, and with a graceful action, and a good voice, . . . claimed all the land southward of the Savannah as belonging to the Creek Indians. . . . That they were firmly persuaded that the Great Power that dwelt in heaven and all around . . . had sent the English hither for the instruction of them, their wives, and children. That, therefore, they gave them up freely, their right to all the land which they did not use themselves. 44

On this basis a treaty was made with the Indians shortly after. The next year the following account of Oglethorpe appeared in a Charleston paper:

The general title they give him is Father. If any of them are sick, he immediately visits them, and takes a great deal of care of them. If any difference arises, he is the person that decides it.... He does not allow them rum; but gives the English beer. It is surprising to see how cheerful the men go to work considering they have not been bred to it.⁸⁵

General Oglethorpe also settled the German Protestants in a colony of their own. Later still, the Trustees sent over a band

of Scotch Highlanders, to defend the southern boundary of Georgia against the Spaniards.

FIRST STUDY ON 10.

1. Fill out the chart begun on p. 73 for Pennsylvania and Georgia.
2. Name three differences between the settlement of Pennsylvania and that of Massachusetts.
3. Name one resemblance.
4. What resemblances between the colonies of Pennsylvania and Georgia?
5. Name three qualities of character possessed by Penn.
6. What trouble was Penn's colony free from that some of the other colonies met, and why?
7. In what two ways did Penn get his title to the land?
8. How did Oglethorpe get his title?
9. What name would you give to the government of the colonies Pennsylvania and Georgia?
10. Why should Oglethorpe be called the Father of his people?
11. Where were the Spaniards that the Georgians were to fight?
12. When did they have to do it? (See list, after 1733.)

Supplementary Reading. — Simms, The Yemassee (South Carolina in 1715).

11. THE NEW ENGLAND CHARTERS.

And to compleat the Oppression, when they...claim'd the Privileges of Englishmen, they were scoffingly told, Those things would not follow them to the Ends of the Earth. Unnatural Insult! must the brave Adventurer, who with the Hazard of his Life and Fortune, seeks out new Climates to enrich his Mother Country, be deny'd those Common Rights, which his Countrymen enjoy at Home in Ease and Indolence?—Jeremiah Dummer, in Defense of the New England Charters.88

The Loss of the Charters. — One of the most prominent of the early New England colonists gives us the following account of their governments:

[According to the Charters granted by the English Kings,] they had power... to call General Assemblies; to make Laws...; to [tax] the Freemen; to constitute [appoint] all Civil Officers; to

array the Inhabitants in warlike Posture... when Occasion requir'd... Thus the Colonies went on increasing and flourishing, in spite of all Difficulties, till the Year 1684, when the City of London lost its Charter, and most of the other Corporations in England, influenced by Fear or Flattery, complimented King Charles with a Surrender of theirs. In this general Ruin of Charters at Home, it could not be expected that those in America should escape. [So their Charters were taken away, and King James sent Sir Edmond Andros over to govern them.] 87

Government without Charters.—Increase Mather, father of the famous Cotton Mather, tells how the government then went on:

Their Charters being all. declared to be void.. Sir Edmund Andross. was pitched on, as a fit Instrument to be made use of; and...he, with four of his Council...arc impowered to make Laws and raise moneys on the Kings Subjects, without any Parliament, Assembly, or Consent of the People....

Laws are made . . indeed what they please: nor are they printed: ... so that the people are at a great loss to know what is Law and what not. . . One Law . . doth prohibit all Town-Meetings, excepting ... once a year; whereas the Inhabitants have occasion to meet once a Week, for the Relief of the Poor; or other Town-Moneys have been raised . . . without any consent of the Affairs. . People. Sir Edmond Andross caused a Tax to be levied of a Peny in a Pound, on all the Towns then under his Government: and when at Inswich, and other places the Select Men . . . voted, that inasmuch as it was against the common Priviledges of English Subjects to have money raised without their own Consent.. they would petition the King for Liberty of an Assembly before they . . . [paid any Tax]; the said Sir Edmond Andross caused them to be imprisoned and Fined.... One of the former Magistrates was committed to prison without any Crimes laid to his Charge, and there kept half a year without any Fault; and, . . . their new Masters tell them, that their Charter being gone, their Title to their Lands... is gone therewith, and that all is the Kings...; Accordingly the Governour ordered the Lands belonging to some in Charles-Town to be measured out, and given to his Creatures... These were the miserable Effects of New-England's being deprived of their Charters, and with them of their English liberties: They have [tried]... to obtain some relief in their sorrowful Bondage; for several Gentlemen desired Increase Mather, the Rector of the Colledge at Cambridge in New-England, to undertake a Voyage for England, to see what might be done...; amongst other things the said Mather caused a petition from the Town of Cambridge in New-England to be humbly presented to his Majesty, which...shall be here inserted.

TO THE KING'S MOST EXCELLENT MAJESTY.

The Petition and Address of John Gibson, aged about 87, and George Willow, aged about 86 years; as also on the behalf of their neighbours the Inhabitants of Cambridge in New-England.

In most humble wise sheweth,

That Your Majesty's good Subjects, with much hard Labour . . . have subdued a Wilderness, built our Houses, and planted Orchards, being encouraged by our . . . Right to the Soil, by the Royal Charter granted unto the first Planters, together with our Purchase of the Natives. . . .

But we... make this our Moan and Complaint to Your Excellent Majesty, for that our Title is now questioned to our Lands, by us quietly possessed for near 60 years, and without which we cannot subsist. Our humble Address to our Governour Sir Edmond Andross, shewing our just Title, ... not availing.

Royal Sir, We are a poor People, and have no way to procure money to defend our Cause in the Law; nor know we of Friends at Court, and therefore unto Your Royal Majesty, as the Publick Father of all Your Subjects, do we make this our humble Address for Relief. . . . We now humbly cast our selves and distressed Condition of our

Wives and Children, at Your MAJESTY's feet, and conclude with the Saying of Queen Esther, If we perish, we perish.⁸⁸

How the Colonists dealt with Andros.—But before the king did anything about the matter, he was overthrown for his oppressions by the English at home, and William of Orange was made king in his stead. But the news had not yet reached New England.

Sir Edmond Andross took all imaginable care to keep us ignorant of the News, . . and our Oppressors went on without Fear or Wit, in all the methods that could inflame the people to the highest exasperation. . . The extream Ferment which we were boiling in, caused several very deserving Gentlemen in Boston, about the middle of April, to enter into a Consultation, how they might best serve the Distressed Land. . .

The first work done, was by small parties here and there about the *Town* to seize upon these unworthy Men.... *These* were many of them secured and confined; but the principal of them, at the *First Noise* of the Action, fled into the Garrison on *Fort-Hill*, where the *Governours* Lodgings were....

The Army [of colonists] had no sooner got well together, but a Declaration was Read unto them, unto which they gave an Assent by a very considerable Shout. And upon this, the Gentlemen with such as had come in to their Assistance in the Town-house, drew up a short Letter to Sir Edmond Andross, and dispatched away a couple of their Number with it; the whole armed Body attend them unto the Fortification, whither they Marched with all the Alacrity in the world, and yet with so composed a Sobriety, that I question whether America has ever seen what might equal it. It was expected, That the Garrison might make some Resistance: but they intended to be Owners of it within one-half hour, or perish in the Attempt. When they were just come to beset the Fort, they met the Governour and his Creatures, . . . At the sight of our Forces, the Gentlemen ran

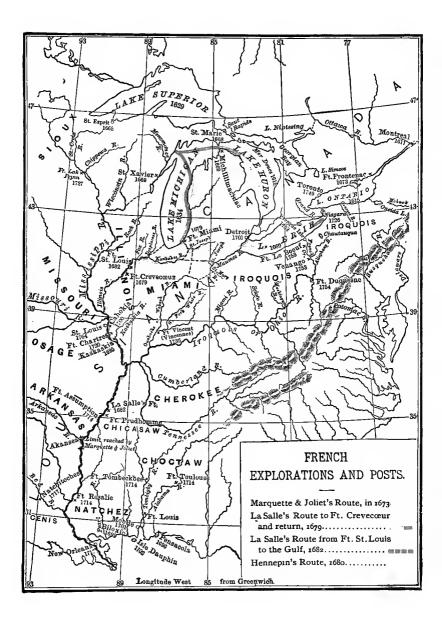
back into their Hold; [and after some parley,] with much ado, the Governour gave Order for the surrender of the Fort. . . .

All the Country round about now began to flock in, and by the next day some Thousands of Horse and Foot were come in from the Towns Adjacent, to express the unanimous content they took in the Action.... For divers weeks the Colony continued without any pretence to Civil Government; yet thro' the mercy of God, ... every man gave himself the Laws of good Neighbourhood ... until the last week in May when two Ships arrived unto us from England with more perfect News than we had yet been owners of; the first effect thereof was, our Proclaiming of King William and Queen Mary, with such a Joy, Splendour, Appearance and Unanimity, as had never before been seen in these Territories. [And under William and Mary, charters were again established.]

STUDY ON II.

1. Why would the New Englanders rather be governed by their charters than by Andros? 2. In what two ways did they try to get rid of Andros? 3. Make a list of the ways in which Andros and his men oppressed them. 4. How would their charters have hindered this? 5. Why should the people of Cambridge petition the king of England about their troubles? 6. What two titles had they to their lands? 7. What proved that the people of New England were really a law-abiding people? 8. What did they mean by their liberties? 9. Make a list of the other colonies that had trouble with their royal governors. (See list at close of Group.) 10. The government of Massachusetts before the time of Andros was called a CHARTER GOVERNMENT; during his time, it was a ROYAL GOVERNMENT; what was the difference between these two sorts? 11. The first government of Maryland was called a PROPRIETARY GOVERNMENT; how was that different from each of these? (See lesson on government, p. 78.) 12. Who else had trouble with the king besides the colonists? (See list, 1642, etc.)

Supplementary Reading. — Hawthorne's Gray Champion, in Twice-Told Tales. A Narrative of the Miseries of New England, by Increase Mather, and An Account of the Late Revolutions in New England, in Old South Leaflets.



12. THE ENGLISH OVER THE ALLEGHANIES; OR, THE CAUSES OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

Fathers, Bothe you and the *English* are white, we live in a Country between; therefore the Land belongs to neither one nor t'other: But the Great Being above allow'd it to be a place of Residence for us; so Fathers, I desire you to withdraw, as I have done our Brothers the *English*: For I will keep you at Arm's length.—Speech of Indian Chief to the French.90

The Hudson's Bay Company (see list, 1669). — About 1684, the Canadians complained to the French King:

The English of Hudson's Bay have this year attracted many of our northern Indians, who for this reason have not come to trade at Montreal.... The English of the bay excite against us the savages, whom Sieur du Luth [a famous trader] alone can quiet.

Du Luth himself writes:

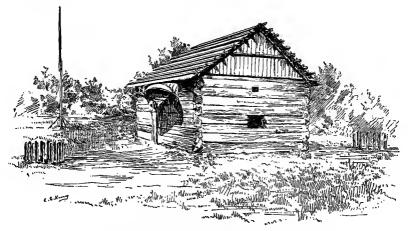
I made in June all the presents necessary to prevent the savages from carrying their beavers to the English.

But in 1750, another of the French traders in the far West writes:

Hudson's Bay takes from us far more furs and beavers than all the posts of [Canada] . . . bring in. 91

Christopher Gist's Journey for the Ohio Company. — In 1748, some of the Virginia planters and the English merchants formed The Ohio Company, and got from King George II. a grant of half a million acres between the Monongahela and Kenawha Rivers, for purposes of trading and settling. They at once sent out Christopher Gist, a Carolina frontiersman, to explore and report on the country. The following extracts are from his journal:

[At Muskingum, a town of the Wiandots.] The Wiandots are divided between the French and the English.... Two traders belonging to Mr. Croghan [a Pennsylvania fur-trader] came into town, and informed us that two of his people were taken by forty Frenchmen, and twenty French Indians [Indians friendly to the French], who had carried them, with seven horse-loads of skins, to a new fort that the French were building on one of the branches of Lake Erie....



LONG HOUSE OF THE SENECAS (IROQUOIS).

Dating back at least to colonial times, and still preserved at Portage on the Genesee.

(After a Photograph.)

[At Miami Town.] All the land [here] is fine, rich, level land, well timbered, with large walnut, ash, sugar-trees, cherry-trees, &c. well watered with a great number of little streams... full of beautiful natural meadows, covered with wild rye, blue grass, and clover; and abounds with turkeys, deer, elks, and most sorts of game, particularly buffaloes.... We entered the town with English colours before us, and were kindly received by their king.... The firing of guns held about a quarter of an hour, and then all the white men and traders that were there came and welcomed us.... We were

invited...into the long house, (where Mr. Croghan made them) ..a present to the value of one hundred pounds Pennsylvania money, and delivered all our speeches to them, at which they seemed well pleased, and said they would...consider well what we had said to them....

This morning the four French Indians came into town and were kindly received by the town Indians. They marched in under French colours, and were conducted into the long house, [where]...the council sat, and we were sent for, that we might hear what the French had to say.... The [Miamis] delivered the following answer to the four Indians sent by the French. The Captain of the warriors stood up, and taking some strings of black and white wampum,... spoke with a fierce tone, and very warlike air: "Brothers... we will let you know by these four strings of wampum that we will not hear anything they [the French] say to us; or do anything they bid us do... that is our mind, and we speak it from our hearts."... *22

Washington's Mission. — During the next two years after Gist's journey, the Miamis murdered several French trappers, and tomahawked four slaves belonging to the French settlements of the Illinois country. On the other hand, Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia writes to the Board of Trade in 1752:

The French traders from Canada have met our traders in the woods and robbed them of all their skins and goods; they have applied to me for protection....93

Not long after, Governor Dinwiddie sent out the young Virginia planter, George Washington, with Christopher Gist for a guide, to find out how matters really stood over the Alleghanies. In his journal he makes the following notes:

[At Loggs-Town.] . . . I enquired into the Situation of the French, on the Mississippi. . . . They informed me, That there were

four small Forts between New Orleans and the Black-Islands [Illinois].... They also acquainted me that there was a small pallisado'd Fort... at the Mouth of the Obaish [Wabash].... The Obaish... affords the Communication between the French on Mississippi and those on the Lakes....

[At Venango,]... there were three [French] officers one of whom... invited us to sup with them.... The wine... soon banished the Restraint which at first appeared in their Conversation; and... they told me, That it was their absolute Design to take Possession of the Ohio... They pretend to have an undoubted Right to the River from a Discovery made by one La Salle 60 years ago.... [At a French fort further on, the commander] told me that the Country belong'd to them; that no Englishman had a Right to trade upon those Waters; and that he had Orders to make every Person Prisoner, who attempted it on the Ohio, or the Waters of it....

[On the way home.] Horses were now so weak and feeble, and the Baggage so heavy . . . that . . . myself and others . . . gave up our Horses for Packs, to assist along with the Baggage. I put myself in an Indian walking Dress. . . . Then with Gun in Hand and Pack at my Back, in which were my Papers and Provisions, I set out with Mr. Gist. . . . The Day following . . . we fell in with a Party of French Indians, who had lain in Wait for us. One of them fired . . . but fortunately missed. . . . We expected to have found the River frozen, but it was not, only about 50 Yards from each Shore.... There was no Way for getting over but on a Raft; Which we set about with but one poor Hatchet, and finished just after Sun-setting. This was a whole Day's Work. Then set off; But before we were Half Way over, we were jammed in the Ice, in such a Manner that we expected every Moment our Raft to sink, and ourselves to perish. I put out my setting Pole to try to stop the Raft, ... when the Rapidity of the Stream ... jerked me out into ten Feet Water: but I fortunately saved myself by catching hold of one of the Raft Logs. . . . [We] arrived at Mr. Gist's on the second day of January.94

On Washington's return with the message of the French commander, the colonists decided to go to war with the French, and so began the French and Indian War, which lasted for nearly ten years.

STUDY ON 12.

1. What were the French doing west of the Alleghanies, and north of the Great Lakes? 2. The English? 3. What right could the French have to be there? 4. The English? 5. Which English colony was especially interested in getting some land over the Alleghanies? 6. Why were these lands desirable? 7. How did the English try to get the Indians on their side? 8. How did the Indians happen to be on the French side at first? 9. Which party did the Indians finally join? 10. Name four difficulties in travelling west of the Alleghanies. 11. How was the Wabash a means of communication between the French on the lakes and on the Mississippi? 12. How could the English get any news of what was going on in the Mississippi valley? 13. What reasons had the French for going to war with the English? 14. What reasons had the English for going to war with the French? 15. What reasons had the Indians for going to war?

Supplementary Reading. — John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion, for stories of Washington during this time. William M. Thayer's Farmer-boy (Washington).

13. FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR; ON THE WESTERN FRONTIER.

In conversation with General Braddock, Franklin expressed to him the fear that his march might be impeded by Indian ambuscades; to which the general replied, smiling at Franklin's ignorance: "These savages may, indeed, he a formidable enemy to your raw American militia, but upon the king's regular and disciplined troops, sir, it is impossible they should make any impression."—Franklin's Autobiography.⁹⁵

Franklin's Plan of Union. — The war was started by Virginia, but the other colonies voted to help her with men and

money, and England advised them to form some plan of union. So delegates from the colonies met at Albany, when Benjamin Franklin proposed:

... that humble application be made for an act of Parliament of Great Britain, by virtue of which one general government may be formed in America, including all the ... Colonies

That the said general government be administered by a President-General, to be appointed and supported by the crown; and a Grand Council, to be chosen by the representatives of the people of the several Colonies met in their respective assemblies. . . .

That the President-General, with the advice of the Grand Council, hold or direct all Indian treaties. . . .

That they raise and pay soldiers and build forts for the defence of any of the Colonies. . . .

That for these purposes they have power to make laws, and lay \dots taxes. \dots ⁹⁶

This plan, however, was rejected by the king, because it seemed to give the colonies too much power, and by the colonies, because it seemed to give the king too much power.

Braddock's Defeat.—Meanwhile, Washington had been sent out by Virginia to erect a fort at the union of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers; but the French had already begun Fort Du Quesne in that same place, and they defeated Washington and his Virginians at Fort Necessity which he had built near by. Both England and France now began to send over troops to help their colonists; Major-General Braddock was sent out to Virginia, and he at once planned an expedition against Fort Du Quesne. Washington accompanied him, and in a letter to one of his brothers, thus describes their march:

At the Little Meadows...the General...asked my private opinion concerning the expedition. I urged him...to push for-

ward... with such artillery and light stores as were absolutely necessary; leaving the heavy artillery, baggage, &c... to follow by slow and easy marches... This advice prevailed... But... I found that instead of pushing on with vigor, without regarding a little rough road, they were halting to level every molehill, and to erect bridges over every brook, by which means we were four days getting twelve miles.⁹⁷

The English papers give the following account of the next events:

On [Braddock's]... march through the woods... [he] was attacked by a body of French and Indians, who made a sudden Fire from the Woods, which put the Troops into great Confusion, and occasioned their retiring with great Precipitation, notwithstanding all the Endeavors of the General, and the Officers, many of whom were killed, whilst they were using all possible Means to rally the Men. The General, who exerted himself as much as Man could do, after having five Horses killed under him, was shot through the Arm, and the Lungs, of which he died the fourth Day. 98

Our officers, upon the first discovery of an ambuscade, strongly urged the general either to retreat immediately, or send out irregular parties to clear the bushes sword in hand, both which he peremptorily refused upon a supposition that it was below the character of a general officer to engage otherwise than according to the established rules of war.⁹⁹

We have the French and Indian side of the story from a young English prisoner who happened to be in Fort Du Quesne at that time:

I asked [one of the Indians]... what news from Braddock's army? He said, the Indians spied them every day, and he showed me by making marks on the ground with a stick, that Braddock's army was advancing in very close order, [with his men all together in regular ranks,] and that the Indians would surround them, take trees, and (as he expressed it,) Shoot um down all one pigeon.

Shortly after this, on the 9th day of July, 1755, in the morning, I heard a great stir in the fort. . . . I went out of the door, which was just by the wall of the fort, and stood upon the wall and viewed the Indians in a huddle before the gate, where were barrels of powder, bullets, flints, etc., and every one taking what suited; I saw the Indians also march off in rank entire—likewise the French Canadians, and some regulars. After viewing the Indians and French in different positions, I computed them to be about four hundred, and wondered that they attempted to go out against Braddock with so small a party. . . .

In the afternoon, I heard a number of scalp halloos, and saw a company of Indians and French coming in. I observed they had a great many bloody scalps, grenadier's caps, British canteens, bayonets, &c. with them. They brought the news that Braddock was defeated....

About sundown I beheld a small party coming in with about a dozen prisoners, stripped naked, with their hands tied behind their backs, and their faces and part of their bodies blackened—these prisoners they burned to death on the bank of the Alleghany river, opposite to the fort.¹⁰⁰

As for the condition of the frontier afterward, Washington writes to Governor Dinwiddie:

Three families were murdered the night before last...; and every day we have accounts of such cruelties and barbarities as are shocking to human nature.... Such numbers of French and Indians are all around, no road is safe to travel; and here we know not... how soon we may be attacked....

Your Honor spoke of sending some Indians to our assistance, in which no time should be lost.... Without Indians to oppose Indians, we may expect but small success.⁹⁷

STUDY ON 13.

1. Why should it be best for the colonies to unite for the French and Indian War? 2. Who represented the king's power in Franklin's plan of

union? 3. Who represented the people? 4. Why would it be better for this colonial government to take care of Indian treaties and Indian wars, than for the English home government to do it? 5. Why was it easier for the colonies to raise and pay their own soldiers and appoint their own officers than for the English government to do it? 6. According to this plan, who would hinder the king from getting too much power? 7. Who would hinder the colonists from getting too much? 8. Why should Washington advise Braddock to leave behind as many wagons as possible? 9. Why should Washington's opinion be worth more than Braddock's? 10. What unnecessary things did Braddock do? 11. What reason had he for doing them? 12. What difference was there between the way that the Indians and the British fought? 13. Give three qualities of Braddock's character. 14. Which of them caused his defeat? 15. Which of them made him honored? 16. By what adjective can you describe the Indian treatment of their prisoners after this battle? 17. Which party had succeeded best in getting Indian help? 18. What had Braddock's defeat to do with the state of affairs described by Washington on the frontier? 19. If the colouists had taken Fort Du Quesne, what difference would it have made? [Two studies may be made of this, if desirable.]

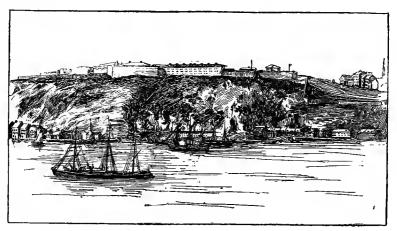
Supplementary Reading. — Braddock and his Sash, in John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. New York, 1879. Braddock's Defeat, by Francis Parkman, in Effingham Maynard's Historical Classical Readings, or in Parkman's Montcalm and Wolfe. Longfellow's Evangeline. Franklin's Plan of Union, in Old South Leaflets.

14. FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR; SIEGE OF QUEBEC.

No one can more sincerely rejoice than I do in the reduction of Canada; and this is not merely because I am a colonist, but as I am a Briton. I have long been of the opinion that the foundations of the future grandeur... of the British empire lie in America... I am, therefore, by no means for restoring Canada. If we keep it, all the country from the St. Lawrence to the Mississippi will be filled with British people.—Franklin, in a letter. 101

The Siege of Quebec. — After 1756, the war was not only a war between the English and French colonists, but between

England and France, and these two countries sent out troops to help the colonists, and generals to command them. The most important action of the war after this was the siege and capture of Quebec. In the following letter, written by General Wolfe to the British government, we see what a task he had to perform:



THE PRECIPICE AND FORTRESS OF QUEBEC. (After Photograph.)

When I learned that succours of all kinds had been thrown into Quebec; \dots every Canadian that was able to bear arms, besides several nations of savages, had taken the field \dots I could not flatter myself that I should be able to reduce the place....

To the uncommon strength of the country, the enemy have added for the defence of the river, a great number of floating batteries and boats; by the vigilance of these and the Indians...it has been impossible to execute anything by surprise.... We have almost the whole force of Canada to oppose.

But the French on their side, according to the reports of prisoners taken by the British, were "all in great distress for bread, both army, garrison and country." In September the British began the siege; of which Captain John Knox, one of Wolfe's officers, tells the story:

Sept. 4, 1759. — We threw a few shells into the town, in the beginning of the night; since that time, all has remained quiet....

... Crown-Point: this great journey was performed in twenty-seven days, and the route they took was, first to Boston, thence up Kennebec River....

The intelligence which we have lately received... of the success of our arms at

confirmed by these expresses.

This forenoon two ranging officers . . . arrived express from

Sept. 12.—... At nine o'clock this night, our army [embarked] in high spirits [to surprise the citadel of Quebec]... Weather favourable, a star-light night.

Ticonderoga, Crown-Point and Niagara is

Sept. 13.— Before daybreak this morning we made a descent upon the north shore.... As fast as we landed, the boats put off for reinforcements, and the troops formed with much regularity:... General [Wolfe was] ashore with the first division. We lost no time here, but clambered up one of the steepest precipices that can be conceived, being almost a perpendicular, and of an incredible height. As soon as we gained the summit, all was quiet, and not a shot was heard ...; it was by



this time clear day-light.... We then ... marched ... till we came to the plains of Abraham; an even piece of ground which Mr. Wolfe had made choice of.

[Then followed the battle;] what galled us most was a body of Indians and other marksmen they had concealed in the cover...

and in coppiee. [At last the French] gave way.... Our joy at this success is inexpressibly damped by the loss of... General James Wolfe.... Montcalm died late last night. [When acquainted with the fact that] his wound was mortal, he calmly replied... "So much the better,... I am happy I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."... Some time before this great man departed, we are assured he paid us this compliment,—"It is



BRITISH SOLDIER,
(After Cut in Grant's "British
Battles.")

a great consolation to me to be vanquished by so brave and generous an enemy..."
After our late worthy General . . . was carried off wounded . . . he desired those who were about him to lay him down; . . . One of them cried out "They run, see how they run." "Who runs?" demanded our hero. . . The Officer answered, "The enemy, Sir, . . . they give way everywhere." Thereupon the General rejoined, "Go one of you, my lads, to Colonel Burton —; tell him . . . to cut off the retreat of the fugitives. . . ." Then, turning on his side, he added, "Now God be praised, I will die in peace:" and thus expired.

Sept. 18.—The keys of the ports [gates of Quebec] were given up this evening to General Townshend, and the...[English] flag was displayed on the citadel.¹⁰²

FIRST STUDY ON 14, AND LIST OF EVENTS FROM 1753-1763.

1. If the English could get Quebec, what else could they get? 2. What difficulties had the English to meet in taking Quebec? 3. What difficulties had the French in holding it? 4. How could news get from one part of the army to another at this time? 5. Why did not the messengers from Crown Point go straight through Canada? 6. How did their news help in the siege of Quebec? 7. Why was Quebec attacked by night? 8. What proves that General Montcalm was a generous man? 9. Why would he rather

die than see the surrender of Quebec? 10. What proves that General Wolfe was a cool-headed man? 11. What other quality of character does this same extract prove him to have had? 12. What was the end of the French and Indian War? 13. Point out on the map the territory owned by the English after it was over. 14. How long did it last?

SECOND STUDY ON 13, 14, AND LIST OF EVENTS.

1. Take your outline map for the colonial period and mark with a red cross the English victories in the French and Indian War. 2. Mark with blue the places where the French were victorious. 3. What parts of the country were the centres of the war? 4. Why was Fort Duquesne so important? 5. The forts along Lake Champlain? 6. Quebec? 7. Why was it called the French and *Indian* War? 8. Why should the colonists on either side make better soldiers than the regular troops sent over from Europe? 9. Why did Washington say that the English must have Indians to fight for them if they were going to succeed? 10. When had the English colonists fought the French colonists before?

Supplementary Reading. — Parkman's The Heights of Abraham, in Library of American Literature, VIII. 104; also, in his Montcalm and Wolfe. Cooper's Last of the Mohicans, and Leather-Stocking Tales.

15. ON THE NEW FRONTIER.

----020500---

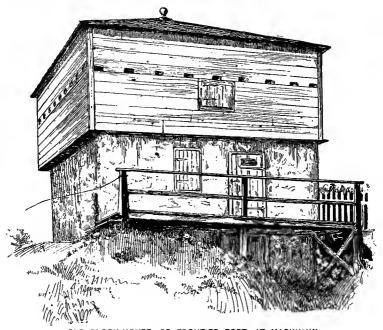
Where Alleghany's towering, pine clad peaks, Rise high in air, and sparkle in the sun,

My father came: while yet our world was young, Son of the trackless forest, large and wild, Of manners stern; of understanding strong, As nature rude; but yet in feeling mild.

— The son of a pioneer of 1763.103

Along the Mississippi. — The French and Indian War was over, and into the new lands which England had won from France, Englishmen began to press; some, to man the old

French forts, some to trade, some to preach, and some to settle. These are the men who can best tell us of that frontier life. Our first extract is from the journal of an English officer, sent to examine the state of the western country:



OLD BLOCK-HOUSE, OR FRONTIER FORT, AT MACKINAW.

Erected in 1780. (After a Photograph.)

The Kaskaskies village . . . consists of 80 houses, well built, mostly of stone, with gardens, and large lots. The inhabitants generally live well, and have large stocks of cattle and hogs.

The French carry on the trade all around us by land and water. . . . Even the small quantity of skins and furrs [that the Indians hereabouts] get by hunting, is carried under our nose [to the French]. . . .

We hardly have the dominion of the country, or as much credit with the inhabitants as to induce them to give us anything for money, while our neighbors [the French] have plenty on trust.

The French have large boats of 20 tons, rowed with 20 oars, which will go in seventy odd days from New Orleans to the Illinois. These boats go to the Illinois twice a year. 104

A Pioneer Family.—Life on the Ohio frontier is thus described by the son of an early settler:

I well remember that, when a little boy, the family were sometimes waked up in the dead of night, by an express with a report that Indians were at hand. The express came softly to the door, or back window, and by a gentle tapping waked the family.... whole family were instantly in motion. My father seized his gun and other implements of war. My stepmother waked up, and dressed the children as well as she could, and being myself the oldest . . . I had to take my share of the burdens to be carried to the fort. . . . Besides the little children we caught up what articles of clothing and provisions we could get hold of in the dark, for we durst not light a candle or even stir the fire. All this was done with the utmost despatch and the silence of death. The greatest care was taken not to awaken the youngest child. To the rest it was enough to say, Indian and not a whimper was heard afterwards. Thus it often happened that the whole number of families belonging to a fort who were in the evening at their homes, were all in their little fortress before the dawn of the next morning.105

Daniel Boone's Entrance into Kentucky. —

It was on the first of May, in the year 1769, that I...left my family and peaceful habitation...in North Carolina, to wander through the wilderness of America, in quest of the country of Kentucke, in company with John Finley [and four others]....

On the seventh day of June . . . we found ourselves on Red-River, where John Finley had formerly been trading with the Indians, and from the top of an eminence, saw with pleasure the beautiful level

of Kentucke... We encamped,... and began to hunt and reconnoitre the country,... until the twenty-second day of December following.

This day, John Stewart and I had a pleasing ramble, but fortune



DANIEL BOONE.

changed the scene in the close of it.... As we ascended.... a small hill, a number of Indians rushed out of a thick cane-brake upon us, and made us prisoners. [After being kept in confinement seven days, we escaped,] directing our course toward our old camp, but found it plundered and the company dispersed....

About this time my brother, Squire Boone, with another adventurer, who came to explore the country shortly after us, ... wandering through the forest ... accidentally found our camp. ...

Soon after this... John Stewart was killed by the savages, and the man that came with my brother returned home by himself. We were then in a dangerous, helpless situation, exposed daily to perils and death among savages and wild beasts, not a white man in the country but ourselves....

On the first of May, 1770, my brother returned home... for a new recruit of horses and ammunition, leaving me by myself, without bread, salt or sugar, ... or even a horse or a dog....

One day I undertook a tour through the country, and the diversity and beauties of nature ... expelled every gloomy and vexatious thought. Just at the close of day ... I had gained the summit of a commanding ridge, and, looking around with astonishing delight, beheld the ample plains ... below ... [and] surveyed the famous river Ohio that rolled in silent dignity. ... I kindled a fire near a fountain of sweet water, and feasted on ... a buck which a few hours before I had killed.

Thus, through an uninterrupted scene of sylvan pleasures, I spent the time until the 27th day of July following, when my brother . . . met me, according to appointment, at our old camp. Shortly after, we left this place . . . and proceeded to Cumberland River, reconnoitring that part of the country, until March, 1771, and giving names to the different waters.

Soon after, I returned home to my family with a determination to bring them as soon as possible to live in Kentucke, which I esteemed a second paradise. 106

STUDY ON 15.

I. Who were settled in the country between the Mississippi and the Alleghanies at the close of the French and Indian War? 2. How long had they been settled there? 3. How could a man at Kaskaskia get meat to eat? 4. Coffee to drink? 5. Clothes to wear? 6. How could he pay for anything that he bought? 7. What would he send down the Mississippi in those boats that are spoken of? 8. What great trouble did Englishmen have about living in this country? 9. About trading there? 10. Give instances. 11. What trade was there in this country? 12. How could men get from one part of this country to the other? 13. How could furs from Kentucky most easily get to London? 14. Name three qualities that a man must have to make a good pioneer or Indian trader. 15. Why did the pioneer family not dare to awaken the youngest child when Indians were near? 16. What do you see about the block-house that made it a good fort? 17. Why should Kentucky seem a second paradise to Boone.

Supplementary Reading. — Speech of Pontiac, in Old South Leaflets, and also in Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac; Boone's Autobiography; Joseph Doddridge's Notes on the Settlement and Indian Wars of the Western Parts of Virginia. Albany, 1876.

16. LIST OF IMPORTANT EVENTS DURING THE AGE OF PLANTATION, 1607-1763.

A. 1607-1649. — James I. and Charles I. reigning in England; Richelieu, minister of Louis XIII., ruling in France; Catholic and Protestant wars raging in Germany and France.

1607. — Founding of Jamestown. (See p. 57.)

1608. — Founding of Quebec. (See p. 62.)

Spanish Catholic Missions established which make the beginning of Santa Fé.

John Smith and other Virginians begin to publish books on America. Beginning of American Literature.

1609. — Henry Hudson, sent out by Dutch merchants, discovers Hudson River. The Dutch begin to trade thither.

Champlain discovers Lake Champlain. (See p. 63.)

1610. — Hudson discovers Hudson Bay, and there, cast adrift by his men, is lost.

1615. — Champlain discovers Lake Ontario and explores in northern New York. (See p. 63.)

Champlain and Father Le Caron in the Huron country. (See p. 64.)

1619.—In a Virginian record we read: About the last of August came in a Dutch man of warre, that sold us twenty negars. AFRICAN SLAVERY in America begins.

First Popular Assembly of the colonists meets in Virginia. (See p. 77.)

1620. — The Pilgrim Fathers land at Plymouth. (See p. 65.)

1622. — Indians massacre 347 Virginians.

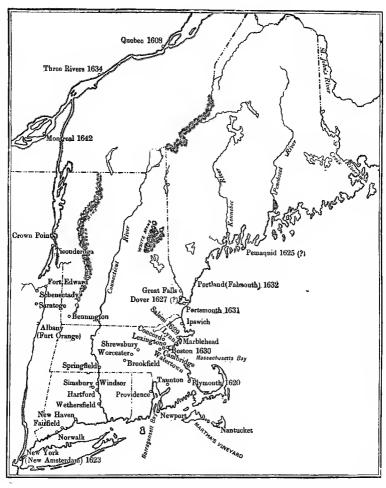
1623. First permanent settlement starts in **New Hampshire** for fishing and fur-trading.

Bradford, Winslow, and other New Englanders begin to write books about New England.

1625. — The Jesuit Missions begin. (See p. 74.)

1626. - Founding of New York. (See p. 69.)

1628-1630. — Puritans settle Boston, Salem, and vicinity.



REFERENCE MAP FOR PERIODS OF SETTLEMENT AND REVOLUTION.

NEW ENGLAND.

1633. - English and Dutch quarrel over Connecticut boundaries.

1634. — Lord Baltimore begins settlement of Maryland. (See p. 70.)

Jean Nicolet discovers Lake Michigan. (See p. 75.)

1635. — Massachusetts Puritans begin to settle Connecticut.

Troubles between Virginia and Maryland over boundaries.

1636. — **Rhode Island** begins to be settled at Providence. (See p. 71.)

1637. — Connecticut Indians, led by the *Pequots*, harass the English settlements, kidnapping and murdering; the colonists burn the chief village of the Pequots, slaying all but five of its seven hundred inhabitants. Harvard College founded at Cambridge, Massachusetts.

1638. — Protestant Swedes, sent out by a company of Dutch and Swedish merchants, buy land of the Indians by the **Delaware**, and set up a tradingpost, where they begin to trade for furs with the Indians.

The towns of Connecticut unite and form a government of their own, which they describe in writing, so that every one may know just what he can and cannot do according to this government. This is the first written Constitution of America.

1639.—First Printing-Press of the English colonies set up at Cambridge. Bay Psalm Book, first book printed in the English colonies.

1642-1649. - War in England between the king and the Parliament.

1643. — The Massachusetts and Connecticut colonies form a league under the name of "The United Colonies of New England," so as to defend themselves against the Indians, the French, and the Dutch. This union is also known as The New England Confederacy.

1648-1650. — Huron Missions destroyed. (See p. 76.)

1649.— The English king defeated by the Parliament, and put to death.

1644. — Roger Williams begins to write in favor of toleration in religion; also about the Indians.

1646.—John Eliot, the Indian apostle, begins his labors with the Indians. Translates the Bible and other religious books into the Indian dialects.

Common Schools established throughout New England.

- B. 1649-1660. Puritan Rule of the Commonwealth and Cromwell in England; Louis XIV. reigning in France.
- 1654. Jesuits begin their Iroquois Missions at Onondaga in New York. 1659–1660. Two French fur-traders pass through Lake Superior, reach the upper Mississippi, and establish a trading-post in Minnesota.
- C. 1660-1688. Charles II. and after him James II. reigning in England; Louis XIV. reigning in France. Quakers, Puritans, Catholics, and all who differ from the Church of England much persecuted in England.
- 1662. Lands between Virginia and Florida granted by King Charles II. to a company of English proprietors.

Increase Mather, a famous Boston minister, begins to preach, teach, and write on religious subjects.

1664.—Charles II. grants New Netherlands to his brother, the Duke of York, and it becomes New York.

1665. — English settlement of New Jersey begins.

French begin missions at St. Esprit, St. Xavier, Michilimackinac, Sault St. Marie, and among the Illinois.

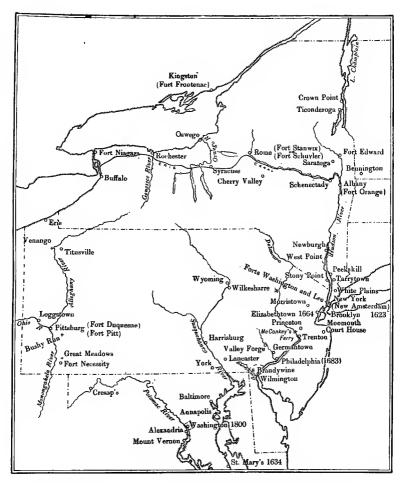
- 1669. Prince Rupert and other English noblemen hear through French fur-traders of the wealth of furs in Northern Canada, and form the **Hudson Bay Company**; they get from King Charles a charter giving them the sole right of trading in the lands about Hudson Bay.
- 1670.— Charleston founded in South Carolina by a company of colonists, mostly Dissenters, sent out by the Lords Proprietors.
- 1671. French at Sault St. Marie take formal possession of the lands and waters of the Upper Lakes for King Lonis XIV.
- 1673. Joliet and Marquette explore the Mississippi as far south as the Arkansas. (See p. 87.)

1676. — King Philip's War. (See p. 83.)

Bacon's Rebellion. (See p. 86.) Jamestown burnt and not rebuilt.

1677.— The governor of North Carolina tries to enforce an unjust law; is imprisoned by the people, who make a new government of their own.

1679-1682.—La Salle explores the Mississippi to its mouth, and claims Louisiana for France. (See p. 88.) Hennepin, one of his party, explores the Mississippi northward to the Falls of St. Anthony.



REFERENCE MAP FOR PERIODS OF SETTLEMENT AND REVOLUTION.

MIDDLE ATLANTIC STATES.

- 1682. William Penn founds Philadelphia and the province of Pennsylvania. (See p. 92.)
- 1683.—Persecuted German Protestants begin to enter Pennsylvania and settle there.

Schools started in Pennsylvania and Virginia.

1684.—La Salle attempts to found a colony at mouth of the Mississippi. Missing his way, he founds an unsuccessful colony somewhere near where Bahia now stands. He is murdered by treachery of his followers in 1687.

1686. — Andros government begins. (See p. 96.)

1687. — Troubles between the colonists and the king's governor in South Carolina.

Cotton Mather, son of Increase, begins his work as preacher and writer. Writes nearly four hundred religious books.

- D. 1688-1714. William and Mary, and after them, Queen Anne, reigning in England; Louis XIV. reigning in France; war between England and France, and therefore wars between French and English colonists known as King William's War and Queen Anne's War.
- 1689. New York colonists elect a governor of their own, Jacob Leisler, instead of Andros, and try to govern themselves.
- 1690.- Huguenots begin settlement of $\bf North~Carolina$ about Albemarle Sound.

Jacob Leisler hanged by the king's government.

1691. — Royal government set up in Maryland.

1692. — Witchcraft excitement at Salem over certain people thought to be witches, and in league with the devil to injure others; some twenty put to death.

William and Mary College founded in Virginia.

1694–1700. — Spanish priests begin to penetrate into Arizona and California. French priests begin missions along the Lower Mississippi, in present states of Arkansas, Mississippi, and Louisiana.

1701.—Detroit (Fort Pontchartrain) founded by the French as a trading-post.

1700. - Yale College founded.

1702-1706.—War between English and Spanish colonists along the northern frontier of Florida.

1703. — Delaware becomes a separate colony.

1711-1713. — Indian War in the Carolinas.

1704. — First regular American Newspaper begins at Boston.

E. 1714-1763. — George the First, George the Second, and George the Third, reigning in England, one after the other; Louis XV. reigning in France, at first under a Regent.

1716. — Spaniards begin missions in Texas; French build forts in Louisiana.

1718. — New Orleans founded. (See p. 91.)

Spaniards found San Antonio in Texas.

1720. — More than 30,000 Irishmen, persecuted under English rule, enter the country from Philadelphia and Charleston.

1724. — English begin settlement in Vermont.

1728. — Bering, sent out by Peter the Great, Czar of Russia, sails through Bering's Straits, and decides the question about the connection of Asia and America.

1731. -- Royal government established in the Carolinas.

1732-1733. - Settlement of Georgia begins. (See p. 94.)

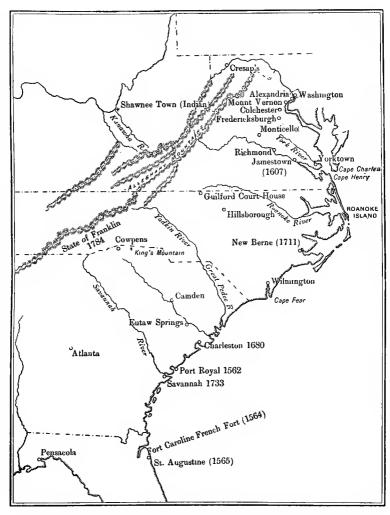
1739–1748. — War between Spain and England; therefore war between Georgia colonists, led by Oglethorpe, and Spaniards in Florida.

1743. — French traders penetrate to Rocky Mountains along Upper Missouri.

1744-1749. —War between France and England; therefore war between French and English colonists known as King George's War.

Jonathan Edwards preaching in New England. Writes much on religious subjects.

1745. — Louisburgh taken by the Boston colonists.



REFERENCE MAP OF SOUTHERN COLONIES FOR PERIOD OF SETTLEMENT AND REVOLUTION.

1748. — Formation of Ohio Company. (See p. 101.)

1754-1763.—French and Indian War in the colonies; Seven Years' War in Europe.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN'S

writings begin to appear, on science, philosophy, and politics. Suggests the use of the lightning-rod. Makes many experiments with electricity.

1754.—Washington defeated at Great Meadows, or Fort Necessity; French build Fort Du Quesne. Franklin's Plan of Union. (See p. 106.)

1755. — Braddock's defeat. (See p. 108.)

British conquer Acadia and drive the French away, burning their houses and crops. Many are taken to Louisiana.

1756-1757. — Useless fighting back and forth around frontier forts.

1758.—Pitt, being the minister of King George II., sends better generals to carry on the French and Indian War. Louisburgh taken by English. Fort Du Quesne taken, and named Fort Pitt (Pittsburgh).

1759.—Quebec threatened by the English; French take most of their troops from Ticonderoga, Crown Point, and Niagara, to defend Quebec; these posts easily fall into the hands of the English; General Montcalm holds Quebec against General Wolfe for nearly three months before the English take it. (See p. 110.)

1760. — Montreal surrenders, and the other Canadian forts are soon given up.

1762. — Spain joins France against England, who defeats them both.

1763.— Peace of Paris, between France and Spain on one side, and England on the other; France and Spain grant to England all the territory east of the Mississippi; France grants Louisiana to Spain, and Canada to England.

Pontiac, a great Indian chief, combines the Indians of the Northwest against the English. Pontiac's War, short and bloody, follows.

Boundary between Maryland and Pennsylvania settled; this was the end of a long dispute, and the line was called *Mason and Dixon's Line*, from the men who surveyed it.

FIRST STUDY ON LIST.

1. Take outline map for colonial period, and place on it in red all the English settlements mentioned in this list. Mark in blue all the French settlements of the list; and in green all the Spanish settlements; place opposite each settlement the date of its founding. Paint blue, or with a blue boundary, the English possessions in America at 1763. 2. Make a list of

the States whose territory was entered by the French during this time; by the English; and by the Spanish. 3. Learn by heart the following dates, with the important event for each date: 1607; 1620; 1763.

SECOND STUDY ON LIST.

1. Complete the table of the Thirteen English Colonies which you began on p. 73. 2. What causes led men to settle the thirteen colonies? 3. What nationalities settled them? 4. Make a list of all the causes of colonial quarrels and wars. Opposite each cause put down a quarrel or war which arose from this cause.

THIRD STUDY ON LIST.

1. Two reasons why John Smith's books should be called the beginning of American literature. 2. In what part of the country did men make most books? 3. What did they write about? 4. What was our first printed book? 5. Who was our first scientific man? 6. Where and what was our first college? 7. What other colleges started during this period? 8. Where were common schools started? 9. Who was the man to prove that America was not a part of Asia, and how did he do it? 10. What movements toward Union did the colonists make during this period?

General Supplementary Reading for the Period. — Thackeray's Virginians. Longfellow's New England Tragedies (Witchcraft Delusion). Hawthorne's Grandfather's Chair, and House of the Seven Gables. J. Esten Cooke's The Virginian Comedians. Mrs. H. B. Stowe's The Minister's Wooing. C. C. Coffin's Old Times in the Colonies. Scudder's, Higginson's and Eggleston's United States Histories.

GROUP IV.

REVOLUTIONARY RECORDS: 1763-1783.

1. COLONIAL MERCHANTS AND CAPTAINS.

O! ye unborn inhabitants of America!... When your eyes behold the sun after he has rolled the seasons round for two or three centuries more, you will know that in Anno Domini 1758, we dreamed of your times.— From an old Almanac for 1758.107

From observers of colonial trade and life at the close of the French and Indian War, we take the following notes of trade and life:

In the Southern Colonies. -

[Charleston, S.C.] has very regular and fair streets, in which are good buildings of brick and wood;... besides a strong fort... made to defend the town.... They have a considerable trade both to Europe and the West Indies, whereby they become rich.... All enjoy at this day an entire liberty of their worship;... they have a well-disciplined militia.... The merchants of Carolina are fair, frank traders. The gentlemen seated in the country are very courteous, live very noble in their houses, and give very genteel entertainment to all strangers and others that come to visit them. 108

The trade of [Virginia]... is ... extensive. Tobacco is the principal article of it... They ship also for the Madeiras, the Streights [Gibraltar], and the West-Indies, ... grain, pork, lumber and cyder; to Great Britain, bar-iron;... the Virginians... can scarcely bear the thought of being controuled by any superior power. Many of them consider the colonies as independent states, not connected with Great Britain, otherwise than by having the same com-

mon king, and being bound to her by natural affection. They think it a hardship not to have an unlimited trade to every part of the world... However, ... they never refuse any necessary supplies for the support of the government when called upon, and are a generous and loyal people... From Colchester we went... to Mount Vernon. This place is the property of Colonel Washington, and



MOUNT VERNON. (From the Mount Vernon Record.)

truly deserving of its owner. The house is most beautifully situated upon a high hill on the banks of the Potowmac; and commands a noble prospect of water, of cliffs, of woods, and plantations....

In the Middle Colonies. --

The trade of Pensylvania is surprisingly extensive, carried on to Great Britain, . . . the Madeiras, Lisbon, Cadiz, Holland, Africa, the Spanish Main; . . . their exports are provisions of all kinds, lumber, hemp, flax, . . . iron, furs, and deerskins. . . . The Germantown thread-stockings are in high estimation; . . . the Irish settlers make very good linens: . . . there are several other manufactures, [such as] of beaver hats, . . . superior in goodness to any in Europe.

The Pensylvanians... are great republicans, and have fallen into the same errors in their ideas of independency as most of the

other colonies.... However, they are quiet, and concern themselves but little, except about getting money....

New York . . . contains between two and three thousand houses, and 16 or 17,000 inhabi-The streets are tants. . . . paved, and very clean, but in general narrow; there are two or three, indeed, which are spacious and airy, particularly the Broad-Way. The houses in this street have most of them a row of trees before them. . . . There is a quadrangular fort, capable of mounting sixty cannon Within this is the governor's palace....



DUTCH COLONIAL HOUSE.

They export chiefly grain, flour, pork, skins, furs, pig-iron, lumber, and staves.... They also, as well as the Pensylvanians, had erected several slitting mills, to make nails, etc. But this is now prohibited [by Parliament], and they are exceedingly dissatisfied at it. 109

The inhabitants...have a considerable trade with the Indians, for beavers, otter, raccoon skins, with other furs,... and are supplied with venison and food in the winter and fish in the summer by the Indians, which they buy at an easy rate.... 110

In New England. -

[In Rhode Island,] their mode of commerce is this; they trade to Great Britain, Holland, Africa, the West Indies, and the neighbouring colonies; from each of which places they import the following articles; from Great Britain, dry goods; from Holland, money; from Africa, slaves; from the West Indies, sugar, coffee, and molasses; and from the neighboring colonies, lumber and provisions: and with what they purchase in one place, they...[pay] in another.

Thus, with the money they get in Holland, they pay their merchants in London; the sugars they procure in the West Indies, they carry to Holland; the slaves they fetch from Africa they send to the West Indies, together with lumber and provisions, which they get from the neighbouring colonies: the rum that they distil they export to Africa; and with the dry goods, which they purchase in London, they traffick in the neighbouring colonies. By this kind of circular commerce they subsist and grow rich. 110



COLONIAL HOUSE. (From Old Prints.)

[Those of Massachusetts] carry on a considerable traffick, chiefly in the manner of the Rhode-Islanders, [exporting] salt-fish and vessels. Of the latter they build annually a great number, and send them, laden with cargoes of the former, to Great Britain, where they sell them.¹¹²



OLD COLONIAL INTERIOR. (From Old Prints.)

The Irish orator, Burke, in one of his speeches on America, said of the New England whale fishery:

As to the wealth which the Colonies have drawn from the sea by their fisheries, . . . what in the world is equal to it? . . . Look at the manner in which the people of New England have of late carried on the Whale-Fishery. Whilst we follow them among the tumbling

mountains of ice, and behold them penetrating into the deepest hidden recesses of Hudson's Bay..., whilst we are looking for them beneath the Arctic Circle, we hear that they have pierced into the opposite region of polar cold, that they are... engaged under the frozen [constellations]... of the south.... Whilst some of them draw the line and strike the harpoon on the coast of Africa, others pursue... their gigantic game along the coast of Brazil. 113

FIRST STUDY ON I.

1. What occupations were followed in the Southern Colonies? 2. What occupations in the Middle Colonies? 3. What in New England? 4. What evidences do you find that the colonists were well off? 5. Make a list of the places visited by a Rhode Island merchant vessel, from the time it left Rhode Island until its return; write opposite the name of each place, 1st, what the merchant vessel took to that place, and 2nd, what it took away from that place. 6. What good seaports were there in the colonies? 7. Which group of colonies did most trading? 8. With whom did they trade? 9. Which groups were beginning to manufacture, and what?

SECOND STUDY ON I.

1. Who were the colonial captains? 2. Into what parts of the world did they go? 3. What materials did the colonists use for building houses? 4. Why did the colonists need forts everywhere? 5. Where did they get dry goods? 6. What sigus were there that they wished to be free from England? 7. What had England done to make them feel in this way? 8. What was the condition of streets in Charleston and New York?

Supplementary Reading.—A Whaling Song, in Library American Literature, II. 364. Sir William Johnson's Baronial Hall, in Library American Literature, III. 137, or in Thomas Jones' History of New York. New York, 1879.

2. ENGLISH LAWS ON COLONIAL COMMERCE.

'Twas in the reign of George the Third Our public peace was much disturbed By ships of war, that came and laid Within our ports, to stop our trade.

No honest coaster could pass by But what they would let some shot fly; And did provoke, to high degree, Those true born sons of liberty.

- Rhode Island Ballad of 1772.114

English "Navigation Laws" and "Acts of Trade."—As far back as 1660 the English government had begun to pass laws that bore hard on colonial commerce. The first of them declared that no Dutch, French, or Spanish ship should bring anything into the colonies from Asia, Africa, Europe, or the other parts of America; only English ships should be allowed to do this and to sell the products of these countries to the colonists; it was further declared that none of the sugar, tobacco, cotton, wool, indigo, ginger, ... and ... dyeing woods of his Majesty's plantations in America should be sold to anybody but an Englishman. Then, in 1699, came a law "for the encouragement of the woollen manufacture in the kingdom of England." It read:

Forasmuch as Wooll and the Woollen Manufactures of Cloth, ... are the greatest and most profitable commodities of this Kingdom, on which the ... Trade of the Nation do[es] chiefly depend: And whereas great Quantities of the like Manufactures have of late been made, ... in the English Plantations in America, and are exported from thence to foreign Markets, heretofore supplied from England, which will ... tend to the Ruine of the ... Woollen Manufacture of

this Realm;...[Therefore] be it enacted by the King's most Excellent Majesty,...that...no Wooll... Woollen Yarn, Cloth,... or Woollen manufactures whatsoever,... of any of the English Plantations of America, shall be loaden...in any ship... upon any Pretence whatsoever; as likewise that no such Wooll,... shall be loaden upon any Horse, Cart, or other Carriage... to be exported... out of the said English Plantations to any of the other of the said Plantations, or to any other Place whatsoever.

[In 1732, came a law that] Whereas, the Art and Mystery of making Hats in *Great Britain* hath arrived to great Perfection, and . . . his Majesty's Plantations . . . in *America* . . . have been wholly supplied with Hats from *Great Britain*; and whereas great Quantities of Hats have of late Years been made, . . . in *America* . . .: Wherefore, for preventing the said ill Practices for the future, and for promoting . . . the Trade of making Hats in *Great Britain*, Be it enacted . . . That . . . no Hats [shall hereafter be made in America]. 115

Writs of Assistance.—All these laws had been passed before the French and Indian War. Near the close of that war, in 1760, George III. came to the throne of England, and he was angry enough, when he was told how the colonists were cheating him out of his duties, and that too, just when he was in the greatest need of money, on account of the heavy expenses of the French and Indian War. For these Yankees, instead of carrying their sugar, molasses, and dyeing-wood into the regular ports and paying duties on them, as the law told them to do, were taking them from one colony to another quite as they liked, and landing their goods at little out-of-the-way places, where the king had no custom-house officers to look after them. This was downright smuggling, and King George III. would have none of it, and so he sent out still more officers to catch these Yankee skippers; and he gave these new officers what he

called Writs of Assistance. These were legal papers giving the king's officers a right to hunt for smuggled goods in any place, and at any time. These writs made the colonists very angry, and they held many meetings and made many speeches against the king. The most famous of these speeches was that made by James Otis, a young Boston lawyer, who said:

Every one with this writ may be a tyrant; . . . a person with this writ, in the daytime, may enter all houses, shops, &c., at will, and command all to assist him.... Now one of the most essential branches of English liberty is the freedom of one's house. A man's house is his castle; and whilst he is quiet, he is as well guarded as a prince in his castle. This writ . . . would totally . . . [destroy this privilege. Custom house officers may enter our houses, when they please; we are commanded to permit their entry. Their menial servants may enter, may break locks, bars, and every thing in their way.... Bare suspicion... is sufficient.... I will mention some facts. . . . Mr. Justice Walley had called . . . [a customhouse officer] before him, by a constable, to answer for a breach of [the] Sabbath-day or . . . [for] profane swearing. As soon as he had finished [the officer] ... said ..., I will show you a little of my power. I command you to permit me to search your house for uncustomed [smuggled] goods. And went on to search his house from the garret to the cellar. . . . Every man, prompted by revenge, ill humor, or wantonness, to inspect the inside of his neighbor's house, may get a writ of assistance.116

STUDY ON 2.

1. What would the colonists want from Asia? From Africa? From other parts of America? 2. Suppose an English merchant ship lay in Boston Harbor with a cargo of tea; and suppose a Dutch merchant ship came in and offered a cargo of the same kind of tea cheaper; of which would the colonists wish to buy? 3. Of which would they have to buy? 4. What price would they have to pay? 5. To which would they have to sell their furs and provisions? 6. What price would they have to take? 7. Why?

8. Who would get the advantage of such a law? 9. Why would the New Englanders prefer to buy sugar where they could pay for it with fish? 10. Why should the colonists wish to make beaver hats and woollen cloths? 11. Why did the English wish them not to make these things? 12. Why were the colonists angry with the Writs of Assistance? 13. What reason had the king to be angry with the colonists?

3. THE STAMP ACT.

002000

In an American tax, what do we do? We... give and grant to your Majesty... what? Our own property? No. We give and grant to your Majesty the property of your Majesty's commons in America.... The gentleman tells us America is obstinate; America is almost in open rebellion. I rejoice that America has resisted.—Pitt, to the House of Commons. 117

The Act Itself.—In spite of her Writs of Assistance and her Navigation Laws, England did not get as much money as she expected from her American Colonies; and she had a great debt of millions of dollars on hand, after all her wars with France, Holland, and Spain. So in 1765 King George III.



8

A STAMP.

decided to lay a new tax called a Stamp Act, which decreed that on "every Skin or Piece of Vellum or Parchment, or Sheet or Piece of Paper, on which shall be . . . written, or printed, any . . . Will," a stamp costing sixpence should be placed; on the same containing permission for a man to practise law, a stamp costing ten pounds; on the same containing a license to sell liquors, one costing

from one to four pounds; on every written contract, a stamp costing from one shilling sixpence upward; on "every Pamphlet and upon every News Paper, one Halfpenny to

... one Shilling.... For every Advertisement in any... News Paper, or other Paper... two Shillings," and so on and so on. So that the law might be easily carried out, it was ordered that "the Colonies... be furnished with Vellum, Parchment, and Paper, stamped with the Duties," and plenty of officers were appointed to enforce this new law. 118

Barré's Speech in Parliament. — When Townshend, the king's prime minister, brought the Stamp Act into Parliament, and asked the members to make it a law, he made a speech in which he asked:

Will these American children, planted by our care, nourished up to strength... by our indulgence, and protected by our arms, grudge to contribute their mite to relieve us from the heavy burden under which we lie? 119

Barré, who had been the friend and companion of Wolfe at Quebec, sprang to his feet and replied:

Children planted by your care! No! your oppression planted them in America; ... they nourished up by your indulgence! they grew by your neglect of them: as soon as you began to care about them, that care was exercised in sending persons to rule over them ... whose behaviour, on many occasions, has caused the blood of those sons of liberty to recoil within them. They protected by your arms! they have nobly taken up arms in your defence. . . . And the same spirit which actuated that people at first, will continue with them still. 120

But in spite of Barré's gallant speech, the Parliament voted that the Stamp Act should become law.

How the Colonists received the News of the Stamp Act.

— When the news of this came to the colonies, Mr. James Otis, who had made the speech about the Writs of Assistance,

wrote: "If it is the opinion of the honorable House of Commons, that they in fact represent the colonies, it is more than I know.... We are... as perfect strangers to most of them, as the savages in California." ¹²¹

Samuel Adams, another rising young Boston lawyer, presented resolutions to the Massachusetts Legislature, which maintained,

That his Majesty's subjects in America are, in reason and com-



SAMUEL ADAMS.
(After Copley's Portrait.)

mon sense, entitled to the same extent of liberty with his Majesty's subjects in Britain; [and since they are not represented in the English Parliament, they are represented by the Provincial Assemblies, and by them, and by them only, ought they to be taxed.]¹²²

Patrick Henry, a young lawyer of Virginia, presented to the Virginia Assembly the following resolutions:

Resolved, That the taxation of the people by themselves or by persons chosen by themselves to represent them, who can only know what taxes the peo-

ple are able to bear, . . . is the distinguishing characteristic of British freedom. . . .

Resolved, therefore, That the General Assembly of this colony have the only and sole exclusive right and power to lay taxes... upon the inhabitants of this colony....¹²³

Stamp Act Congress.—It was James Otis of Massachusetts again who proposed that the colonists should have a common meeting or Congress, to which they should all send delegates, who might decide what to do about the Stamp Act. Repre-

sentatives from nine of the colonies met in such a congress in New York City; they wrote a declaration of rights and grievances, and petitions to Parliament, and sent them over to England; it was in this congress that *Christopher Gadsden* of South Carolina said, "There ought to be no New England man, no New Yorker, known on the continent, but all of us Americans."

How the Colonists received the Stamps.—But in spite of petitions and all, the stamps and the stamped paper and parchment came over in the British ships; in Boston, there were regular mobs, that robbed the stamp officers and burned their property; in New York, even while the Stamp Congress was in session, a ship came sailing in bringing stamps; and down went the flags of all the ships to half-mast, while the people seized the stamps and burned them. The British General Gage wrote of Rhode Island, that "that little turbulent colony raised their mob likewise" against the stamps. In Charleston, the stamp officer resigned, and up went the flag of liberty wreathed in laurel. John Adams writes in his diary:

[At Philadelphia,] the Heart-and-Hand Fire Company has expelled... the stamp man for that colony. The freemen of Talbot county, in Maryland, have erected a gibbet before the door of the court-house, twenty feet high, and have hanged on it the effigy of a stamp informer in chains...; and have resolved, unanimously, to hold in utter contempt and abhorrence every stamp officer,... so triumphant is the spirit of liberty everywhere. Such a union was never before known in America. 124

The Repeal.—The following extract from a Boston Extra tells us the rest of the story:

GLORIOUS NEWS.

Boston, Friday 11 o'Clock, 16th May 1766. This Instant arrived here the Brig Harrison, belonging to John Hancock, Esq.;

Captain Shubael Coffin, in 6 Weeks and 2 Days from London, with important News, as follows.

From the London Gazette. Westminster, March 18th, 1766.

This day his Majesty came to the [Houses of Parliament,] and being in his royal robes seated on the throne with the usual solemnity... his Majesty was pleased to give his royal assent to an Act to REPEAL... certain Stamp-Duties... in the British Colonies and Plantations in America...

Immediately on His Majesty's signing the Royal Assent to the Repeal of Stamp-Act, the Merchants trading to America dispatched a Vessel which had been in waiting, to put into the first Port of the Continent with the Account.

There were the greatest Rejoicings possible in the City of London by all Ranks of People, on the TOTAL Repeal of the Stamp-Act. The Ships in the River displayed all their Colours, Illuminations and Bonfires in many Parts. . . .

It is impossible to express the Joy the Town is now in, on receiving the above, great, glorious, and important NEWS. The Bells in all the Churches were immediately set a Ringing, and we hear the Day for a general Rejoicing will be the beginning of next Week.\(^{125}\)

STUDY ON 3.

1. Why did the king and minister of England want more money?
2. What excuse had they for making America pay part of the debts for the French wars? 3. Who voted to tax America? 4. Which colonies might Townshend have been thinking of when he spoke of these American children planted by our care? 5. Which might Barré have been thinking of when he said, Your oppressions planted them in America? 6. Why should the Americans be called the sons of liberty? 7. Why did the colonists think that the English Parliament did not represent them? 8. Who did represent them? 9. Why was it just for the colonists to be taxed by the assemblies which did represent them? 10. Why should it be of more use for a congress of the colonies to make a complaint to England than to have each colony complain separately? 11. What friends did the colonists have in England? 12. Who was to blame for the Stamp Act? 13. What does this mean, TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION?

Supplementary Reading. — Patrick Henry, in John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. New York, 1879.

4. FROM THE STAMP ACT TO THE BOSTON TEA PARTY.

Come join hand in hand, brave Americans all, And rouse your bold hearts at Fair Liherty's call; No tyrannous acts shall suppress your just claim, Or stain with dishonor America's name. In Freedom we're born, and in Freedom we'll live, Our purses are ready, Steady, Friends, Steady, Not as Slaves, but as Freemen, our money we'll give.

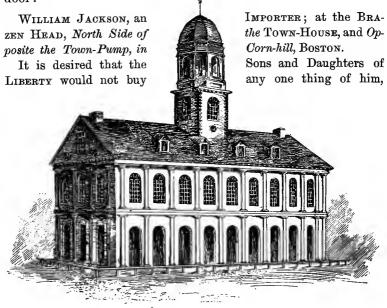
- Song of Time, by John Dickinson. 126

Non-Importation Agreements.—The next thing George III. and his ministers did was to lay a tax on all the glass, paper, painter's colors, and tea, that should be imported into the colonies; they also confirmed their Writs of Assistance and their laws of trade; and in that same year, the merchants of Boston, New York, and other places in the colonies, began to make non-importation agreements like the following, which was voted for unanimously "at a Meeting of the Freeholders and other Inhabitants of the Town of Boston, legally assembled at Faneuil-Hall" in a great TOWN-MEETING.

We therefore the Suscribers,...Do promise and engage... that we will not... purchase any of the following Articles, imported from Abroad, viz. Loaf Sugar,... Coaches,... Mens and Womens Hatts, and Womens Apparel ready made, Houshold Furniture, Gloves, Mens and Womens Shoes,... Clocks and Watches, Silversmiths and Jewellers ware, Broad Cloths that cost above 10s. a Yard,... all Sorts of Millinery Ware,... Fire Engines, China Ware, Silk and Cotton velvets,... Lawns, Cambricks, Silks of all Kinds for Garments, Malt Liquors, and Cheese.

Agreements like this were made throughout the colonies, one of the most famous being that signed by George Washington,

Patrick Henry, Thomas Jefferson, and other leading Virginians. If any merchant still went on importing and selling any of these things, he was apt to find a notice like this posted up on his door:



FANEUIL HALL, THE "CRADLE OF LIBERTY." (From Proceedings of the Mass. Hist. Soc.)

for in so doing they will bring Disgrace upon themselves, and their Posterity, for ever and ever, AMEN.¹²⁷

The Boston Massacre. — The king now began to send troops over to Boston town until it seemed full of redcoats; and in 1770 the troops fired on the citizens. In a Boston handbill of the time we read:

AMERICANS! BEAR IN REMEMBRANCE The HORRID MASSACRE! Perpetrated in King-Street, Boston, New England, On the Evening



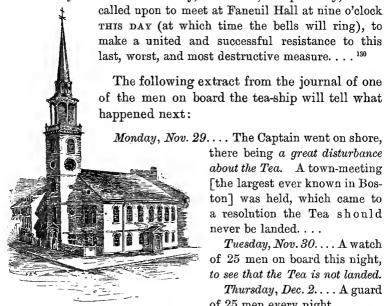
GEORGE III. (From Old Portrait,)

of March the Fifth, 1770, when five of your fellow countrymen, . . . Lay wallowing in their Gore! being basely, and most inhumanly MURDERED! and SIX others badly wounded! by a Party of the XXIXth Regiment, Under the command of Capt. Tho. Preston. . . . Let these things be told to Posterity! And handed down from Generation to Generation, till Time shall be no more! Forever may AMERICA be preserved, from weak and wicked monarchs, Tyrannical Ministers, Abandoned Governors, their Underlings and Hirelings! 128

The Boston Tea Party. - After the Boston Massacre the feeling against England grew stronger. Samuel Adams in Massachusetts, Jefferson and Patrick Henry in Virginia, proposed that the colonies should combine their strength to resist England, and many were ready to fight if it should come to The trouble was now growing so serious that King George III. and his ministers decided to repeal all the taxes except that on tea; for, said his Majesty, "I am clear there must always be one tax to keep up the right, and as such I approve of the tea-duty;" 129 and ships full of tea were sent over to Charleston, Philadelphia, Boston, and New York. But the Philadelphians, at a meeting in the state-house, voted that they would not allow the tea to land; and the men of Boston voted the same. When the ships arrived in Philadelphia, the people sent them back; so they did in New York; in Baltimore and Rhode Island, they burned the tea; "in Charleston," wrote General Gage, "they are as mad . . . as in the northern Boston." In Boston, the ships came in on a Sunday; Monday morning the following placard appeared:

FRIENDS! BRETHREN! COUNTRYMEN!

That worst of plagues, the detested TEA, shipped for this port by the East India Company, is now arrived in this harbor. The hour of destruction or manly opposition to . . . tyranny stares you in the face. Every friend to his country, to himself, and posterity, is now



OLD SOUTH CHURCH. (From sketch made for this book.)

there being a great disturbance about the Tea. A town-meeting Tthe largest ever known in Boston] was held, which came to a resolution the Tea should never be landed....

Tuesday, Nov. 30. . . . A watch of 25 men on board this night, to see that the Tea is not landed.

Thursday, Dec. 2... A guard of 25 men every night.

Thursday, Dec. 16.... Townmeeting this day [in the Old

South Church, addressed by Josiah Quincy, Joseph Warren and Samuel Adams]. Between six and seven o'clock this evening came down to the wharf a body of about one thousand people; - among them were a number dressed and whooping like Indians. They came on board the ship, and after warning myself and the Custom-House officer to get out of the way, they . . . went down the hold, where was eighty whole and thirty-four half chests of Tea, which they hoisted upon deck, and cut the chests to pieces, and hove the Tea all overboard, where it was damaged and lost. 130

FIRST STUDY ON 4.

1. What was a non-importation agreement? 2. How could such an agreement hurt England? 3. What people in England would it hurt? 4. How did the colonists punish any merchant that still went on importing? 5. What do we name this sort of punishment nowadays? 6. How does it hurt anybody? 7. Why should the colonists be angry on account of the troops in Boston? 8. What did the king mean by saying, There must always be one tax to keep up the right? 9. Why should the colonists care so much about this one little tax? 10. What did they want different about the taxes? 11. What did they do to have it different?

SECOND STUDY ON 4.

1. How did the troubles with England make the colonies feel toward each other? 2. How did they show that feeling? 3. Which colonies took the lead against the king and his measures? 4. What men were the leaders in each colony, as they appear in this and the earlier lessons? 5. What do you know of each of these men from your previous study? 6. Who passed the votes about the non-importation agreements and the tea? 7. What do you understand by a town-meeting? 8. What does this mean? — Taxation without representation is tyranny.

5. THE UNITED COLONIES.

The distinctions between Virginians, Pennsylvanians, New Yorkers, and New Englanders, are no more. I am not a Virginian, but an American.

- Patrick Henry, in Speech before First Continental Congress. 181

The Boston Port Bill.—In the early part of 1774, George III. and his ministers had new laws passed that bore very hard on New England; the worst of them was the Boston Port Bill, which declared that no ship should enter or leave Boston harbor. The people of Massachusetts held town-meetings, and ordered the following letter written by Samuel Adams to be sent out to the other colonies:

They have ordered our port to be entirely shut up, leaving us barely so much...as to keep us from perishing with cold and hunger; and it is said that a fleet of British ships is to block up our harbor until we shall make restitution to the East India Company for the loss of their tea.... The act fills the inhabitants with indignation.... This attack, though made immediately upon us, is doubtless designed for every other Colony who shall not surrender their sacred rights and liberties into the hands of an infamous Ministry. Now, therefore, is the time when all should be united in opposition to this violation of the liberties of all. 132

[The other colonies at once answered this letter with money and provisions, and with such messages as] "Hold on and hold out to the last. As you are placed in the front rank, if you fail, all will be over." "Depend upon it, we will further assist you with money and provisions if you need it." "Stand firm, and let your intrepid courage show to the world that you are Christians." The South Carolina Gazette declared: "one soul animates 3,000,000 of brave Americans, though extended over a long tract of 3000 miles." "123

In Connecticut, Israel Putnam, an old farmer and soldier, at once started for Boston with a flock of sheep, which he himself drove all the way to Boston town; in Virginia, "At a general Meeting of the Freeholders [land-holders] and Inhabitants of the County of Fairfax...at the Court-House," George Washington being chairman, the following resolutions were passed:

Resolved... That the inhabitants of the town of Boston are now suffering in the common cause of all British America... and therefore that a subscription ought immediately to be opened... to purchase provisions... to be distributed among the poorer sort of people there....

Resolved, That nothing will so much defeat the pernicious designs of the common enemies of Great Britain and her colonies, as a firm union of the latter, who ought to regard every act of violence or oppression inflicted upon any one . . . as aimed at all; and . . . that

a Congress should be appointed, to consist of deputies from all the colonies, to concert...a plan for the defense...of our common rights....

Resolved, That . . . during our present . . . distress, no slaves ought to be imported into any of the British colonies on this continent; and we take this opportunity of declaring our most earnest wishes to see an entire stop for ever put to such a wicked, cruel and unnatural trade. 134

Of the contribution sent up from this meeting, Washington gave \$250, and declared that he was ready to march 1000 men to Boston, and support them out of his own means.

The First American Congress.—Meanwhile, General Gage had ordered the General Court of Massachusetts to meet at Salem instead of at Boston; at this Salem meeting, under the lead of Samuel Adams, they began to talk about having a general congress of delegates from all the colonies meet at



JOHN ADAMS. (After Stuart.)

Philadelphia. When the governor heard what they were talking about, he sent his secretary to dissolve them; but Samuel Adams locked the door, and before it was opened, he, together with John Adams, and three others, had been chosen as delegates to this same Congress, and in September, 1774, the First American Congress was held. John Adams, in his diary, tells us of the journey and the arrival in Philadelphia:

Mr. Cushing, Mr. [Samuel] Adams, Mr. Paine and myself, set out on our journey together in one coach. [At New Haven,] seven miles out of town, at a tavern, we met a great number of carriages.

and of horsemen who had come out to meet us.... As we came into the town, all the bells in town were set to ringing and the people, men, women, and children, were crowding at the doors and windows, as if it was to see a coronation. [On coming within four miles of Philadelphia,] a number of carriages and gentlemen came out... to meet us....

[Sept. 5.] — At ten, the delegates all met at the City Tavern, and walked to the Carpenter's Hall.

[Sept. 17.] — This was one of the happiest days of my life. In Congress we had generous, noble sentiments, and manly eloquence. This day convinced me that America will support the Massachusetts, or perish with her.

[Oct. 20.] — Dined with the whole Congress at the City Tavern...; a most elegant entertainment. A sentiment was given: "May the sword of the parent never be stained with the blood of her children." 125

The Congress made one more declaration of American rights, declared that the colonies should tax and govern themselves in accordance with the laws of England, and sent an address to the people of Great Britain, and a petition to the king; they also formed an American association, which was an agreement of all the colonies to have no trade with Great Britain, neither buying from her, nor selling to her, until she should repeal her vexatious laws.

STUDY ON 5.

1. How could the Boston Port Bill hurt Boston? 2. Why should Massachusetts think that all the other colonies ought to help her? 3. Why did the other colonies seem to think that they ought to help her? 4. Who made up a county-meeting in Virginia, and where did they meet? 5. To what did it correspond in New England? 6. Who made up the first American Congress? 7. Where did it meet? 8. Whom did it represent or speak for? 9. How was it different from a town or county meeting? 10. What did it try to do? 11. Where had the people who went to it learned to speak and act about affairs of taxation and government?

6. LEXINGTON AND CONCORD.

Gentlemen may cry peace, peace; but there is no peace. The war is actually begun. The next gale that sweeps from the north will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms. Our brethren are already in the field. Why stand we here idle? What is it that gentlemen wish? What would they have? Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take; but, as for me, give me liberty or give me death!—Patrick Henry to the Virginia House of Representatives, Richmond, March 23, 1775. 186

The Stand at Lexington. — From the very beginning of 1775, General Gage, the commander of the British forces, began



(From Statue at Concord.)

to make new fortifications at Boston, and to send out spies into the country. The colonists, on their part, were collecting powder and arms, and training as soldiers from Massachusetts to Georgia. In Massachusetts alone, there were twenty thousand of the famous minute-men, or men ready to march at a minute's warning. General Gage, hearing that there was a large collection of powder, arms, and flour at Concord, sent out secretly a force of eight hundred men to destroy these stores and, if possible, to seize Samuel Adams and John Hancock, who were then in Lexington. But that night, as the British troops

were starting, beacon-fires and clanging bells, and swift riders like Paul Revere, roused the country-side, and in the early dawn the minute-men began to gather. At Lexington they met the British, and one of their captains tells the story:

Being informed that there were a number of regular officers, riding up and down the road, stopping and insulting people . . .; and also . . . that a number of the regular troops were on their march from Boston in order to take the province stores at Concord, [I] ordered our militia to meet on the common in . . . Lexington to consult what to do, and concluded not to . . . meddle nor make with said regular troops . . . unless they should insult or molest us, and upon their sudden approach, I immediately ordered our militia to disperse and not to fire:—immediately said troops made their appearance and rushed furiously, fired upon and killed eight of our party. . . . [The fire was returned and some of the British were wounded, and some captured, but the main body passed on.] 187



OLD MATCHLOCK GUN (Sketched from one preserved by Boston Historical Society.)

The Fight at Concord. — From Lexington, the British marched on to Concord, where they were again met by minutemen, one of whom was the Concord minister, in whose journal we read:

1775, 19 April. — This morning, between one and two o'clock, we were alarmed by the ringing of the bell, and upon examination found that the troops, to the number of eight hundred, had stolen their march from Boston, . . . and were at Lexington meeting-house half an hour before sunrise, where they had fired upon a body of our men, and, as we afterwards heard, had killed several. . . . Upon this, a number of our minute-men . . . marched out to meet them . . . in the town. Capt. Minot, who commanded them, [the minute-men] thought it proper to take possession of the hill above the meeting-

house as the most advantageous situation. No sooner had [our men] gained it, than we were met by the companies which were sent out to meet the [British] troops, who informed us... that we must retreat, as their number was more than treble ours... [It was decided to do so,] till our strength should be equal to the enemies, by recruits from neighboring towns that were continually coming in to our assistance. Accordingly we retreated over the bridge. The troops came into the town, ... destroyed sixty barrels of flour, ... five hundred pounds of balls, [and] set a guard of a hundred men at the North Bridge. . . .

[This guard was soon] alarmed by the approach of our people, who were now advancing, with special orders not to fire upon the troops unless fired upon... We received the fire of the enemy in three discharges of their pieces before it was returned by our commanding officer. The firing then soon became general...; two were killed on each side, and several of the enemy wounded.... The three companies of troops soon quitted their post at the bridge, and retreated in the greatest disorder and confusion to the main body, who... retreated the way they came. 138

But, says a British historian of the time:

The whole country was by this time alarmed. The minute-men, volunteers, and militia, assembled from all quarters, and posted themselves amongst trees, in houses, and behind walls, along the road through which the British troops were to pass. [At Lexington the retreating British were met by fresh troops from Boston, who formed into a hollow square, in the midst of which the wearied men lay down] for rest on the ground, their tongues hanging out of their mouths, like those of dogs after a chase. [After they were a little refreshed, they] moved on towards Boston, harassed the whole of the way by the Americans, who, from behind stone walls and other places of shelter, kept up on our men an incessant fire. 139

Such was the day of Lexington. The next night, men began to pour in upon Boston from the whole of Massachusetts; a

camp was formed at Cambridge, and the colonists, or "rebels," as the British called them, began the siege of Boston.

In three days, John Stark, with New Hampshire pioneers, was on the spot; up from Connecticut came bands of militia, with Israel Putnam and Benedict Arnold for their leaders. This Israel Putnam had "served during the whole of the last war against the French, and was wounded fifteen different times.... When he heard of the battle of Lexington, he was following his plough. As soon as he was satisfied of the truth of the news, he took one of his horses out of the plough, and bid his servant take the other and follow him with his arms to Boston." 140

Rhode Island sent fifteen hundred men, led by Nathanael Greene, a young farmer and mechanic, a champion in wrestling, skating, and running, who had studied all the books he could find on the art of war.

Wherever the news came, men sprang to arms. From Boston to New York and Philadelphia, from Philadelphia to Virginia, from Virginia to the Carolinas and Georgia, the REVOLUTION had begun.

STUDY ON 6.

1. What were General Gage and the colonists preparing for in April of 1775? 2. Why should they think the time had come for this? 3. Why should General Gage wish to destroy the powder and arms at Concord? 4. Why should a hill be a good place for Captain Minot to station his men? 5. Why was it best for them at first to retreat? 6. What effect had the American stand at the bridge on the British? 7. What do you understand by lying in ambush? 8. From whom had the Americans learned the mode of fighting they practised during the retreat of the British? 9. What advantage was there in it? 10. Why was Israel Putnam a good man to lead the volunteers? 11. Nathanael Greene? 12. Why was the day of Lexington an important one? 13. What reason had the British for calling the colonists rebels? 14. What right had the colonists to rebel?

Supplementary Reading. — Longfellow's Paul Revere's Ride. Emerson's Concord Hymn.

7. THE SIEGE OF BOSTON.

Lift up your hands, ye heroes,
And swear with proud disdain,
The wretch that would ensnare you,
Shall lay his snares in vain:
Should Europe empty all her force,
We'll meet her in array,
And fight and shout, and shout and fight,
For North America.

- Joseph Warren. 141

General Gage's Proclamation. — General Gage made one more effort for peace. In the old state-house in Boston you can still see the proclamation which he put forth in June of 1775.

A PROCLAMATION.

WHEREAS, the infatuated Multitudes, who have long suffered themselves to be conducted by certain well-known...Traitors... have at length proceeded to avowed Rebellion;...it only remains for those who are entrusted with the supreme Rule... to prove that they do not bear the Sword in vain.

I... do hereby in his Majesty's Name offer and promise his most generous Pardon to all Persons who shall forthwith lay down their Arms and return to the Duties of peaceable Subjects, excepting only from the Benefit of such Pardon, Samuel Adams and John Hancock.

Thomas Gage.

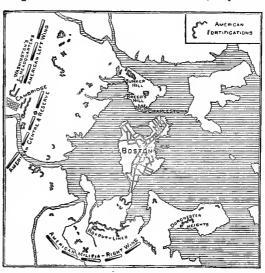
God save the King!

The Battle of Bunker Hill. — Instead of laying down their arms, the colonists gathered closer and closer about Boston,

and in just a week they made their famous attempt to hold the heights of Charlestown. This attempt brought on the Battle of Bunker Hill, the account of which we gather from the various stories of the colonists engaged.

Last Fryday afternoon orders were issued for about 1800 of the province [Massachusetts] men and 200 of Connecticut men, to parade

themselves . . . with one day's provisions, blankets, &c. Near 9 o'clock they marched, with intrenching tools in carts by their side. [Arrived at Bunker Hill, they began to make trenches in which to shelter themselves while fighting, every man working the whole night through, with spade and pickaxe. Never were men in worse condition for action, - exhausted by watching, fa-



SKETCH-MAP OF BOSTON, BUNKER HILL, AND CHARLESTOWN.

tigue, and hunger, — and never did old soldiers behave better. [Morning arrived, and the British] began a heavy fire before sunrise, . . . which was kept up with little or no cessation till afternoon. But finding our people paid little regard to their cannon, . . . they landed, and formed in three or four solid columns, and . . . marched on very regularly, . . . with a quick step up the precipice, [General Howe leading in person. The colonists, having but little powder, their officers' orders were,] "Wait till you see the white

of their eyes;" "Aim at the handsome coats;" "Pick off the commanders."... Bombs, chain-shot, ring-shot, and double-headed shot, flew as thick as hailstones, but thank Heaven few of our men suffered by them;... how the balls flew,—I freely acknowledge I never had such a tremor come over me before.... The regulars fell in great plenty, but to do them justice, they keep a grand front, and stood their ground nobly. Twice... they gave way, but [it was] not long before we saw numbers mounting the walls of our fort,—on which our men in the fort were ordered to fire, and make a swift retreat."

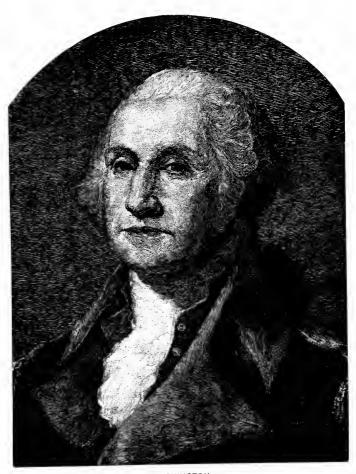
The British posted up in Boston the following account:

This Action has shown the Bravery of the King's Troop[s] who under every Disadvantage, gained a compleat Victory over Three Times their Number, strongly posted, and covered by Breastworks. But they fought for their King, their Laws and Constitution. 143

When Washington heard of this battle, he asked if this New England militia had stood the fire of the British regulars; he was told that they had not only stood this fire, but had waited to give their own till the regulars were within eight rods of them, and had then picked them off with deadly aim; he then exclaimed, "The liberties of the country are safe!" As for the British, they now began to think they had a real war on their hands.

The Continental Army. — Meanwhile, the Continental Congress made George Washington commander-in-chief of the Continental Army, as they now called the soldiers gathering in New England. The following newspaper extract will show what stuff this army was made of:

On Friday evening last, arrived at Lancaster, [Pennsylvania]... on their way to the American camp, Capt. Cresap's company of riflemen, consisting of one hundred and thirty active, brave young fellows.... These men have been bred in the woods to hardships



WASHINGTON.

and dangers from their infancy.... [One] of the company held a barrel stave perpendicularly in his hands with one edge close to his side, while one of his comrades, ... at the distance of upwards of sixty yards and without any kind of a rest, ... shot several bullets through it.... The spectators appearing to be amazed... were told that there... was not one who could not plug nineteen bullets out of twenty, as they termed it, within an inch of the head of a tenpenny nail.... At night a great fire was kindled... where the company... [gave] a perfect exhibition of a war-dance, and all the manœuvres of Indians, holding council, going to war, circumventing their enemies by... ambuscades,... scalping, &c.... This morning they will set out on their way for Cambridge. 144

The Evacuation of Boston.— The colonists besieged Boston almost a year, when one morning came to the Congress in Philadelphia the following news:

March 17.—This morning the British army in Boston, under General Howe...fled from before the army of the United Colonies, and took refuge on board their ships.... The joy of our friends in Boston, on seeing the victorious and gallant troops of their country enter the town almost at the heels of their barbarous oppressors, was inexpressibly great. 145

FIRST STUDY ON 7.

1. What did General Gage think of the colonists, and what did he call the Revolution? 2. Why did he except Samnel Adams from his offers of pardon? 3. In which directions did the colonists hinder the British from getting out of Boston? (See map for 3, 4, 5.) 4. In which direction could they get out? 5. What harm could the Americans do the British by holding the heights of Charlestown? 8. What disadvantages had the colonists at Bunker Hill? 9. What disadvantages had the regulars? 10. Why should their officers want the colonists to wait until the British came so near? 11. Which party beat at Bunker Hill? 12. How did the British show courage? 13. How did the colonists show it?

SECOND STUDY ON 7.

(See also the List of Events from April 1, 1775, to April 1, 1776, and Reference Map for the Revolution.) 1. How does the British or Tory account of the battles differ from the colonial account? 2. What good did the battle of Bunker Hill do us, and why should it be remembered with such pride? 3. What in Washington's life had prepared him to be a good commander-in-chief for the continental army? 4. Why were such men as came up in Colonel Cresap's command, particularly dangerous to the British? 5. Where had they learned to fight and shoot? 6. Take Outline Map No. 3, and mark with blue the places where colonial victories took place during this first year; mark with red the British victories. (See for this, the List of Events from April 19, 1775, to March 17, 1776, and Reference Map.) 7. What was the centre of the war during this year? 8. What generals commanded on either side?

Supplementary Reading. — Webster at Bunker Hill, S. G. Goodrich, [Peter Parley] in Library American Literature, V. 295, or in Recollections of a Life-time. The Nomination of the Commander-in-Chief, by John Adams, in Library American Literature, III. 190, or in Works, Vol. I. Letters of Abigail Adams to her Husband, in Old South Leaflets.

8. THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

O ye that love mankind; ye that dare oppose, not only tyranny, but the tyrant, stand forth; every spot of the old world is overrun with oppression. Freedom hath been hunted around the globe. Asia and Africa have long expelled her. Europe regards her like a stranger, and England hath given her warning to depart. O! receive the fugitive! and prepare in time an asylum for mankind.—Thomas Paine, in "Common Sense," a famous pamphlet of 1776.146

Independence in Mecklenburg County, North Carolina.

— In the very next month after the battle of Lexington, the citizens of Mecklenburg County in North Carolina, had met at their county court-house, and resolved:

Whereas, . . . the American colonies are declared to be in a state of actual rebellion, we conceive that all laws . . . derived from the

authority of the King and Parliament are . . . for the present wholly suspended . . . and, . . .

As all former laws are now suspended in this province, and the Congress has not yet provided others, we judge it necessary... to form certain rules... for the internal government of this county, until laws shall be provided for us by the Congress.¹⁴⁷

The meeting then went on to elect county officers and make county laws.

Independence in the Continental Congress. — John Adams tells us that when he and his companions first reached Pennsylvania, on their way to the Continental Congress, they were

met...by...several...of the most active Sons of Liberty in Philadelphia [who]...represented to us that.. we were all sus-

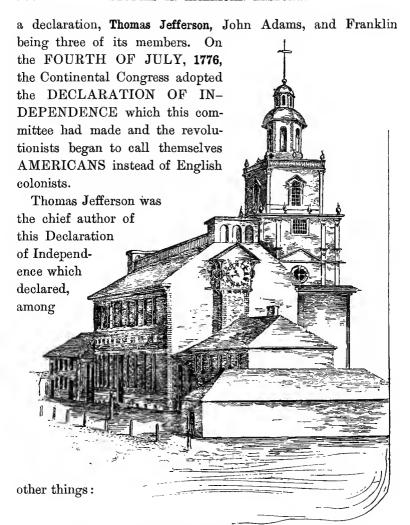
pected of having independence in view. Now, said they, you must not utter the word independence, . . . either in Congress or in any private conversation; if you do, you are undone. . . .

Although this advice dwelt on my mind, I had not... prudence... enough always to observe it... It soon became rumored about the city that John Adams was for independence. The Quakers and proprietary gentlemen... represented me as the worst of men... But every ship... brought us fresh proof of the truth of my prophecies, and one after another became convinced of the necessity of independence.... 148



THOMAS JEFFERSON.
(After Stuart.)

The Declaration.—At last so many were convinced of this necessity that in June of 1776, Richard Henry Lee of Virginia moved that we should declare ourselves independent of Great Britain. A committee was appointed to write such



STATE HOUSE IN PHILADELPHIA, WHERE THE CONGRESS SAT.

(From Columbian Magazine, July, 1787.)

That all men are created equal, [and that no one can take from any man his right to] life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness.... The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries....

He has refused his assent to laws the most . . . necessary for the public good. . . .

[He has given his assent to laws:]

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us; . . .

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;

For imposing taxes upon us without our consent; ...

For taking away our charters . . . ;

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people. . . .

We, therefore, . . . do, in the name, and by authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are and of right ought to be, free and independent states. . . . And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

John Hancock,
President of the Congress.

Then follow the names of fifty-six signers, twenty-one of whom were lawyers; ten, merchants; four, doctors; three, farmers; one a clergyman; and one a printer. Sixteen of them were wealthy, and twenty-five were college graduates. Among the names, we find those of Samuel Adams, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, and Thomas Jefferson.

The Vote on the Declaration.—When it came to the voting, as we learn from a London paper of the time:

On the first trial there were but six votes in Congress for independence, [the votes being taken by states] the other seven being against it. The delegates for Pennsylvania were known to be divided. Adams wrought upon the versatility of one of them, a Mr. Dickinson, and so carried his point. Thus a matter of such moment to both countries, and which, the rebels would make us believe, was the unanimous voice of the thirteen colonies, was finally determined by the single suffrage of Mr. Dickinson! 149

How the News of the Declaration was received. — In one of the Pennsylvania papers we read:

This afternoon the Declaration of Independence was read at the head of each brigade of the Continental Army, posted at... New York. It was received everywhere with loud huzzas, and the utmost demonstrations of joy; and tonight the equestrian statue of George III., which Tory pride and folly raised in the year 1770, has, by the Sons of Freedom, been laid prostrate in the dirt—the just desert of an ungrateful tyrant! The lead wherewith the monument was made is to be run into bullets.....150

Notices similar to the above appeared in the papers throughout the thirteen colonies. In the diary of a Philadelphia citizen we read:

Went to [the] State House Yard, where, in the presence of a great concourse of people, the Declaration of Iudependence was read.... The company declared their approbation by three repeated huzzas. The King's Arms were taken down . . . there were bonfires, ringing bells, with other great demonstrations of joy. ¹⁵¹

STUDY ON 8.

1. What was the feeling about independence when the Revolution began?
2. When had King George III. quartered large bodies of troops among the colonists?
3. How had he cut off our trade with all parts of the world?
4. When had he imposed taxes upon us without our consent?
5. When and where had he taken away charters?
6. When had he destroyed the lives of our people?
7. Why should George III. be called a tyrant?
8. Of whom did the colonies declare themselves independent?
9. What colonies were represented in the Declaration?
10. Who represented them?
11. What proof is there that the Declaration was popular, or well-liked by the people?

12. What proof that many were against it? 13. What had the colonists been fighting for before July 4th, 1776? 14. What would they fight for now? 15. What reasons had the colonists to think they could be independent of Great Britain? 16. Who were the leaders in declaring independence?

Supplementary Reading.— Thomas Jefferson, in John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. New York, 1879. For complete Declaration, see Old South Leaflets.

9. THE TORIES.

The fated to Banishment, Poverty, Death,
Our Hearts are unalter'd, and with our last breath
Loyal to George, we'll pray most fervently
Glory and Joy crown the King!

- Tory Song. 152

What the Tories thought of the Revolutionists.—Many of the people in the colonies were known as *Tories* on account of what they thought about the Revolution and its leaders. What this was may be seen in the following extract from their favorite newspaper:

If every man had thought for himself, and not been led by the nose by a Cooper [a Boston minister] or an Adams, all might have been happy; but these . . . people have made themselves idols, viz., liberty trees, newspapers, and congresses, which by blindly worshipping have so engrossed their minds, that they give not the least attention to their several occupations, but attend at taverns, where they talk politics, get drunk . . . and vow they will follow any measures proposed to them by their demagogues [popular leaders.]

It is a remark that the high Sons of Liberty consist but of two sorts of men. The first are those who... are reduced almost to poverty.... The latter are the ministers... who instead of preach-

ing...obedience to the laws of Britain, belch from the pulpit liberty, independence, and...endeavor... to shake off their allegiance to the mother country. 153

What the Revolutionists thought of the Tories.—The Tories of Northern New York were thus described by their neighbors:

Large numbers of the inhabitants...lost to every sense of the duty they owed their country, have joined the enemies of this state, and have,... with the British troops, waged war on the people of this state; while others... have remained among us, and have... aided, assisted, and victualled the... British troops. 154

The Tories... were in the constant habit of plundering the inhabitants... of their grain, poultry, and other kinds of eatables, and driving off their cattle, hogs, and sheep,... for the purpose of supplying the British army with provisions, for which no doubt they were well paid. Though often pursued, and sometimes roughly handled by the Whigs, they still persisted. 185

A patriot in New York City thus writes to his brother of the way some of the Tories there had been treated:

We Had some Grand Toory Rides in this City this week, & in particular Yesterday, Several of them ware handled verry Roughly Being Caried trugh the Streets on Rails, there Cloaths Tore from there backs and there Bodies pritty well Mingled with the dust.... Our Congress publish'd a Resolve on the Ocasion, Expressing there disapprobation.... 156

The Sufferings of a Boston Tory. — One of these Tories, a rich Boston merchant named Allen, has left us his side of the story.

[In 1772, on account of some tea I had bought from the British ships, I was waited on by] the whole committee of the town of Boston.... [Being] several different times threatened with that

diabolical punishment of being Tarred and Feathered, ... no mortal can tell... the anxiety of mind I was in, and expected my house to be pulled down, and everything to be distroyed.... My stock... [had] Cost me a great many thousand Pounds Sterling, and my Trade [dwindled]... away chiefly to friends of the Government and the Army after this above tea-affair....

[When Boston fell into the hands of the Americans, I tried to get away with the British; but failing in that, the General Court of Massachusetts] determined that I should be sent to... [Simsbury] mines..., and there to be kept under ground on small allowance, bread and water... My seven Tory children should be divided from each other fifty miles apart,... and to be put apprentices to those that would take care to make them earn their daily bread, and that hard enough... I was almost unable to support myself; but, in all my troubles, I never would relinquish my King and country. Some... said, if they had their will, they would have one of those trees, [pointing to some trees that stood near] stripped of all its branches but eight, and would have me and my seven children hanged thereon...

[But the Court afterward consented that I and my children should go to live with my brother, who was no Tory, and who had a farm in Shrewsbury. There a mob of the townspeople made me sign this paper:]

Whereas, I have been unfriendly to the common cause of America, and it being grievous to the good people of Shrewsbury for me to walk the streets, I promise and engage to abide within the limits of the farm of Lewis Allen . . . excepting to attend public worship at the meeting-house . . . , and if found without the said bounds I consent to receive any punishment they shall inflict not exceeding five hundred stripes on the naked back. And I further promise not to send any letter to any person, unless first shown to some person whom they shall appoint for that purpose.

[At length] three friends of government, that lived eighty miles' distance, hearing how barbarously I had been treated, ... came to my relief at the hazard of their lives and fortunes, ... [so] that

I might not suffer any longer amongst them...; through God's goodness they... brought me away triumphant with them about the hour of one o'clock in the morning.... Through the mercy of God I... arrived in New York safe..., and waited on Sir William Howe immediately.... [Shortly after, I sailed for England, and reached London safe and sound.] 167

STUDY ON 9.

1. What was a Tory? 2. Whom did they blame for the war? 3. What reasons had the independent (Congregational) ministers for being on the side of the Revolution? 4. What can we say in favor of the Tories? 5. What reason had the revolutionists, or Whigs, to fear and dislike the Tories? 6. How do we know that the New York patriot was a rather ignorant man? 7. Why did Mr. Allen's trade dwindle away? 8. Whom did he mean by friends of the government? 9. Why should the Shrewsbury mob make Mr. Allen promise not to write any letters that they could not see? 10. What is your own opinion of the Whig treatment of Mr. Allen and the New York Tories? 11. Was it the work of the government or the people? 12. What proofs can you give that Tories were common?

Supplementary Reading.—How Philadelphia dealt with Royalists, by Alexander Graydon, in Library American Literature, III. 460. Ruth Ogden, a Loyal Little Red-coat. 1890.

-05**050-**

10. SECOND AND THIRD YEARS OF THE WAR; WITH WASHINGTON IN THE JERSEYS.

On Christmas-day in seventy-six,
Our ragged troops, with bayonets fixed,
For Trenton marched away.
The Delaware see! The boats below!
The light obscured by hail and snow!
But no signs of dismay.

- Revolutionary Ballad. 158

In the Jerseys with Washington. — When the Declaration of Independence was passed, the Americans had great reason to

be encouraged; but in the fall of that same year, the British forces under Howe and Cornwallis drove Washington and Nathanael Greene away from New York, and Washington began his famous retreat through the Jerseys; he writes to his brother:

The enemy pushed us from place to place, till we were obliged to cross the Delaware with less than three thousand men fit for duty...; the Enemy's numbers,... exceeding ten or twelve thousand men.

Before I removed to the south side of the river, I had all the Boats... brought over, or destroyed, from Philadelphia upwards for seventy miles, and, by guarding the Fords, I have, as yet, baffled all their attempts to cross.... But we are in a... part of the Province... [where the people,] instead of turning out to defend their country,... are making their submissions [to the British] as fast as they can.

It was during this retreat that the famous affairs of Trenton and Princeton occurred. Cornwallis had stationed at Princeton a body of Hessians, which George III. had hired from one of the German princes to fight for him. It was these Hessians that Washington determined to capture. He writes to his brother:

Christmas-day at night, one hour before day, is the time fixed upon for our attempt on Trenton. For Heaven's sake, keep this to yourself, as the discovery of it may prove fatal to us.... I have ordered our men to be provided with three days' provisions ready cooked, with which and their blankets they are to march.... [After it was over, he writes again:] The evening of the 25th I ordered the troops... to parade back of McKonkey's Ferry, that they might begin to pass as soon as it grew dark.... But the quantity of ice, made that night, impeded the passage of the boats so much, that it was...near four, before the troops took up their line of march.... I ordered... them ... to push directly into the town,

that they might charge the enemy before they had time to form. . . . The number that submitted . . . was twenty-three officers and eight hundred and eighty-six men.

In justice to the officers and men, I must add, that their behaviour... reflected the highest honour npon them. The difficulty of passing the river in a very severe night, and their march through a violent storm of snow and hail, did not in the least abate their ardour; but, when they came to the charge, each seemed to vie with the other in pressing forward.... 159

As soon as Cornwallis heard of this victory, he marched at once for Trenton, hoping to force Washington back, or even to capture him, since Washington was between him and the Delaware; but in the night Washington marched around to the rear of the British army, captured three British regiments at Princeton, cut the bridges between himself and Cornwallis, and made good his way to the New Jersey heights, where he spent the rest of that winter.

Articles of Confederation.—In spite of all his exertions, Washington could do little that summer but hold the British in check; and in September they entered Philadelphia itself, and Congress withdrew to the little village of York, where they adopted the

Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union between the States....

Article I.—The style [name] of this Confederacy shall be,
"The United States of America."

ARTICLE II. — Each State retains its sovereignty, freedom, and independence, and every power..., which is not.. expressly... [given] to the United States in Congress assembled.

ARTICLE III.—The said States...enter into a firm league of friendship with each other, for their common defense, the security of their liberties, and their mutual... welfare, binding themselves to assist each other against all... attacks....

ARTICLE V. — . . . In determining questions in the United States in Congress assembled, each State shall have one vote. 160

Washington at Valley Forge. — The next winter Washington and his army were encamped at Valley Forge, whence Washington writes to Congress:

Yesterday afternoon... I ordered the troops to be in readiness [to fight]...; when behold, to my great mortification... the men were unable to stir on account of [hunger.]

And this, the great and crying evil, is not all. The soap, vinegar, and other articles allowed by Congress, we see none of... The first indeed, we have now little occasion for; few men having more than one shirt, ... and some none at all. In addition to which ... two thousand eight hundred and ninety-eight men now in camp unfit for duty, because they are barefoot and otherwise naked ..., numbers having been obliged ... to sit up all night by fires ... [on account of having no blankets.] It is a much easier thing to [find fault with the army] in a comfortable room by a good fireside, than to occupy a cold, bleak hill, and sleep under frost and snow....

For seven days past, there has been little less than a famine in camp. A part of the army has been a week without any kind of flesh, and the rest three or four days. Naked and starving as they are, we cannot enough admire the incomparable patience and fidelity of the soldiery. . . . ¹⁶¹

STUDY ON 10.

1. How did the American and British armies in the Jerseys compare in numbers? 2. Why did Washington destroy all the boats along the Delaware? 3. Prove that Washington found Tories along the Delaware. 4. Why did Washington want his attack on Trenton to be kept secret? 5. Under what difficulties did he win his victory? 6. What things helped him to win it? 7. Why should the states wish to become United States? 8. How did they compare in power with each other? 9. What difference between the heroism displayed by our ancestors at Bunker Hill and at Valley Forge? 10. Describe in your own words the Battle of Trenton.

Supplementary Reading. — Bret Harte's Caldwell of Springfield. Revolutionary Ballad on Battle of Trenton, in Library American Literature, III. 349. For complete Articles of Confederation, see Old South Leaflets. The Battle of the Kegs, Library American Literature, III. 244.

11. THE THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR; BURGOYNE'S INVASION.

Our affairs, it is said, are desperate! If this be our language, they are indeed.... But we are not driven to such narrow straits.... We have proclaimed to the world our determination "to die freemen, rather than to live slaves." We have appealed to Heaven for the justice of our cause, and in Heaven have we placed our trust.... Good tidings will soon arrive. We shall never be abandoned by Heaven, while we act worthy of its aid.—Samuel Adams, after the British entered Philadelphia. 162

While Washington, Cornwallis, and Howe were fighting through the Jerseys southward, the British were planning for Burgoyne's Invasion. What this invasion was meant to do, and how it succeeded, is best told in the diary of Mr. Thacher, a surgeon in the American army:

June, [1777.] — Congress have appointed Major General Schuyler to command in the northern department, including Albany, Ticonderoga, Fort Stanwix...; the British government have appointed... Burgoyne commander-in-chief of their army in Canada.... The plan is, that General Burgoyne's army shall take possession of Ticonderoga, and force his way through the country to Albany;... Colonel St. Leger is to march with a party of British, Germans, Canadians, and Indians, to the Mohawk River, and [take Fort Stanwix.]... The royal army at New York, under command of General Howe is to pass up the Hudson River, and ... the three armies are to form a junction at Albany.... This being accomplished,... New England, as they suppose, may become an easy prey....

[July] 5th.—It is with astonishment that we find the enemy have taken possession of an eminence...which...completely overlooks and commands all our works at Ticonderoga....

14th.—... At about 12 o'clock, in the night of the 5th instant, I was urgently called from sleep, and informed that our army was in motion, and was instantly to abandon Ticonderoga.... General Schuyler... is making every possible exertion, by taking up bridges, throwing obstructions in the roads and passes, by fallen trees, etc., to impede the march of Burgoyne's army toward Albany....

[Meanwhile St. Leger has been repulsed from Fort Stanwix by General Herkimer and General Benedict Arnold;] thus have we clipped the right wing of General Burgoyne.

30th.—Our army under General Schuyler have . . . [fallen] back to Stillwater, twenty-five miles above Albany. . . . General Burgoyne we learn, [finds] his march greatly impeded by the obstructions in the roads effected by order of General Schuyler. . . . Finding himself in want of provisions, . . . and . . . being informed that a large quantity of stores, corn, cattle, &c., were deposited at Bennington, . . . he planned an expedition for the purpose of possessing himself of this treasure. . . . He despatched . . . a German officer, with a party of five hundred Hessians and Tories, and one hundred Indians. . . . [But they were met by General John Stark and the Green Mountain Boys and entirely routed.] Burgoyne must feel the clipping of another wing.

Major-General Horatio Gates has superseded General Schuyler as commander of the northern department. . . .

September... 18th, and 19th. — Our army is advancing towards the enemy in three columns, under Generals Lincoln and Arnold, General Gates in the centre. [Two days after, the first battle of Saratoga was fought.]

October... 8th.—A most severe engagement took place yesterday... at a place between Stillwater and Saratoga, called Bemis' Heights. It is supposed to have been the hardest fought battle, and the most honorable to our army, of any since the commencement

of [the war].... General Arnold, in consequence of a serious misunderstanding with General Gates, was not vested with any command, by which he was exceedingly... irritated. He entered the field, however,... flourishing his sword and animating the troops.... In the heat of the action,... he ordered Lieutenant-Colonel Brooks, at the head of his regiment, to face the German lines, which was instantly obeyed, and they boldly entered at the rally part together, where Arnold received a wound..., and his horse was killed under him. Nightfall put a stop to our brilliant career, though the victory is most decisive....

14th.—... Burgoyne has this day made proposals to General Gates to... surrender his army.... The glorious event is about to be consummated.

[The terms of surrender allow Burgoyne's army to return to Eugland and Germany on condition of not serving again in the present war.] The trophies which we have achieved by this great event, are, officers and soldiers, five thousand seven hundred and ninety-one.... The train of brass artillery...[is] immensely valuable, besides seven thousand muskets,... and an ample supply of shot, shells, &c. To these are added, clothing for seven thousand men, a large number of tents and other military stores.... 163

Almost immediately after General Burgoyne's arrival in London, the following item appeared in a London paper:

It is said that General Burgoyne, who is lately arrived, has opened the eyes of the Ministry, both with respect to the personal courage of the Americans, and the number of well disciplined troops which our armies will have to beat, if this war is continued. But it is supposed that able Officer will remove the present [folly] of the Ministry, and convince them that peace and not war, with our colonies, is the true way to make them good subjects of Great Britain.¹⁶⁴

STUDY ON II.

1. Take your outline map for the Revolution, and mark with red the British victories from the end of the siege of Boston till Burgoyne's surren-

der. 2. Mark with blue the American victories during this same time. (See for these questions the List of Events and the Reference Map for this period.) 3. What places were the centres of war during this time? 4. What reason had the Americans to be encouraged at the time of the Declaration of Independence? 5. What reason had they to say their affairs were desperate, just after the British entered Philadelphia? 6. What four classes of fighters did Burgoyne command? 7. If Howe had joined Burgoyne at Albany, thus making a British line from New York to Canada, how would New England have thus become an easy prey? 8. What obstacles did General Burgoyne meet before he reached Saratoga? 9. What American generals should be remembered in connection with Burgoyne's invasion? 10. What did we gain by Burgoyne's defeat?

Supplementary Reading. — Bryant's Green Mountain Boys. The Fate of John Burgoyne, Library American Literature, III. 350.

——••/940•----

12. FOREIGN RELATIONS; FRANKLIN, LAFAYETTE.

The moment I beard of America, I loved her; the moment I knew she was fighting for freedom, I burnt with a desire of bleeding for her; and the moment I shall be able to serve her at any time, or in any part of the world, will be the happiest one of my life.—LAFAYETTE. 165

Franklin's Reception in France.—While Washington was at Valley Forge, Franklin was in France, sent there by Congress to try and get France to help us against England: in other words, to form a French Alliance. On his first arrival in Paris, he is thus described:

Doctor Franklin, who lately arrived . . . is very much run after, and fêted, . . . by all people who can get hold of him; . . . this Quaker wears the full costume of his sect. He has an agreeable physiognomy. Spectacles always on his eyes; but little hair, — a fur cap is always on his head. He wears no powder . . .; linen very white, a brown coat make his dress.

One of the most famous Frenchwomen of that time thus describes his reception, after he became our full minister to France:

Elegant fêtes were given to Dr. Franklin, who united the renown



(After a French Portrait.)

of one of the most skilful naturalists, with the patriotic virtues which had made him embrace the noble rôle of Apostle of Liberty. I was present at one of these fêtes, where the most beautiful of three hundred women was designated to go and place on the philosopher's white locks a crown of laurel, and to give the old man two kisses on his cheeks 166

In calling Franklin one of the "most skilful naturalists," this lady refers to the fact that Dr. Franklin was famous throughout Europe for his studies and discov-

eries in electricity, and as the inventor of the lightning-rod. His works had already been published in England and France and his picture was in all the shops.

The French Alliance.—Though Franklin was very popular in France, the French king was very slow to make an alliance with the Americans; but in early December of 1777, a carriage dashed into the courtyard of the house where Franklin and the American commissioners to the court of France were staying; and they all hastened down to know what news it was that came in such haste; "Sir, is Philadelphia taken?" cried Dr. Franklin. "It is, sir," replied the messenger, and the old man turned sadly away. "But, sir," continued the messenger, "I

have greater news than that. General Burgoyne and his whole army are prisoners of war!" 167 A few days after this, the French king determined to acknowledge the independence of America, and make a treaty of alliance with us. The treaty was made in the beginning of 1778, and the French king began to send us troops, money, and men.

Lafayette and Other Foreign Helpers. - Many Frenchmen had already volunteered their services to Washington, but the

most famous of them all was the young Marquis de Lafayette; on hearing of the retreat through the Jerseys, he said to Franklin:

My zeal and love for liberty have perhaps been hitherto the prevailing motives; but now I see a chance for usefulness, which I had not anticipated. I have money; I will purchase a ship, which shall convey to America myself, [and] my companions. [He landed at Charlestown, whence he wrote to his wife: | Simplicity of manners, kindness, love of country



LAFAYETTE.

and of liberty, and a delightful equality everywhere prevail. The wealthiest man and the poorest one on a level . . . In America, there are no poor, nor even what we call peasantry. Each individual has his own honest property, and the same rights as the most wealthy landed proprietor. 168

Then there was Baron Steuben, a famous German engineer, who managed the defences at Yorktown; Pulaski and Kosciusko, Polish nobles who had suffered much in their attempts to make Poland a free country. Kosciusko managed the defences at Saratoga; Pulaski died fighting for us at Savannah,

English Sympathy. — In England as well as America, there were Whigs and Tories; and during this war the Whigs constantly called Washington's armies "our army," and spoke of our Revolution as "the cause of liberty."

In the early days of the Revolution, the English newspapers contained such items as this:

At a dinner given by the Lord Mayor...at Cheswick, several loyal toasts were drank, among which were the following: "General Putnam and all those American heroes, who, like men, nobly prefer death to slavery and chains."... "Messrs. Hancock and Adams, and all our worthy fellow-subjects in America, who are nobly contending for our rights with their own." 169 (See also pp. 135, 138.)

As for the Irish, Pitt declared "all Ireland is Whig"; Grattan, one of the greatest defenders of Irish liberty, called America "the only hope of Ireland and the only refuge of the liberties of mankind."

STUDY ON 12.

1. What did Franklin stand for to the people of France? 2. In what other way did Franklin do honor to his native land? 3. Why should the news of Burgoyne's surrender make any difference with the king's opinion of making an American alliance? 4. Why should the French king be glad to have the colonies independent of England? 5. Why did Lafayette come to help us? 6. What two things did he especially admire among us? 7. In what ways was America the only refuge of the liberties of mankind? 8. How were we contending for the rights of Englishmen as well as our own? 9. What reason had the Irish had to look to America as a refuge? (See list at close of Group, 1720, 1776.)

Supplementary Reading. — Jane Porter, Thaddeus of Warsaw. [Kosciusko] Campbell's Kosciusko. Passages from Autobiography of Benjamin Franklin, Library American Literature, III. 13, etc.

13. THE REVOLUTION IN THE WEST; BOONE AND CLARK.

Two darling sons, and a brother, have I lost by savage hands, which have also taken from me forty valuable horses, and abundance of cattle. Many dark and sleepless nights have I been a companion for owls, separated from the chearful society of men, scorched by the Summer's sun, and pinched by the Winter's cold, an instrument ordained to settle the wilderness.— Daniel Boone, in Autobiography. 170

The Kentucky Settlers.— As we have seen, Daniel Boone was determined to move into Kentucky, and in April, 1775, he and his family took possession of the fort he and his companions had built at Boonesborough, where, he tells us:

On the fourteenth day of July, 1776, two of Col. Calaway's daughters and one of mine, were taken prisoners.... I immediately pursued the Indians,... and recovered the girls. The same day on which this attempt was made, the Indians... attacked several forts, which were shortly before this time erected, doing a great deal of mischief. This was extremely distressing to the new settlers. The innocent husbandman was shot down, while busily cultivating the soil for his family's supply. Most of the cattle around the stations were destroyed....

On the first day of January, 1778, I went with a party of thirty men to the Blue Licks, . . . to make salt for the different garrisons in the country. [The whole company were taken prisoners by the Indians, and carried off to Old Chillicothe, one of their principal towns.] On the tenth day of March following, I and ten of my men, were taken by forty Indians to Detroit. . . [Here the English offered one hundred pounds for me, which they refused. Escaping, I returned to Boonesborough just in time, for, on the 8th of Aug., 1778,] the Indian army arrived, being four hundred and forty-four in number, . . . and . . . sent a summons to me in his Brittannick Majesty's name, to surrender the fort. . . . I returned

answer, that we were determined to defend our fort while a man was living....

During this dreadful siege, which threatened death in every form, we had two men killed, and four wounded, besides a number of cattle. 171

George Rogers Clark's Illinois Expedition. — Among Boone's friends was a young Kentuckian, by the name of George Rogers Clark, of whom Boone says that he "was ever our ready friend, and merits the love and gratitude of all his countrymen." He was only about twenty-five, but he had spent his whole life on the frontier, and had already been a land-surveyor, and had fought in Indian wars. In 1777, he urged Patrick Henry, then governor of Virginia, to send a company of soldiers out to seize upon the English forts at Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and Vincennes. Patrick Henry and Jefferson at once saw that this was a good plan, and the Virginia government sent Clark to carry it out. The following is taken from Clark's own account of the expedition:

[On taking Kaskaskia,] I sent for all the Principal Men of the Town who came in . . . Cursing their fortune . . .; I told them . . . that if I could have surety of their Zeal and Attachment to the American Cause, they should immediately injoy all the priviledges of our Government. . . .

No sooner had they heard this than joy sparkled in their Eyes and [they] fell into Transports of Joy...; as soon as they were a little moderated they told me... that they should... think themselves the happyest People in the World if they were united with the Americans.... They returned to their families, and in a few minutes the scean of mourning and distress, was turned to an excess of Joy.... Addorning the streets with flowers..., compleating their happiness by singing.... [After taking Cahokia and Vincennes, we turned our attention to the Indians.] It was with

astonishment that [we] viewed the Amazeing number of Savages that soon flocked into the Town... to treat for peace.... [In their speeches they declared] that they were persuaded to War by the English, and made to harbour a wrong oppinion of the Americans, but they now believed them to be Men and Warriers, and could wish to take them by the hand as Brothers.... [In] about five weeks... I had setled a Peace with ten or twelve different Nations.

Meanwhile the British had taken Vincennes again. Clark raised two companies of volunteer Frenchmen to add to his own men, and started out.

We set out on a Forlorn hope indeed; for our whole party... consisted of only a little upwards of two hundred.... Arriveing at the two little Wabachees although three miles asunder they now make but one, the flowed water between them being at Least three feet deep, and in many places four:... This would have been enough to have stoped any set of men that was not in the same temper that we was.

But in three days we contrived to cross, by building a large Canoe, [which was] ferried across the two Channels, the rest of the way we waded; Building scaffolds... to lodge our Baggage on until the Horses Crossed to take them; it Rained nearly a third of our march, but we never halted for it; In the evening of the 17th we [came within nine miles of Vincennes] which stood on the East side of the Wabache and every foot of the way covered with deep water;... and not a mouthful of Provisions;... our suffering for four days in crossing those waters... is too incredible for any Person to believe except those that are as well acquainted with me as You are... But to our inexpressible Joy, in the evening of the 23rd we got safe to Terra firma within half a League of the Fort.

[That night we made our attack.] In a few hours, I found my Prize sure. Certain of taking every Man that I could have wished for, being the whole of those that incited the Indians to War: all my past sufferings vanished: never was a Man more happy. It

wanted no encouragement from any Officer to inflame our Troops with a Martial Spirit. The . . . thoughts of their massacred friends was Sufficient.¹⁷²

From this time on the British never came south of Detroit, and the Indians were far more peaceful than before.

STUDY ON 13.

1. Why should Kentucky have been called the dark and bloody ground? 2. Give all the proofs you can that the Indians were set on by the British to attack the American settlements. 3. In what other part of the Revolution have we seen the British employing Indians? 4. Why was it meaner for the British to sell scalping-knives to the Indians to use on the Americans than to come and fight us themselves? 5. Why should the English offer so much money for Boone? 6. How did it happen that the people in Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and Vincennes were French? 7. Under whose rule were they before Clark came? 8. Why should they be so easily persuaded to join Clark against the English? 9. What sort of temper does Clark mean when he says This would have stoped any set of men that was not in the same temper that we was? 10. How did they show this temper? 11. What had put them in this temper? 12. What do we know of Clark's education? 13. How had he been fitted for his work in the Revolution? 14. What states now occupied did he win away from the British? 15. Who might claim it, now that he had won it? 16. Who were the heroes of the West, and why do we call them heroes?

Supplementary Reading. — Daniel Boone's Autobiography. Joseph Doddridge, The Settlement and Indian Wars of the Western Parts of Virginia and Pennsylvania, 1763–1783. Albany, 1876. George Rogers Clark, Campaign in the Illinois. Cincinnati, 1869. The Capture of Vincennes, in John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. Roosevelt's Winning of the West, chapters on Clark.

14. LAST YEARS OF THE WAR; ARNOLD; THE HEROES OF KING'S MOUNTAIN.

We marched to the Cowpens — brave Campbell was there, And Shelby and Cleveland, and Colonel Sevier, Taking the lead of their bold mountaineers, Brave Indian fighters, devoid of all fears.

They were men of renown—like lions so bold. Like lions undaunted, ne'er to be controll'd, They were bent on the game they had in their eye, Determined to take it—to conquer or die.

- Old Carolina Ballad, 173

Arnold's Treason. — One of the saddest events in the latter part of the war was the treason of Benedict Arnold. From the beginning of the Revolution, he had been in trouble with Congress. When, in 1777, five new Major-Generals were appointed, he was neglected; and Washington wrote to Congress:

Surely a more active, a more spirited and sensible officer, fills no department in your army...it is not to be presumed,... that he will continue in service under such a slight.¹⁷⁴

After some delay, this wrong was righted; but in spite of his gallantry at Saratoga, General Gates said nothing of his services when he reported the battle to Congress. When he had somewhat recovered from his wound, he was given command in Philadelphia. Here he married the daughter of a leading Tory, lived in great style, and became involved in heavy debts. He was thought to have misused public money, and Washington had to reprimand him.

Nevertheless, at his request, Washington gave him the command of West Point. The British were anxious to get posses-

sion of this post, and Arnold offered to betray it to them for £6315 and a generalship in the British army.

André, a young British officer, was sent to make the arrangements. On his way back to New York, he was seized and afterwards hanged. Arnold escaped to a British man-of-war and was made a British general. Hardly had he left West Point before Washington arrived, and shortly knew all.

Hamilton brought him the despatch, just before dinner, and Washington communicated its contents to General Knox, alone; saying, "Whom can we trust now?"

When Washington sat down to dinner, no unusual emotion was visible on his countenance. He was grave and silent, but not more so than often happened when recent tidings from the army occupied his thoughts. At the close of the meal he beckoned Lafayette to follow him, passed to an inner apartment, turned to his young friend without uttering a syllable, placed the fatal despatch in his hands, and then, giving way to an ungovernable burst of feeling, fell on his neck and sobbed aloud. . . . "I believe," said Lafayette in relating this anecdote, "that this was the only occasion throughout that long and sometimes hopeless struggle that Washington ever gave way, even for a moment, under a reverse of fortune; and perhaps I am the only human being who ever witnessed in him an exhibition of feeling so foreign to his temperament. As it was, he [soon] recovered himself, and when we returned to his staff, not a trace remained . . . either of grief or despondency. 175

Arnold received his reward, and afterwards fought against his country. A traveller who met him in England wrote:

The innkeeper informed me that one of his lodgers was an American General... I ventured to request from him some letters of introduction to his friends in America. "No," he replied, and, after a few minutes of silence, noticing my surprise, he added, "I am perhaps the only American who cannot give you letters for his own

country, all my relations I had there are now broken,—I must never return to the states." He dared not tell me his name; it was General Arnold! I must confess that he excited my pity... for I was a witness of his agony. 176

The Fight at King's Mountain. — By midsummer of 1780, the British had gained control of Georgia and South Carolina. But they had no peace in their possession; for Marion, the "Swamp Fox," and Sumter with his men, kept up a constant Indian warfare from the swamps, the woods, and mountains; but the most famous and positive success of the Americans was at King's Mountain. The following account of this sharp fight was gathered from the conversations and letters of those who were engaged in it:

Iu September, 1780, Maj. Ferguson, who was one of the best and most enterprising of the British officers in America, had succeeded in raising a large body of Tories, who, with his own corps of regulars, constituted a . . . force of eleven hundred and twenty-five men. . . . Ferguson had marched near the Blue Ridge, and [thence sent word to Colonel Shelby, a Carolina pioneer, that unless he surrender] he would come over the mountains, and put him to death, and burn his whole county.

It required no further taunt to rouse the patriotic indignation of Col. Shelby.... [He, with John Sevier and others, resolved to] raise all the force they could, and attack Ferguson;... their united forces numbered about one thousand riflemen.

[The march at the last was through a pouring rain, so that] the men could only keep their guns dry by wrapping their bags, blankets, and hunting shirts around the locks. [Ferguson, meanwhile, had posted himself on King's Mountain.] The summit was bare, while the sides of the mountains were covered with trees. Ferguson's men were drawn up in close column on the summit . . .

[Just as the fight began, one of their colonels thus addressed the Southern patriots:] "You are not to wait for the word of com-

mand.... I will show you, by my example, how to fight; I can undertake no more. Every man must consider himself an officer, and act from his own judgment. Fire as quick as you can, and stand your ground as long as you can."

The mountain was high, and exceedingly steep.... In most places we could not see them till we were within twenty yards of them. They repelled us three times with charged bayonets; but being determined to conquer or die, we came up a fourth time, and fairly got possession of the top of the eminence.

The slaughter of the enemy was great...still Ferguson's proud heart could not think of surrender. He swore he would never yield to such... banditti, and rushed out from his men, sword in hand, and cut away until he broke his sword, and was shot down. His men, seeing their leader fall, immediately surrendered.... The battle lasted one hour.¹⁷⁷

Colonel Shelby afterwards became the first governor of Kentucky; John Sevier was the first governor of Tennessee.

FIRST STUDY ON 14 AND LIST OF REVOLUTIONARY EVENTS.

1. Make a list of the services which Arnold had rendered his country before his treason. (See List of Revolutionary Events.) 2. What were his good qualities as an officer? 3. What was there suspicious about him before his treason? 4. What may have tempted him to commit this act of treason? 5. It may be held that Arnold had really changed his opinion about the Revolution and have become a Tory before 1780; if this were so, ought we still to call him traitor? 6. How could he have acted so as to avoid this name, if he had really turned Tory? 7. Mark with red the British victories from the time of Burgoyne's surrender until Arnold's treason. 8. Mark with blue the American victories. 9. What parts of the country were seats of war? 10. Where did the Americans gain victories that you could not indicate on the map?

SECOND STUDY ON 14 AND REVOLUTIONARY LIST OF EVENTS.

1. Mark on your outline map with red the British victories from the beginning of 1780 to September 1, 1781. 2. Mark with blue the Ameri-

can victories. 3. What part of the country was the seat of the war during its last years? 4. Who was the leading general on the British side? 5. Who were the leading generals on the American side? 6. Under whose orders were the men of King's Mountain acting? 7. What determined their action after they were in the fight? 8. Why should Ferguson consider King's Mountain a strong post? 9. What defence did the attacking party have? 10. What proof that the defence at King's Mountain was as brave as its taking? 11. Where had those who took King's Mountain learned to fight?

Supplementary Reading. — Simms' Life of Francis Marion. New York, 1844. Bryant's Song of Marion's Men. Morgan, in John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. New York, 1879. Theodore Roosevelt's Chapter on King's Mountain in Winning of the West. Simms' The Partisan.

15. YORKTOWN AND PEACE.

Greene in the South then danced a set, And got a mighty name, sir, Cornwallis jigged with young Fayette, But suffered in his fame, sir. . .

Yet are red heels and long-laced skirts
For stumps and briars meet, sir?
Or stand they chance with hunting-shirts,
Or hardy veteran feet, sir.

- Revolutionary Ballad. 178

Cornwallis after Greene. — After King's Mountain, the tide turned for the Americans; from their strongholds of swamp and wood, Marion, the "Swamp Fox," and Sumter, harried and worried the British, and Greene was sent to take command of the Southern forces, instead of Gates. For nearly a year, Cornwallis tried to bring Greene to an open fight, in which Cornwallis had good hope of beating, since he had many more and much better-trained men than Greene. He wrote to the

British Minister of War: "I hoped by rapid marches to get between General Greene and Virginia, and by that means force him to fight without receiving any reinforcement from that province." But, as a ballad of the time expressed it:

> Cornwallis led a country dance -The like was never seen, sir, Much retrograde and much advance, And all with General Greene, sir.179

Cornwallis had to give it up at last, and moved up into Virginia, where he fortified himself at Yorktown, and wrote for



the British fleet to come to his assistance, while he left Greene in possession of South Carolina and Georgia, with the exception of Savannah and Charleston.

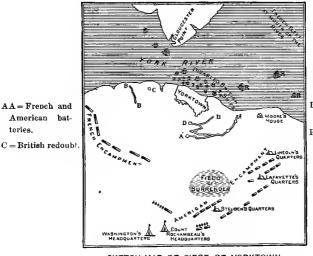
Siege of Yorktown. - On hearing that Cornwallis was at Yorktown, Washington massed all his forces against him. He himself came down from the North; the French fleet came to guard the mouths of the Chesapeake; Lafay-

ette was already on the ground. From the sixth of September to the nineteenth of October, the French and Americans rained shot and shell on Yorktown. One who was there writes:

Oct. 17th. — The whole peninsula trembles under the incessant thunderings of our infernal machines. We have levelled some of their works in ruins and silenced their guns; they have almost ceased firing. We are so near as to have a distinct view of the dreadful havoc and destruction of their works, and even see the men in their lines torn to pieces by the bursting of our shells. But

the scene is drawing to a close. Lord Cornwallis, . . . finding it in vain any longer to resist, has this forenoon [sent out a flag of surrender.]...

19th. — This is to us a most glorious day, but to the English, one of bitter chagrin and disappointment. Preparations are now making to receive as captives, that . . . haughty commander, and that victorious army, who by their robberies and murders have so long



AA = French and American bat-

teries.

BB = French batteries.

RRR = Frenchships.

SKETCH-MAP OF SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

been a scourge to our brethren of the southern states. . . . At about twelve o'clock, the combined army was . . . drawn up in two lines extending more than a mile in length. The Americans were drawn up in a line on the right side of the road, and the French occupied the left. At the head of the former the great American commander, mounted on his noble courser, took his station. . . . At the head of the latter was posted the excellent Count Rochambeau.... The French troops, in complete uniform, displayed a martial and noble appearance.... The Americans, though not all in uniform, nor their dress so neat, yet exhibited an erect soldierly air, and every countenance beamed with satisfaction and joy.... It was about two o'clock when the captive army advanced through the line... in a slow and solemn step, with shouldered arms, colors cased and drums beating a British march ["The world turned upside down"].

22d.—...I have this day visited the town of York, to witness the destructive effects of the siege. It contains about sixty houses, many of them are elegant, many of them are greatly damaged and some totally ruined, being shot through in a thousand places.... Rich furniture and books were scattered over the ground, and the carcases of men and horses half covered with earth, exhibited a scene of ruin and horror beyond description.... The whole number surrendered [is]... seven thousand two hundred and forty-seven. The amount of artillery and military stores, provisions, &c., is very considerable, seventy-five brass and one hundred and sixty-nine iron cannon, seven thousand seven hundred and ninety-four muskets; regimental standards [flags], German, eighteen; British, ten. From the military chest we received two thousand one hundred and thirteen pounds, six shillings sterling. 180

The End of the War. — With the surrender of Cornwallis, the Revolution practically ended, but it was still two years before peace was made. Meanwhile, Washington's greatest trouble was in getting money to pay the soldiers. In 1781, Congress asked the states for money, but they were very slow to pay it, and sometimes refused outright, saying that Congress had no more right to tax them than the king of England had. Meanwhile, the army was starving and freezing. The discontent of the soldiers was expressed in the following letter, circulated among them:

My friends! after seven long years your suffering courage has conducted the United States of America through a doubtful and

bloody war; and peace returns to bless — whom? A country willing to redress your wrongs, cherish your worth, and reward your services? Or is it rather a country that tramples upon your rights, disdains your cries, and insults your distresses?... Appeal from the justice to the fears of government; and suspect the man who would advise to longer forbearance.¹⁸⁷

The effect of this letter and of their own sufferings was such that the soldiers were quite ready to revolt against Congress. But Washington addressed them with such simple eloquence that instead of revolting, they passed a motion to place "unshaken confidence in the justice of Congress."

In September of 1783, peace was signed between England, the United States, France, and Spain. The United States was recognized as an independent nation, with boundaries westward to the Mississippi, and southward to Florida, with a northern boundary nearly as at present. The people of the states were to have the right to fish on the Banks of Newfoundland, and in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and the right to cure fish on the unsettled parts of the Canadian coast. The navigation of the Mississippi was to be free both to the people of the United States and England. Great Britain ceded Florida back to Spain.

FIRST STUDY ON 15.

1. Mark in red the British victories from King's Mountain to Yorktown; in blue, American ones. (See list of events.) 2. What was the seat of the war during this time? 3. What did the British win by their victories? 4. Why was Greene's retreat a real victory for him? 5. Mark the map on p. 188 in red, green, and blue to show the different parties. 6. How is a siege different from a fight or a battle?

SECOND STUDY ON 15.

1. At the time of Cornwallis' surrender, what parts of the thirteen states were still held by the British? (See list.) 2. When have we seen Wash-

ington suffering for lack of money before? 3. Who was to blame for his troubles? 4. Why had Congress any better right to tax the states than George III.? 5. What danger was threatened in the letter which was circulated among the soldiers? 6. What are some of the horrors of war? 7. Mark on your outline map for the Revolution the boundary of the United States at its close.

Supplementary Reading.—Cornwallis and the boy Lafayette and the Surrender at Yorktown, in John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. New York, 1879. The Dance, Library American Literature, III. 356.

16. LIST OF IMPORTANT EVENTS OF THE REVO-LUTIONARY PERIOD, 1763-1783.

A. 1763-1776. — George III., king of England, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales, and the English Colonies in America; Louis XV., king in France.

1765. — March 22, Stamp Act passed. (See p. 135.) — Oct., Stamp Act Congress meets at New York City.

1766. — March 18, Stamp Act repealed. (See p. 138.)

1767. — June, tax on tea, etc., passed. (See p. 140.)

1768. - Sept., British troops arrive in Boston.

1769. — Daniel Boone explores Kentucky. (See p. 116.)

By order of the Spanish king, San Diego and Monterey on the California coast are founded as mission-posts, defended by soldiers. A party of Spanish explorers enter San Francisco Bay.

1770. — March 5, the Boston Massacre. (See p. 141.)

The Tax Act of 1767 repealed, except the tax on tea.

Washington visits the Ohio region to select land for soldiers; families soon begin to enter the Ohio country.

1772.—Thousands of Irish, persecuted in their own country, come to America. Many of them serve in the Revolution.

1773. — Dec., Boston Tea Party. (See p. 143.)

Russians trading for furs in Alaska.

A society formed in Philadelphia for the abolition of slavery, with Benjamin Franklin as president.

1774. — March, Boston Port-Bill passed. (See p. 145.) Sept., FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS meets in Philadelphia. (See p. 147.)

War on the Western Frontier with the Indians, known as *Dunmore's War*. Settlement begins in **Kentucky** at Harrodsburg.

1775.—WAR.—Colonies in rebellion against George III. under the lead of the Continental Congress.—April 19, LEXINGTON AND CONCORD. (See p. 149.) — May 10, Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold take Ticonderoga; the second Continental Congress assembles in June; the colonists begin to send out privateers. — June 17, Battle of BUNKER HILL. (See p. 153.) WASHINGTON chosen commander-in-chief of all the colonial forces. — July, Continental Army formed. (See p. 157.) — Sept., Schuyler and Montgomery move on Canada through New York; Arnold sent through Maine to join them in the capture of Quebec; Arnold encounters terrible sufferings on the way. — Oct., Congress orders a Navy to be started. — Dec., Montgomery and Arnold defeated before Quebec; Montgomery killed.

1776. — George III. hires Hessians from Germany to fight against the colonists. - March 17, British leave Boston, and sail to Halifax. - April 4, Washington leaves Cambridge for New York, which he at once begins to fortify. - May, Congress commends the colonies to form governments of their own. This they do, and one by one become STATES. each with its own legislature and governor or president .- June, British under Clinton driven back from Charleston by South Carolinians under Moultrie. British begin to mass troops near New York. - July 4, DECLARATION OF INDEPEN-**DENCE**. (See p. 159.)

Thomas Paine writes the pamphlet Common Sense, in which he urges the colonists to become quite independent of Great Britain.

B. July 4, 1776 to 1784.— The Continental Congress, and the various state governments ruling in America; George III., king of England, Ireland, Scotland, and Wales; Louis XVI., king of France.

1776.—The fort and mission of San Francisco founded by the Spaniards.—Tucson in Arizona started as a Spanish mission.

New York, Philadelphia, and Boston merchants establish themselves in New Orleans, and begin to send supplies to the Americans at Fort Pitt by fleets of large canoes.

Paul Jones, cruising about on the high seas, captures many British ships. Battle of Long Island; British successful, and Washington retreats from Long Island. The British begin the Siege of New York; British forces, 31,625 men, mostly well-trained soldiers; American forces, 10,514 men, mostly raw militia.—Sept. 15, Americans evacuate New York City.—Oct. 28, battle of White Plains; British successful.—Nov. 16, Fort Washington surrenders to the British.—Nov. and Dec., British go into winter quarters in northern N. J., and Washington begins to retreat through N. J.—Dec. 26, the battle of Trenton; Washington captures 1000 Hessians. (See p. 167.)

1777. - Franklin in Paris. (See p. 174.) - Jan. 2, battle of Princeton; Washington beats three British regiments, and goes into winter quarters among the mountains. - June 14, Stars and Stripes adopted by Congress as our American Flag; during this summer comes Burgoyne's Invasion; Indian raids in Kentucky. - July 23, Howe takes his army by sea to Chesapeake Bay and threatens Philadelphia. - July 6, Ticonderoga abandoned to Burgoyne. - Aug. 2, Herkimer and Arnold, in command of the Americans, beat back the British and the Indians under St. Leger, and the great Mohawk chief, Brant, at Fort Stanwix. - Aug. 10, General Schuyler superseded by General Gates. — Aug. 16, battle of Bennington. (See p. 172.) — Sept. 11, battle of Brandywine; Washington defeated by Howe; Congress leaves Philadelphia for York. - Sept. 19, first battle of Bemis Heights or Saratoga; Burgoyne defeated by Gates and Arnold. — Sept. 25 and 26, British encamp at Germantown, and enter Philadelphia under Cornwallis. - Oct. 4, battle of Germantown; Washington defeated by Howe in a hard-fought battle. Oct. 7, second battle of Bemis Heights or Saratoga; also known as battle of Stillwater; Gates and Arnold defeat Burgoyue. - Oct. 17, BURGOYNE SURRENDERS. (See p. 173.)

Nov. 15, ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION adopted by Congress. (See p. 169.)

December, Washington winters at Valley Forge, and the British in Philadelphia. (See p. 170.) During this year, American ships of war and privateers nearly put an end to British commerce; Paul Jones with the ship Ranger does much damage to commerce on the English coasts.

1778.—Feb. 6, treaty made with France, by which France agrees to help the Americans with money, ships, and men.—May, the Baron Steuben arrives to help us.—June, England tries to make peace with us on condition that she repeals all her oppressive laws. George Rogers Clark in the Illinois country. (See p. 178.)—June 18, the British and 3000 Tories, hearing of the French alliance, leave Philadelphia for New York so as to bring all the British force together before the French arrive; Washington pursues, and fights battle of Monmouth; drawn battle; Washington encamps near Peekskill; Congress returns to Philadelphia.—July and Aug., the British and Indians raiding among the unprotected settlements of the frontier; massacre of Wyoming; Brant, the great Indian leader; French forces arrive in America.—Oct., Illinois became a county of Virginia; Franklin made full minister to France.—Nov., massacre of Americans at Cherry Valley, by Tories and Indians.—Dec., Savannah captured by the British.

1779. — Feb. 25, George Rogers Clark takes Vincennes. (See p. 180.) Spain, in alliance with France, declares war on England. — July, General Sullivan sent to Western New York to punish the Indians for their attacks and massacres. — Sept., French and Spanish creoles capture the British posts along the lower Mississippi. Paul Jones, in command of a fleet of five vessels, fitted out by Franklin, harries the coasts of England and Scotland; captures the British frigate Serapis off Flamborough Head. — Sept. and Oct., General Lincoln and the French try to get Savannah back; fail, and the British are left in possession of Georgia.

Captain Cook explores the north-west coasts of America.

1780. — Feb. to May, the British General Clinton sails against Charleston, and at last forces Lincoln to surrender; this gives the British possession of South Carolina; Cornwallis left in command in the South; Gates sent against him by Congress. — July 10, French army arrives at Newport. — Aug. 16, the Americans, under Gates, defeated by the British at Canden. — Sept., Arnold's Treason at West Point and flight. (See p. 182.) — Oct. 7, the fight at King's Mountain, led by John Sevier and other militia captains. (See p. 184.) — Dec. 2, Greene in command of the Southern army. New York resigns her claims to western lands to the Confederation. Cincinnati founded.

1781. - Part of Washington's troops revolt on account of having no pay

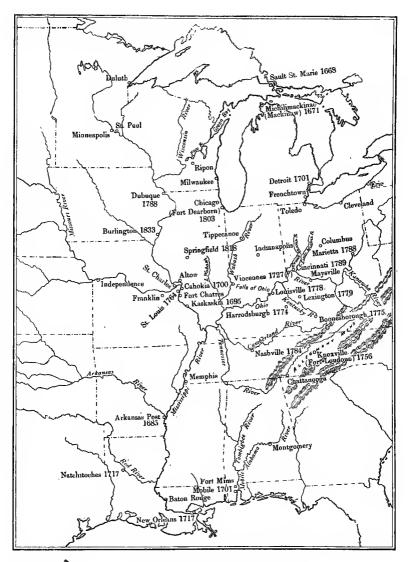
and poor food. Persuaded partly by promises and partly by force they return to their duty. - Jan. 17, battle of Cowpens; the Americans sent out by Greene under the rifleman Morgan beat the British sent out by Cornwallis under Tarleton; Cornwallis begins to pursue the Americans under Greene and Morgan; they retreat through North Carolina into Virginia; Cornwallis, unable to overtake them, turns back to Hillsborough. - March 15, Greene, having turned back into North Carolina, meets Cornwallis at Guilford Court-House, where he comes so near a victory, that Cornwallis retires to Wilmington to get help from his ships. Greene moves down into South Carolina: Cornwallis goes north into Virginia, to fight Steuben and Lafayette, whom Washington has sent to oppose him; fortifies himself at Yorktown. - June-July, the French and American armies watching New York. - Aug., Washington hears that the French fleet is on its way to Chesapeake Bay, and secretly starts for Virginia. - Aug. 30, French fleet arrives in the Chesapeake, and lands more soldiers for Lafayette. - Sept. 8, battle of Eutaw Springs; Greene fights so well, that, though the British win the field, they are compelled to retreat to Charleston. - Sept. 28, siege of Yorktown begins. - OCT. 19, CORNWALLIS SURRENDERS. (See p. 188.)

1782. — Suspension of the war. — July 11, Savannah left by the British. — Dec. 14, Charleston left by the British.

1783. — Thousands of Tories leave the United States for Canada and other English lands. — Sept. 3, PEACE signed by England, France, Spain, and the United States of America at Paris and Versailles. (See p. 189.) — Oct. 20, Virginia gives up her claims to the western lands to Congress.

GENERAL REVIEW STUDY OF GROUP IV.

1. Who governed the Americans during the Revolution? 2. When did the colonies become states? 3. When did they become the United States? 4. To whom did the army, navy, and flag belong? 5. When might peace have been made before it was, and on what terms? 6. Name in order the successive seats of the war during the Revolution. 7. What events should you remember in connection with each of the following dates: 1775, 1776, 1777, 1781, 1783? 8. What would you call the turning-point of the Revolution, and why? 9. What was the result of our activities on the sea? 10. Where had our men been trained for this sort of work? 11. What did the colonies win by the Revolution? 12. Mark in green on Outline Map for the West, the important new Spanish settlements made on our pres-



REFERENCE MAP OF THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY.

ent territory. 13. Those made by the Americans. 14. What parts of the country were the Spanish opening up? 15. The Americans?

Supplementary Reading. — The Yankee Man-of-War (Paul Jones' Ranger), old ballad, in Library American Literature, V. 461. Ethan Allen's Description of the Taking of Ticonderoga, in Library American Literature, III. 252. C. C. Coffin, The Boys of '76. United States Histories, as before. James Fenimore Cooper, The Pilot, and The Spy. J. P. Kennedy, Horse-Shoe Robinson. Theodore Winthrop, Edwin Brothertoft. Hawthorne, Septimius Felton. The Yankee Man-of-War, Library American Literature, V. 461.

GROUP V.

RECORDS OF THE GROWTH OF LAND AND STATE: 1783-1850.

1. THE TROUBLES OF THE CONFEDERATION. 1783-1789.

This is the time of their political probation... For, according to the system of policy the States shall adopt at this moment they will stand or fall; and by their confirmation or lapse it is yet to be decided whether the revolution must ultimately be considered as a blessing or a curse; a blessing or a curse not to the present age alone, for with our fate will the destiny of unborn millions be involved.—Washington, in Circular Letter to the Governors of all the States. 182

The Debts of the Confederation.—After the war, the confederation of the United States was deeply in debt to the soldiers of the Revolution, to France and Holland, to their own merchants who had lent them money. But it began to look as though neither the soldiers, nor the merchants, nor France and Holland, would ever get their pay. A Massachusetts citizen writes in 1784:

Since you are now happily restored to peace and plenty,... methinks...you would never forget the noble...exertions of those who...bravely took the field...; nor would one imagine you could ever deal ungratefully or unjustly with those of your brethren, who... in the day of your distress, delivered up their property to your service... in full confidence that you would perform your solemn promises, made by the mouth of Congress... and repay the sums so lent.... For my own part, I had no doubt of it,... and delivered up a very considerable portion of my substance to your service.... I depended upon it in a good measure for

support, and therefore can by no means consent to lose it. Your creditors... have now waited a long time, to see you perform your promises.... But alas! how are they disappointed and confounded, to find you have not, as yet, made any provision for the payment of these their dues.... Permit me, my countrymen, to tell you that such behaviour is not in favour of your character....

They (the Tories) always said... that ye are not fit to govern, and that if Britain left you to yourselves, anarchy and confusion would ensue. But O...my friends! If you have any spirit... now is the time to show it...! 183

Franklin wrote from France:

When the States have not faith in a Congress of their own choosing to trust it with money for the payment of their common debt, how can they expect that Congress should meet with credit when it wants to borrow more money for their use from strangers.¹⁸⁴

But in spite of all complaints, as late as 1787 James Madison wrote from Virginia:

No money is paid into the treasury; ... not a single state complies with the requisitions—some pass them over in silence, some absolutely reject them. It is quite impossible that a government so weakened can much longer hold together.¹⁸⁵

The Mississippi Question.—In 1786, the Spaniards were anxious to make a treaty with the United States, by which they alone could use the Mississippi, in exchange for allowing American ships to carry goods free of duty into all Spanish ports. The New Englanders wanted this treaty; the men of the South and West did not. Said the New Englanders:

Suppose that a treaty could be formed between the Spaniard and the United States...so that...the citizens of the latter might introduce into the...dominions of the former all sorts of goods [freely;]... suppose farther, that all the masts, spars, timber, &c., &c., wanted for the national marine of Spain, should be purchased and paid for in the United States,... would not such a treaty be of vast importance to the Atlantic States...? 188

But, said the men of the South and West:

[If this treaty is made,] the people at large on the western waters...will consider themselves sold by their Atlantic brethren. From New Orleans to the Falls of the Ohio, [boats,]... carrying about 40 tons, have been rowed by eighteen men in eight or ten weeks, which... will not amount to more than five hundred pounds expense.... Now we know by experience that forty tons of goods

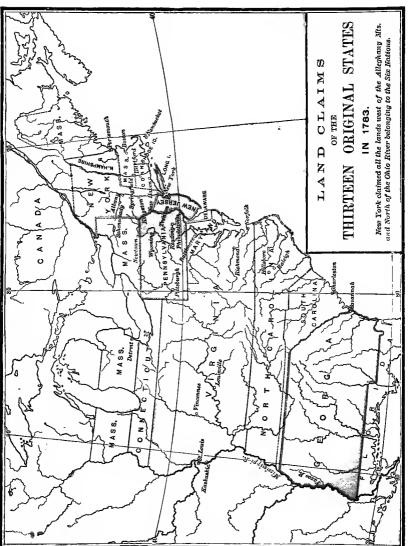
cannot be taken to the Falls of the Ohio from Philadelphia under sixteen hundred pounds expence.... Peltry, and country produce ... never can be conveyed to the eastern ports to any advantage. 188

Opinions of the Confederation. — A very common English view of our government at that time is given in the following extract:

As to the future grandeur of America, and its being a rising empire under one head...it is one of the idlest and most visionary notions that ever was conceived even by writers of romance. The...clashing interests of the Americans, their difference of governments...and manners, indicate that they will have no centre of union...; a disunited people till the end of time, suspicious and distrustful of each other, they will be divided...into little commonwealths...by great bays of the sea, and by vast rivers, lakes and ridges of mountains. 189

The view of many others is expressed by the following passage from a French book published in 1784:

While almost all the nations of Europe . . . regard their citizens as so many beasts on a farm worked entirely in the interest of the proprietor, one is surprised, one is encouraged to see that your thir-



teen republics have recognized the dignity of man.... You have thought only of raising among you a throne of liberty;...you have established as a certain axiom that all political power draws its authority from the people.... May these ideas not be the fruit of a passing dream! 190

STUDY ON I.

1. Why did we have so much trouble about meeting our debts? 2. When had we had similar troubles before? 3. Who was at the head of this government? 4. Why should New England favor the Spanish treaty? 5. Why should the South and West oppose it? 6. Why should the Western people consider themselves sold by their Atlantic brethren if it were passed? 7. Why should it be so much cheaper for the Kentucky and Illinois people to take their goods to New Orleans than to Philadelphia? 8. If the Confederation had divided at that time, what states would have been in each part? 9. Of what advantage was it to keep together? 10. What good reason had the English for their opinion of the weakness of the Confederation? 11. What reasons were there for having a good opinion of our government? 12. What other troubles did the Confederation have? (See list at close of the Group, 1783-1789.)

2. THE NORTH-WEST TERRITORY.

Then let us go where happier climes invite, To midland seas, and regions of delight; With all that's ours, together let us rise, Seek brighter plains, and more indulgent skies; Where fair Ohio rolls his amber tide, And Nature blossoms in her virgin pride

- From a poet of Revolutionary times. 191

The Government of the North-west Territory. — By 1787, the United States had not only themselves to govern, but also all the new lands which had come to them at the close of the Revolution, as well as those which had been given up to them

by Virginia, New York, and the other states. So the Continental Congress made what was called **The Ordinance of '87**, a plan for the government of this North-west Territory. The following are some of the important parts of this famous ordinance:

ARTICLE I. — No person, . . . [acting] in a peaceable and orderly manner, shall ever be molested on account of his mode of worship or religious sentiments, in the said territory.

ARTICLE II. — . . . No man shall be deprived of his liberty or property, but by . . . the law of the land. . . .

ARTICLE III.—... Schools... shall forever be encouraged. The utmost good faith shall always be observed towards the Indians; their lands and property shall never be taken from them without their consent; and... laws founded in justice and humanity, shall, from time to time, be made for preventing wrongs being done to them, and for preserving peace and friendship with them.

ARTICLE IV. — . . . The navigable waters leading into the Mississippi and St. Lawrence . . . shall be common highways, and forever free . . . to the citizens of the United States . . .

ARTICLE V. — . . . And, whenever any of the said States shall have 60,000 free inhabitants therein, such State shall be admitted, by its delegates, into the Congress of the United States, on an equal footing with the original States in all respects whatever, and shall be at liberty to form a permanent constitution and State government: *Provided*, the constitution and government so to be formed, shall be republican, [a government by the people and for the people]....

ARTICLE VI. — There shall be [no]...slavery in the said territory...: *Provided*, always, That any person escaping into the same, from whom labor or service is lawfully claimed in any one of the original States,... may be lawfully reclaimed and conveyed to the person claiming his or her labor.... 192

Life in the North-west Territory. — Immediately after the war, companies of Revolutionary soldiers and others were

formed for settling the lands of the West, especially along the Ohio. One who was a boy among those scenes thus describes the experiences of that new frontier:

Hard as was the fate of the soldier while starving, freezing and fighting for independence, still...he never doubted that his services would be rewarded, and be remembered with gratitude, by his country. But when discharged, he received his pay in Continental money, worth but a few cents on the dollar, and, returning poor to his family, found them as destitute as himself.

... Many... resolved on crossing the mountains, and becoming farmers in the west... My father's family was one of twenty [neighbors] that emigrated... to Western Pennsylvania, in the spring of 1784... Pack horses were the only means for transportation then, and for years after... On one... my mother rode carrying her infant, with all the table-furniture and cooking utensils. On another were packed the... provisions, the plough-irons, and other agricultural tools... Each family was supplied with one or more cows,... an indispensable provision for the journey... In many places the path lay along the edge of a precipice.... The path was crossed by many streams... running with rapid current in deep ravines.... The journey was made in April, when the nights were cold.... After preparing their simple meal, they lay down with scanty covering in a miserable cabin, or... in the open air....

As the company approached the Monongahela, they began to separate. Some settled down near to friends and acquaintances who had preceded them. About half...crossed the Monongahela, and settled...a few miles south of Pittsburgh, in a hilly country, well watered and heavily timbered.... The season was favorable...and by unremitted labor, often continued through a part of the night, the women laboring with their husbands, in burning bush and logs, their planting was seasonably secured. But while families and neighbors were cheering each other on with the prospect of an abundant crop, one of the settlements was attacked by Indians....

This...had not been anticipated. It had been confidently believed that peace with great Britain would secure peace with her Indian allies....

The frontier settlements were kept in continual alarm. Murders were frequent, and many were taken prisoners. These were more generally children, who were taken to Detroit (which in violation of the treaty continued to be occupied by the British) where they were sold.... Block houses were provided in several neighborhoods for the protection of the women and children, while the men carried on their farming operations, some standing guard while the others labored....

Many of the emigrants of 1785 and '86... introduced into the country large stocks of cattle, sheep and hogs, cleared large farms, built grist and saw-mills.... New Orleans furnished a good market for all the flour, bacon and whiskey which the upper country could furnish.... The trade to New Orleans... was attended with great hardship and hazard. The right bank of the Ohio for hundreds of miles was alive with hostile Indians. The voyage was performed in flat-boats, and occupied from four to six months. Several neighbours united... in building the boat.... Each put on board his own produce at his own risk, and one of the owners always accompanied the boat as captain.... They returned either by sea to Baltimore,... within 300 miles of home, or more generally through the wilderness... about 2000 miles. 133

STUDY ON 2 AND THE MAP.

1. Which of our present states were partly included in the claims of Virginia? 2. In the claims of North Carolina? 3. In those of Georgia? 4. To whom did Florida belong? 5. What right had Virginia to the land northwest of the Ohio? 6. Why should the other states be unwilling, as they were, to let Virginia keep all this territory? 7. What lands had the United States that no state laid claim to? 8. Name three sorts of liberty which the Ordinance of 1787 gave to the people of the North-west. 9. What were the troubles of the pioneers in getting to the North-west? 10. What trials had they after getting there? 11. What were their occupations after reaching the country? 12. Of what use was the Mississippi to them? 13. What

new proof of the weakness of the confederacy do you see in this lesson? 14. How had the pioneers been well-fitted to do their work?

Supplementary Reading.—For the whole of the Ordinance of 1787, and for speech of Patrick Henry on the settlement of this territory, see Old South Leaflets.

3. THE MAKING OF THE CONSTITUTION, 1787.

It is too probable that no plan we suggest will be adopted. Perhaps another dreadful conflict is to be sustained. If, to please the people, we offer what we curselves disapprove, how can we afterward defend our work? Let us raise a standard to which the wise and honest can repair; the event is in the hand of God. — Washington, in Speech to the Convention. 194

The Calling of a Convention. — Even before the Revolution was over, there had been some talk of making the union

of the states closer and firmer; and as time went on, men very generally felt that there must be some change. In 1786, the legislature of Virginia, urged on by Madison and others, invited the states to a convention at Annapolis, to consider what should be done; only five states sent delegates, however, and it was decided to try again the next year; and in May, 1787, the Constitutional Convention finally met.

The Opening of the Convention.

— James Madison, who was one of the



MADISON. (After Stuart.)

Virginia delegates, in one of his letters, thus speaks of the arrival at Philadelphia:

We have been here for some time, suffering a daily disappointment from the failure of the deputies to assemble for the con-

vention. Seven states up till the day before yesterday. Our intelligence from New York promises an addition of three more by to-morrow. General Washington was unanimously called to the chair, and has accepted it. It is impossible, as yet, to form a judgment of the result of this experiment. Every reflecting man becomes daily more alarmed at our situation. 195

Delegates from all the states at last arrived, and on May 29 Edmund Randolph of Virginia laid before the convention a plan of government, drawn up by Madison some time before, in which there should be a Congress to discuss and make laws, courts to judge those who were thought to have broken them; and a President to see that they were faithfully executed. The Congress was to be divided into two parts, a Senate and a House of Representatives.

The Debates of the Convention.—Debates upon this plan now began, and lasted until the middle of September. The debates were secret from the public, but Madison kept a daily journal from which we know what was done. The first great question was: Shall each of our thirteen states have one vote in the Congress, or shall each state have votes in proportion to the number of people living in it? In other words, shall our government represent the states or the people? On this question the New Jersey members said:

[By this plan of voting by population, and not by states,] Virginia would have sixteen votes, and Georgia but one.... The large states... will carry everything before them.... What remedy, then? One only: that a map of the United States be spread out, that all the existing boundaries be erased, and that a new partition of the whole be made into thirteen equal parts.... New Jersey will never confederate on the plan before the committee. She would be swallowed up. [Better] submit to a monarch, to a despot, than to such a fate.

One of the Pennsylvania members declared that equal numbers of people ought to have an equal number of representatives.... If the small states will not confederate on this plan, Pennsylvania, and he presumed some other states, would not confederate on any other. We have been told that, each state being sovereign, all are equal.... If New Jersey will not part with her sovereignty, it is vain to talk of government.

So the debate went on until it seemed that the convention would have to give up trying to agree, when Franklin proposed that in the Senate, each state should have an equal number of delegates, while in the House of Representatives, there should be a delegate for every 40,000 people. This plan was finally agreed to.

Meanwhile, another great debate had arisen, as to how slaves should be counted. In any case, they were not to count as citizens or have any vote. But, if they were counted as persons, then, should a state having 40,000 free men and 40,000 slaves have one or two delegates in the House of Representatives?

If negroes are not represented in the states to which they belong, why should they be represented in the general government? [exclaimed one of the delegates.]... If...a meeting of the people was actually to take place, would the slaves vote? They would not. Why then should they be represented?

[Day after day the debate went on. At last a North Carolina man said that] it was high time now to speak out.... He was sure that North Carolina would never confederate on any terms that did not rate them at least as three-fifths. If the Eastern States meant, therefore, to exclude them altogether, the business was at an end.

[Gouverneur Morris of Pennsylvania retorted that] he came here to form a compact for the good of America... But...he verily

believed the people of Pennsylvania [would] never agree to a representation of negroes.

After many days of fierce debate it was at last arranged that a slave should count as three-fifths of a man. This was the second compromise, or bargain, of the Constitution.

Again, many of the members felt that the slave trade should be stopped; said one:

It is inconsistent with the principles of the Revolution, and dishonorable to the American character. [On the other hand, South Carolina members said:] If the Convention thinks that North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia will ever agree to the plan, unless their right to import slaves be untouched, the expectation is vain. The people of those states will never be such fools as to give up so important an interest.

At last they agreed that the trade might go on until 1808, and that after that, no more slaves should be brought from Africa. The Constitution was now ready to sign. The aged Franklin made the last speech of the convention. He said:

I consent, sir, to this Constitution because I expect no better, and because I am not sure that it is not the best. The opinions I have had of its errors I sacrifice to the public good. I have never whispered a syllable of them abroad. Within these walls they were born and here they shall die.

Whilst the last members were signing, Doctor Franklin, looking towards the President's chair, at the back of which a rising sun happened to be painted, observed to a few members near him that painters had found it difficult to distinguish in their art a rising from a setting sun. I have, said he, often and often, in the course of the session, and the vicissitudes of my hopes and fears as to its issue, looked at that behind the President without being able to tell whether it was rising or setting; but now, at length, I have the happiness to know that it is a rising, and not a setting sun. 196

STUDY ON 3.

1. How long did people talk about having a convention before they had one? 2. What hindrances did they meet in having it? 3. Why should Madison be called the Father of the Constitution? 4. Why should New Jersey want the states to have equal votes in the new government? 5. Why should Virginia feel that she ought to have more votes than New Jersey or Delaware? 6. How was the matter compromised? 7. What parties appeared in the convention in regard to slavery? 8. Suppose one state had 360,000 white inhabitants, and another had 120,000 white inhabitants and 133,340 slaves, how many delegates would the first state have in the House of Representatives by the first compromise of the Constitution? 9. How many would the second have? 10. How would their delegates compare in the Senate? 11. Who in the convention showed a strong spirit of compromise? 12. What might have happened if these compromises had not been made? 13. In the last two compromises, what did the North give up? 14. What did she get? 15. What did the South give up? 16. What did she get? 17. What did the whole country gain by these compromises? 18. Which states were free and which were slave at the time of the signing of the Constitution? (See list at close of group.) [This may be used as two studies at discretion.]

Supplementary Reading. — Last day of Constitutional Convention, from Madison's Journal, in Old South Leaflets.

4. THE NEW CONSTITUTION.

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America. — Preamble of Constitution.

Parts and Powers of the Government.—What the government was to be according to this new Constitution made by the Philadelphia Convention, may be seen from the following extracts from its Articles:

ARTICLE I. — All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States....

No person shall be a Representative who shall not have... been seven years a citizen of the United States....

Representatives... shall be apportioned among the several States ... according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons... three-fifths of all other persons....

The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years....

No person shall be a Senator, who shall have not... been nine years a citizen of the United States....

The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes [and] duties . . . ;

To borrow money . . . ;

To regulate commerce . . . ;

To coin money . . . ;

To establish post-offices and post-roads;

To declare war . . . ;

To raise and support armies . . . ;

To provide and maintain a navy; ... and

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers. . . .

No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; ... coin money; ... or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of Congress... keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, ... or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.—The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years...,

Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

The President shall be Commander-in-chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, . . . and

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties. . . .

... He shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed....

ARTICLE III. — The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior. . . .

ARTICLE VI. — This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land. . . .

The Federalists and Anti-Federalists.—As soon as the Constitution was published, people began to take sides in regard to it. Those who were for it were called Federalists, those against it were Anti-Federalists, and these were our first Political Parties. Among the former were Washington and Hamilton, and among the latter were Jefferson and Patrick Henry. Said Washington:

It is only in our united character, as an empire, that our independence is acknowledged, that our power can be regarded, or our credit supported, among foreign nations. ¹⁹⁷

Said Hamilton:

Every Congress, as well as the late convention, have invariably joined with the people in thinking that the prosperity of America

depended on its Union.



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.
(After Stuart)

.. I am persuaded in my own mind that the people have always thought right, ... and that... whenever the dissolution of the Union arrives, America will have reason to exclaim, in the words of the poet: "Farewell! a long farewell to all my greatness!" 198

Said Jefferson:

How do you like our new constitution? I confess there are things in it which stagger [me]....

Their President seems a bad edition of a Polish King. He may be elected from four years to four years, for life.... Once in office, and possessing the military force

of the Union...he would not be easily dethroned.199

Said Patrick Henry:

If we admit this consolidated government, it will be because we like a great and splendid one.... We must have an army and navy, and a number of things. When the American spirit was in its youth, the language of America was different: liberty, sir, was then the primary object....

Suppose the people of Virginia should wish to alter their government, can a majority of them do it? No, because they are connected with other men;...consolidated with other states.... The power of changing it is gone from you....

Your president may easily become king.... Can he not, at the head of his army, easily beat down every opposition?... What then will become of you and your rights?...²⁰⁰

The contest was hot between these two parties, and it was June, 1788, before the Constitution was finally adopted by the states; preparations at once began for electing a President, a Senate, and a House of Representatives.

STUDY ON 4.

1. Who or what represents the legislative power in our Constitution?
2. Who the executive power? 3. Who or what the judicial power?
4. What is the business of the executive power? 5. What is the business of the Congress? 6. Why does the Constitution require the President and the members of Congress to be citizens and residents of the United States?
7. Why are not the separate states allowed to make treaties or make war by themselves? 8. What part of the government according to the Constitution did the Confederation not have? 9. If the people do not obey the laws, how can the President compel them to obey? 10. If the President or the Congress displease the people, what can the people do about it?
11. Why did the Federalists want the Constitution? 12. Why were the Anti-Federalists afraid of it?

Supplementary Reading.—For whole text of Constitution, see Old South Leaflets; see same for numbers of Hamilton's *Federalist*, and for whole of Patrick Henry's speech against the Constitution.

5. OUR FIRST PRESIDENT, 1789-1797.

--059500-

I glory in the character of a Washington, because . . . I know that the general character of the natives of the United States is the same with his . . . and I know there are thousands of others who have in them all the essential qualities, moral and intellectual, which compose it. — John Adams. 201

The First Inauguration.—But one man could be our first President. Unanimously elected by Federalists and Anti-Federalists, Washington was inaugurated as our first President at Federal Hall, in Wall Street, New York City, on the 30th of April, 1789. His private secretary thus describes the ceremony:

About two hundred yards before we reached the hall we descended from our carriages, and passed through the troops, who were drawn up on each side, into the hall and senate chamber, where we found the vice-president, the senate, and the house of representatives assembled. They received the president in the most respectful manner, and the vice-president [John Adams] conducted him to a



FEDERAL HALL IN 1789. (From Old Prints.)

spacious and elevated seat at the head of the room. A solemn silence prevailed. The vice-president soon arose and informed the president that all things were prepared to administer the oath. ... He immediately descended from his seat, and advanced through the middle door of the hall to the balcony. The oath was administered in

public by Chancellor Livingston, and at the moment the chancellor proclaimed him president of the United States the air was rent by repeated shouts and huzzas—"God bless our Washington! Long live our beloved Washington!" We again returned into the hall, where, being seated as before for a few minutes, the president arose and addressed the two branches of the congress in a speech which was heard with eager and marked attention.²⁰²

The French minister present, reporting to his government on the scene, writes:

Tears of joy were seen to flow in the hall of the senate, at church, and even in the streets, and no sovereign ever reigned more completely in the hearts of his subjects than Washington in the hearts of his fellow-citizens. Nature, which had given him the talent to govern, distinguished him from all others by his appearance. He had at once the soul, the look and the figure of a hero.²⁰³

The New Government. — Washington soon called to help him, Thomas Jefferson of Virginia as Secretary of State, Alexander Hamilton of New York as Secretary of the Treasury, Henry Knox of Massachusetts as Secretary of War, and Edmund Randolph of Virginia as Attorney-General. That is, Jefferson was to look more particularly after our foreign affairs, Hamilton after money matters, Knox after the army and navy, and Randolph to see that justice was administered. These secretaries whom Washington asked to help him formed the first Cabinet. The new government according to the Constitution was now all ready to work, and it has gone on working ever since.

Our money matters at first gave us much trouble to settle, but Alexander Hamilton managed them so well that all the world began to trust and respect us. For one thing, it was decided that the United States should pay every dollar that it owed in good money. Many other things needed straightening too; but Washington and his advisers were at the head of the government for eight years, and by the end of that time our affairs were running smoothly.

Washington's Opinions.—His opinions on religious toleration may be seen from the following reply to an address from the Catholics of Maryland:

All those who conduct themselves as worthy members of the community are equally entitled to the protection of the civil government... And I presume that your fellow citizens will not forget the patriotic part which you took in their revolution... or the important assistance which they received from a nation in which the roman catholic faith is professed [France]. 204

His opinions on slavery are very clearly expressed in the following letter:

I never mean, unless some particular circumstances should compel me to it, to possess another slave by purchase, it being among my first wishes to see some plan adopted, by which slavery in this country may be abolished by law.

In Philadelphia there was a society of Friends, who were trying to free the slaves by helping them to run away from their masters; of their attempts Washington wrote:

There is only one proper... mode by which [the abolition of slavery]... can be accomplished, and that is by legislative authority; and this, so far as my suffrage [vote] will go, will never be wanting. But when slaves, who are happy and contented with their present masters, are tampered with and induced to leave them; when masters are taken unawares by these practices;... it is oppression in such a case.²⁰⁵

When Washington retired from office, he wrote what is known as his *Farewell Address*, and in this he expresses his most solemn advice to the American people. From this address, we take the following passages:

Interwoven as is the love of liberty with every ligament of your hearts, no recommendation of mine is necessary to fortify or confirm the attachment.

The unity of Government, which constitutes you one people, is also now dear to you. It is justly so: for it is a main pillar in the edifice of your real independence; of your safety; of your prosperity; of that very Liberty, which you so highly prize....

Citizens, by birth or choice, of a common country, that country has a right to concentrate your affections. The name of American must always exalt the just pride of Patriotism.... With slight shades of difference, you have the same religion, manners, habits, and political principles. You have in a common cause fought and triumphed together; the Independence and Liberty you possess are the work of joint counsels, and joint efforts, of common dangers, sufferings, and successes....

Religion and Morality are the... great pillars of human happiness, the... firmest props of the duties of Men and Citizens. The mere Politician, equally with the pious man, ought to respect and to cherish them....

Observe good faith and justice towards all Nations; cultivate peace and harmony with all. . . . 206

STUDY ON 5.

1. What parts of the government were present at the inauguration ceremony? 2. Make a list of the important events in the life of Washington. (See index.) 3. What made Washington so well fitted to be our first President? 4. Why should he receive a more unanimous vote than Jefferson? 5. What difference did he think a man's belief ought to make with his right to the protection of the government? 6. What did he think about slavery? 7. How did he think we ought to get rid of it? 8. What did Washington think we ought to care for, if we wanted to remain a strong people? 9. What does he say that we Americans had in common to make us love our country and each other? 10. Why is Washington called the Father of his Country?

Supplementary Reading. — Washington Irving's Life of Washington. For whole of Farewell Address, see Old South Leaflets. President Washington's Receptions, by William Sullivan, in The Public Men of the Revolution, or in Library of American Literature, IV. 346. Mason L. Weems' Anecdotes of Washington, in Library American Literature, IV. 25, or in Weems' Washington.

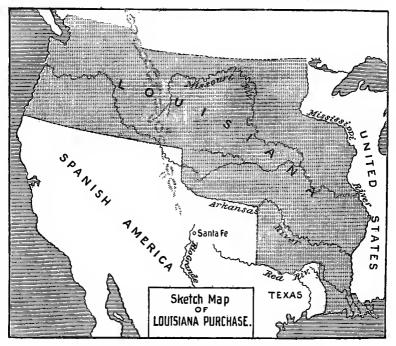
6. THE LOUISIANA PURCHASE (1803; UNDER JEFFERSON'S PRESIDENCY).

~~ം;പ്രാം~

We have lived long, but this is the noblest work of our whole lives. The treaty which we have just signed . . . will change vast solitudes into flourishing districts. From this day the United States take their place among the powers of the first rank. — LIVINGSTON, to Marbois, on signing the treaty.²⁰⁷

The Reasons for the Purchase. — After John Adams, who was our next President after Washington, there were no more

Presidents of the Federal party; in 1800, with Jefferson, the Anti-Federalists came into power. The most important act of Jefferson's administration was the buying of Louisiana. During the wars of Napoleon, Louisiana had come into the possession of France once more; and Napoleon, being badly in want of



SKETCH MAP OF LOUISIANA PURCHASE. (After Marbois.)

money, was persuaded to sell it to the United States for \$15,000,000. The reasons for making this purchase are thus shortly stated by Jefferson:

There is on the globe one single spot the possessor of which is our natural and habitual enemy. It is New Orleans, through which the produce of three-eighths of our territory must pass to market; and from its fertility, it will ere long yield more than half of our whole produce, and contain more than half of our inhabitants.²⁰⁸

Napoleon, too, had another reason for being willing to sell Louisiana besides the want of money; as he said:

This... territory strengthens forever the power of the United States; and I have just given to England a maritime rival that will, sooner or later, humble her pride.²⁰⁹

Lewis and Clarke's Expedition. — Almost at once, Jefferson sent out an expedition to explore this new purchase, and to find a way to the Pacific along the Columbia River. This expedition, starting from St. Louis, was headed by Captain Lewis and Captain Clarke; from its journals we take the following extracts:

The party consisted of nine young men from Kentucky, fourteen soldiers, . . . two French watermen an interpreter and hunter. . . . The necessary stores . . . consisted of a great variety of clothing, working utensils, . . . indian presents . . . composed of richly laced coats . . . knives and tomahawks . . . beads, looking-glasses, handkerchiefs, paints . . . The party was to embark on . . . three boats; . . . all the preparations being completed, we left our encampment . . . May 14th, 1804 . . . [The first summer was spent in reaching Council Bluff.]

- Nov. 1. Mr. M'Cracken, the trader whom we found here, set out today on his return to the British fort and factory [of the Hudson Bay Company, about one hundred and fifty miles northward] from this place. . . .
- Nov. 2.—... Captain Clarke... having found a good position where there was plenty of timber, encamped and began to fell trees to build our huts [for winter-quarters].
 - Dec. 1. . . . In the evening we were visited by a Mr. Hender-

son, who came from the Hudson Bay Company to trade [with the Indians].

Dec. 10. — Capt. Clarke, who had gone out yesterday . . . to continue the hunt, came in today at twelve o'clock. After killing nine buffaloe and preparing that already dead, he had spent a cold, disagreeable night on the snow, with no covering but a small blanket, sheltered by the hides of the buffaloe they had killed. . . .

April 7, 1805. — Leave winter-quarters.

April 26. — We... encamped... at the junction of the Missouri and Yellowstone Rivers.... [From bluffs near by,] the wide plains, watered by the Missouri and the Yellowstone, spread themselves before the eye, occasionally varied with the wood of the banks, enlivened by the irregular windings of the two rivers, and animated by vast herds of buffaloe, deer, elk, and antelope.... This river, which had been known to the French as the... Yellowstone, rises according to Indian information in the Rocky Mountains....

June 3. - We . . . fixed our camp in the point [formed by the union of the Missouri and another large river]. It now became an interesting question which of these two streams is the . . . Missouri [which the Indians say approaches very near the Columbia]. our right decision much of the fate of the expedition depends; since if ... we should find that the river we were following did not come near the Columbia, . . . we should . . . probably dishearten the men so much as to induce them either to abandon the enterprise, or yield us a cold obedience instead of the warm . . . support they had hitherto afforded us. We determined, therefore, to examine well before we decided [and sent out exploring parties in several directions]. While they were gone, we ascended together the high grounds in the fork of these two rivers, whence we had a very extensive prospect of the surrounding country. On every side it was spread into one vast plain covered with verdure, in which innumerable herds of buffaloe were roaming, attended by their enemies the wolves.... To the south was a range of lofty mountains, ... partially covered with snow; but at a great distance behind them was

a more lofty ridge completely covered with snow, ... reaching from west to ... northwest, where their snow tops were blended with the horizon....

August 12. — [Captain Lewis, with a few companions, was now sent ahead to find some Indians, who might furnish us with horses; for we could no longer use our boats on the narrowing and impetuous current of the Missouri. As they went along their hopes of soon seeing the . . . Columbia, arose almost to a painful anxiety, when after four miles from the last abrupt turn of the river, they reached a small gap formed by the high mountains which recede on each side, leaving room for the Indian road. From the foot of one of the lowest of these mountains, . . . issues the remotest water of the Missouri. They had now reached the hidden sources of that river, which had never yet been seen by civilized man; and as they sat down by the brink of that little rivulet, . . . they felt themselves rewarded for all their labors. . . . Pursuing the Indian road through the...hills, [they] arrived at the top of a ridge,...which... formed the dividing line between the waters of the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. They followed a descent much steeper than that on the eastern side, and at the distance of three quarters of a mile reached a handsome bold creek of cold clear water running to the westward. They stopped to taste for the first time the waters of the Columbia. Following the Lewis and Columbia, they reached the Pacific.] 210

STUDY ON 6.

1. Which of our present states were included in the Louisiana purchase?
2. Why should we Americans need the mouth of the Mississippi? 3. Why would it be easier for us to keep Louisiana than for the French to do it?
4. What other reason had Napoleon for selling Louisiana besides the lack of money? 5. Trace on Ontline Map for this period the course of Lewis and Clarke. 6. Who had visited the Yellowstone before? 7. Why would Kentuckians be particularly useful on such an expedition? 8. French watermen? 9. Why did they need an interpreter? 10. A hunter? 11. What other people were in this region, besides Indians and French? 12. What were they doing there? 13. How did Lewis and Clarke find their way?

14. Give a short history of Louisiaua up to the time of this purchase. (See index.)

Supplementary Reading. — Catlin's North American Indians.

7. TRADE AND LIFE IN THE THIRTEEN ORIGINAL STATES.

WASHINGTON, ADAMS, JEFFERSON, AND MADISON.

The sons of New England... go forth to seek their fortunes in the mighty deep. The ocean is their pasture, and over its wide prairies they follow the monstrous herds that feed upon its azure fields. As the hunter casts his lasso upon the wild horse, so they throw their lines upon the tumbling whale. They ... fear not to be "the first that ever burst" into unknown seas.—Prentiss, in address before New England Society of New Orleans.²¹¹



OLD STAGE-COACH OF EARLY PART OF CENTURY. (From Weld's "Travels.")

Two Old Advertisements.—Some modes of travel during these early days may be seen from the following newspaper notices:

READING MAIL STAGE. — Will start from George Brenizer's tavern in Harrisburgh every Tuesday morning, lodge at Lebanon, and next day arrive at Mrs. Wood's, Reading. The next day passengers can proceed to Philadelphia, and arrive there the same evening in the Philadelphia mail stage. . . . [Nov. 22, 1806.] ²¹²

For LIVERPOOL, and back to BOSTON early in the spring. The ship FAVOURITE, Daniel Reed, master, will positively sail on the 10th of December. Would touch at any port in St. George's Channel, where a certain quantity of Freight should offer. For Freight or Passage, . . . please apply to the Master on board, or at STORE, No. 11, Long-Wharf. . . . Boston, Oct. 28, 1789. 213

Jefferson's Journey from Richmond to New York. — Jefferson wrote of this journey, which was made in 1790, and which took two weeks:

I found my carriage and horses at Alexandria, but a snow of eighteen inches deep falling the same night, I... left it there, to be sent to me by water, and had my horses led on to this place, taking my passage in the stage, though relieving myself a little sometimes by mounting my horse. The roads through the whole way were so bad that we could never go more than three miles an hour, sometimes not more than two.²¹⁴

Washington's Observations on the State of the Country.— While President, Washington made a tour through the states, and from his journal we take the following notes:

[At Hartford.] After breakfast, . . . I viewed the Woollen Manufactory at this place, which seems to be going on with spirit. Their Broadcloths are not of the first quality, as yet, but they are good; I ordered a suit to be sent to me at New York. . . . There is a great equality in the People of this State. Few or no opulent men — and no poor. . . .

[At Lynn, Mass.,] it is said 175,000 pairs of shoes . . . have been

made in a year.... This is only a row of houses, and not very thick, on each side of the Road. After passing Lynn, you enter Marblehead.... Its exports are chiefly Fish, Lumber, and Provisions. They have in the East India Trade at this time 13 Sail of Vessels.... After passing Beverly, 2 miles, we come to the Cotton Manufactory, which seems to be carrying on with spirit...; in this Manufactory they have the new Invented Carding and Spinning Machines;... one of which spins 84 threads at a time by one person.

[From Philadelphia to North Carolina.] Roads exceedingly deep, heavy, & cut in places by the carriages which used them.... [At Newbern, N.C.] Its exports consist of Corn, Tobacco, Pork, but principally of Naval Stores and lumber.... [Charleston, S.C.,]... contains about ... 16,000 Souls of which about 8000 are white. It lies low with unpaved streets... of sand.... The Inhabitants are wealthy, Gay, & hospitable; appear happy and satisfied with the Genl. Government.... The principal exports from this place [are] Rice, Indigo, and Tobacco.... 215

A Whaler's Life. — One of the old New England whalers thus describes his life:

I began to follow the sea in 1783, being then fifteen years of age, and continued until 1824. During this period . . . I was shipmate twenty-nine years. From the time I commenced going to sea until I quitted the business, I was at home only seven years. At the rate of four miles an hour . . . I have sailed more than 1,191,000 miles. I have visited more than forty islands in the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, . . . and traversed the west coasts of North and South America from . . . 40° S. to 59° N. . . . I have assisted in obtaining 20,000 barrels of oil ²¹⁶

On Southern Plantations. — A traveller of the time thus describes a visit to Jefferson:

I found him in the midst of the harvest, from which the scorching heat of the sun does not prevent his attendance. His negroes are

nourished, clothed, and treated as well as white servants could be. As he cannot expect any assistance from the two small neighboring towns, every article is made on his farm: his negroes are cabinet-makers, carpenters, masons, bricklayers, smiths, etc. . . . The young and old negresses spin for the clothing of the rest. 217

Life at the Madison mansion is thus described by Madison's grand-niece:

The ... long hall, with its highly polished floor, ... was hung

with pictures, and led into the large diningroom in which...the large, polished mahogany table and sideboard were bright with silver.... The drawingroom was carpeted with Persian rugs.... From the front hall the carved oaken staircase led up-stairs to the bedrooms and the library....²⁸⁸



SOUTHERN PLANTER'S HOUSE. (After a Sketch.)

The Slave Trade. — One of the most profitable sorts of trade was that to the coast of Africa after slaves. As soon as a slaver reached Africa, the native traders flocked down to the ship from every direction, and often large caravans would come to trade. One such caravan is thus described by an old slave-trader:

[At the head of the caravan came its master, a young African chieftain.] Behind the master came the principal traders and their slaves laden with produce, and followed by forty captive negroes,

secured by bamboo withes. These were succeeded by three-score bullocks, a large flock of sheep and goats, . . . while the procession was closed by the demure tread of a tame and stately ostrich!... A bullock was sold for twenty or thirty pounds of tobacco; sheep, goats, or hogs, cost two pounds of tobacco, or [two yards]... of common cotton, each;... where slaves were purchased for one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco, only eighteen dollars, were, in reality, paid; and when one hundred pounds of powder were given, we got them for twenty dollars each.²¹⁹

As to how one of these caravans was formed, the following account, given by the son of a native chieftain, who afterwards himself became a slave, will tell:

To procure cargoes of slaves, my father went upon an expedition every now and then with his regulars; that is, he went to a distant part of the country, and found ways and means to pick a quarrel with some less powerful tribe, which generally ended by the weaker tribe giving up a number of slaves as ransom; or a fight took place, and the strongest helped themselves. . . . Besides the slaves which he obtained in his warlike expeditions, he procured many more by fair trade. . . . ²²⁰

STUDY ON 7.

1. What were the conveyances used during this period? 2. What would make travelling hard? 3. What effect would this have on people living far from each other? 4. How long did it take to get from Harrisburg to Philadelphia? 5. How long did it take then for an ordinary voyage across the Atlantic and back? 6. What were the occupations of New England? 7. Of the South? 8. What occupations were followed on Jefferson's plantation? 9. Why did they have to do so many things? 10. What evidences of wealth in the Madison house? 11. Why does the fact that the slaves were well off on the Jefferson plantation not prove that they were well off everywhere? 12. If you had been a rich white man, in which part of the country would you have preferred living? 13. If you had been a poor white man? 14. Why of each answer? 15. Why did men go whaling? 16. Where did slaves come from and how were they obtained? 17. What was used for money in the African trade?

Supplementary Reading. — Samuel G. Goodrich [Peter Parley], Recollections of a Life-time, Vol. I., Letters vi., vii., x. Whaling Song, in Library American Literature, II. 364. Richard Henry Dana, Two Years before the Mast. A Girl's Life Eighty Years Ago, in Scribner's Magazine, 1887. Gayarré's A Sugar Plantation of the Old Régime, Harper's Magazine, 1887. J. P. Kennedy, Swallow Barn. Arlo Bates' Old Salem.

8. TRADE AND LIFE IN THE NEW STATES AND TERRITORIES.

WASHINGTON, ADAMS, JEFFERSON, AND MADISON.

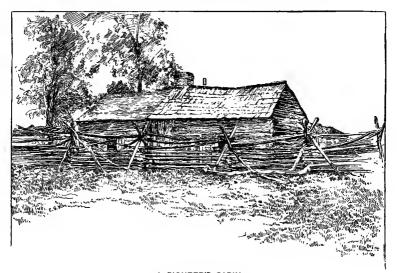
He went to see the world as the Omnipotent made it and the deluge left it! He went to hear the tramp of the wild congregations—the horse and the buffalo—shaking the prairie-plains that heaved up prond to bear on their free heart the untamed, bounding glorious herds! He went to look at the sun rising and setting on opposite sides of one and the same plain; and where the rainbow spans half a continent . . .!—An Early Indiana Settler.²²¹

Kentucky. — The following account of the life in our frontier settlements is taken from the recollections of one whose father was one of the first settlers of Maysville, Kentucky:

At that time there was a great immigration into... Kentucky, chiefly from... Virginia. Lexington... had already become... a kind of mart... for all the infant settlements of the state.... [After the site was selected] building... gave occupation to all who could wield an axe.... No attack was made upon them either by night or day, and before winter set in their rude cabins, each with its port holes, and a strong bar across the door, were completed.... The rifle...lay on two pegs driven into one of the logs; the axe and scythe kept at night under the bed as weapons of defence, in case the Indians should make an attack....

From the time of their arrival in Kentucky, fourteen months

before, they had suffered for want of bread.... There was no fear of famine, but they cloyed on animal food and almost loathed it, though of an excellent quality. Deer were numerous, and wild turkeys numberless.... My parents often told me afterwards that I would cry and beg for bread, when we were seated round the table, till they would have to leave it, and cry themselves....



A PIONEER'S CABIN.

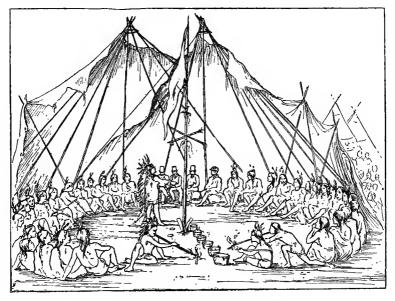
(From Photograph of Abraham Lincoln's father's cabin, built in Illinois in early part of the century.)

I have already spoken of grating and pounding corn, toting water from a distant spring...and divers other labors.... [Among them were coloring, soap-making, and the] art and mystery of cheesemaking.... [both of linen and wool]. The linen was bleached on the green grass, the wool was dyed with indigo, madder and different sorts of barks....

In a year or two after our removal a small log school-house was erected by the joint labor of several neighbors.... It was entirely in the woods, but one of the wagon roads...passed by its very

door. In the winter, light was admitted through oiled paper by long openings between the logs. . . .

The "meeting-house"... was built of logs, hewn on both sides, and had a shingled roof, one of the first I ever saw.... The scene around this village temple can never fade from my memory or my heart. Horses hitched along the fence, and men and women on



FUR-TRADERS' CAMP. (From Catlin.)

foot or horseback arriving from all quarters.... The hour for worship arrived, the congregation were seated within and around the cabin-church, on benches without backs,... while Old Hundred, by twice as many voices, was mingled with the notes of birds in the surrounding trees.²²²

Beyond the Mississippi. — We have already seen something of what life was like in the new Louisiana Purchase. The

fur-traders pushed into the country more and more. Their relation with the Indians is shown by the following extract from the autobiography of an Indian chief:

When we returned to our village in the spring from our wintering grounds, . . . our traders . . . always followed us. . . . We purposely kept some of our fine furs for this trade; and, as there was great opposition among them, who should get these skins, we always got our goods cheap. [Again, in the fall,] the traders arrive, and give us credit for such articles as we want to clothe our families, and enable us to hunt. We first, however, hold a council with them, to ascertain the price they will give us for our skins, and what they will charge us for goods. We inform them where we intend hunting — and tell them where to build their houses. At this place, we deposit part of our corn, and leave our old people. The traders have always been kind to them, and relieved them when in want. They were always much respected by our people — and never since we have been a nation, has one of them been killed by any of our people.²²³

On the North-west Coast.—In the years 1789 to 1793, a Scotchman by the name of Mackenzie made his way across the continent, by routes lying north of that taken by Lewis and Clarke, and had written:

Whatever course may be taken from the Atlantic, the Columbia is the line of communication from the Pacific Ocean, pointed out by nature. . . .

By opening this intercourse between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, and forming regular establishments through the interior, and at both extremes, ... the entire command of the fur trade of North America might be obtained ... except that portion of it which the Russians have on the Pacific. To this may be added the fishing in both seas, and the markets of the four quarters of the globe. . . . The coast of the Pacific ocean . . . is at present left to

American adventurers, who... collect all the skins they can procure... and having exchanged them at Canton for the produce of China, return to their own country.²²⁴

STUDY ON 8.

1. What were the advantages of the site of Maysville? 2. Make a list of the ways in which its settlers provided against the Indians. 3. Why was the cabin and its furniture so rough? 4. Why was there no glass for the windows? 5. Why should they suffer for the want of bread? 6. Make a list of the industries carried on in one of these early Kentucky homes. 7. How did they get from place to place? 8. How did they get manufactured articles? 9. What pleasures were in this early life? 10. What was the occupation of white men living beyond the Mississippi? 11. Of what benefit were the Indians to them? 12. Of what benefit were they to the Indians? 13. Why should the Indians look with more favor upon their business than upon that of the Kentucky settlers? 14. What three nations were beginning to become acquainted with the north-west coast? 15. What was to be had on that coast? 16. What part of the United States did the American adventurers come from? 17. What American settlement was started on the north-west coast in 1810, by whom, and why? (See list at close of Group.) 18. Which of our great cities were started between 1783 and 1815? (See list. This study may be divided at discretion.)

Supplementary Reading.—A Narrative of the Life of David Crockett, of the State of Tennessee, written by himself. Philadelphia and Boston, 1834. Bryant's Hunter of the Prairies. Mrs. John H. Kinzie's Waubun, the Early Day in the North-west (Chicago). Catlin's North American Indians. Washington Irving's Astoria. Edward Eggleston's The Graysons, 1888. Samuel Adams Brake's The Making of the Great West. New York, 1887.

9. TROUBLES WITH ENGLAND; BEGINNING OF WAR OF 1812.

-00:00:00

JEFFERSON AND MADISON, Presidents.

Not content with seizing upon all our property which falls within her rapacious grasp, the personal rights of our countrymen—rights which must forever

be sacred—are trampled on and violated [through the] impressment of our seamen....

What are we to gain by war? has been emphatically asked. In reply... what are we not to lose by peace? Commerce, character, a nation's best treasure, honor!—Henry Clay, in speech of 1811, before Congress.²²⁵

A War of Blockades. — From 1800 on, Great Britain and France had been at war; and, in 1807, Great Britain forbade American vessels to go into any harbors except those of Great Britain itself, and of Sweden, who was on her side in this great war. Then Napoleon, to punish England, forbade any American vessel to go into any British harbor; America, on her part, passed the *Embargo Act*, which forbade the departure of any vessel for a foreign port; but the people of New England were so troubled by this, that it was changed for a *Non-Intercourse Act*, which simply forbade them to go to France or England.

Impressment of American Sailors.—At this same time Great Britain claimed the right to take a British-born sailor from any American ship where she could find him, and make him serve in the British navy; the way this worked may be seen from the following passage taken from a leading magazine of that time:

Future generations of the American people will not surely believe that their ancestors, immortal in history for their resistance to oppression... really submitted to such outrages.... We, of the present day, know and feel the horrid certainty of these things. We have endured them for years... and at last are compelled to resist them by force.... Would Great Britain permit her ships to be searched and her seamen to be carried off, at the discretion of any American officer who pleased to take them?...

The editor then gives the following letter:

Dear Brother. —I am sorry to acquaint you with my unfortunate situation, but necessity obliges me. . . . Being on shore one day at

Lisbon, I was impressed by a gang and brought on board of the Conqueror, where I am still confined, neither have I been allowed to put my foot on shore since I was brought on board, which is now three years. O my brother! think of my hard fate, to be so long confined, and not half victuals enough to eat, and constant hard work.... When I first came on board I told the captain I was an American, . . . but he told me to go to work. . . . We sailed from Lisbon . . . to Cadiz. I then wrote to [the] . . . American Consul, and told him my deplorable situation. The captain got news of my trying to gain my freedom, and put me in irons, and threatened to inflict a severe punishment by flogging me, if ever I did the like again.... I was kept in irons until the ship came out of Cadiz, and then ... put to my duty again. ... I hope that government may see the necessity of taking means for the releasing American seamen out of the British service, where there are thousands of them. There is a great number in this fleet, and in this ship, who all join me in my request. For God's sake . . . continue to write to the consul in London.... If my mother is living, you must not let her know my distress, for I am afraid she will take it too much to heart. I long to see her, and all of you once more, but am afraid I never shall....

Your loving brother until death,

James Brown.226

From March 11, 1803, to September, 1810, the official records give 4579 as the number of American seamen impressed, to say nothing of the great numbers never reported. The most famous case of all was that of the Leopard and Chesapeake, which was called by the Americans of that time a horrid outrage. The British ship Leopard demanded from the American frigate Chesapeake three sailors, whom the captain of the Leopard claimed were British-born subjects; but the captain of the Chesapeake denying this, the Leopard fired upon the American ship, killing three and wounding eight of her crew, and took away by force the three sailors.

The First Fight of the War. — Things like these brought on the War of 1812, a war of many famous fights; one of the first and greatest of which was the following, as recounted in an English paper of the time:

Capt. Hull, fell in with his Majesty's frigate Guerriere... when an engagement commenced, and after an action of 15 minutes, the Guerriere was completely dismasted, and in another quarter of an hour she went down!... NOTHING IS IMPOSSIBLE! not even for a man to bite his own nose off! but... we must confess our doubts as to the probability of the event...! The Constitution is a frigate of the largest class in the American navy, and the Guerriere as fine a frigate as we can boast of; that... such a result should take place, in an engagement of half an hour, is what, in modern times, borders somewhat on the marvellous!... That an action may have taken place is probable, but, that the above has been the result... we disbelieve.

In spite of the Englishman's remarks, just that had happened which he described, though the fight lasted twenty-five minutes instead of fifteen.

STUDY ON 9.

1. What reasons had the Americans for going to war with England in 1812? 2. What harm could England do to France by forbidding American vessels to go into any of her ports? 3. How should this trouble the Americans? 4. How could the Americans think the Embargo Act would do any good? 5. Why should the people of New England be so troubled by the Embargo Act? 6. Why was it easy to claim American sailors as British ones? 7. Name the ways in which James Brown was cruelly and unjustly treated by the British. 8. Whose business was it to see that he was protected and his captors punished? 9. Why should the British paper disbelieve the account of the fight between the Constitution and the Guerriere?

Supplementary Reading. — The fight of the Constitution and Guerriere in anonymous ballad of the time. Library American Literature, V. 105.

10. WAR OF 1812.—CONTINUED.

MADISON, President.

Roll, roll, ye waves! eternal roll!

For ye are holy from his might:
Oh, banner, that his valor wreathed,
Forever keep thy victor-light!
And if upon this sacred lake
Should ever come invading powers,
Like him may we exulting cry,
"We've met the foe, and they are ours!"

- Song sung at Cleveland on occasion of Perry's victory. 228

Massacre of the River Raisin.—This, one of the saddest stories of the war, came at the beginning of 1813. It was reported as follows:

A number of the brave fellows who were made prisoners at the battle of French-town... have passed through this place... these men are the flower of Kentucky....

The editor has had the pleasure of conversing with a number of these gentlemen.... From this source he lays the following facts before his readers.

The advance of Gen. Winchester to... French-town, arose from the ardent solicitation of the inhabitants... [for] protection... from the violence and outrage of the hordes of savages with which they were surrounded.... The Wednesday succeeding the march of Gen. Winchester for French-town, had been fixed on by these merciless allies of Britain, for the burning of the town and the butchery of its inhabitants.

[But the gallant little band of Americans was defeated; after their surrender] the American commanding officer [implored the British officer to protect]... the wounded prisoners from the fury of the savages. The officer pledged himself to attend to it.... But they were left without the promised protection; and on the

morning of the 23rd the savage allies of a Christian king, stripped and murdered all of them who were unable to march! If the vengeance of our country can sleep after such an act as this, then indeed may we weep over the ruins of the republic! ²²⁹

The Hornet beats the Peacock.—The Hornet was an American ship, and this is the account of her victory over the English Peacock:

Feb. 14, 1813. — This affair...is, indeed, the "cap-sheaf" of all;... Lawrence has done nothing more than it was believed he would do;... but it is with inexpressible joy that we find the well-deserved fame of our gallant seamen is so well-sustained by this contest; while the proud enemy, who spoke of our vessels as being manned by... "black guards" has suffered — more, much more, than we could have desired.... Already the British seamen know the effect of our fire; and bold as they are, they tremble when the stripes



appear. Capt. Lawrence says of this fight: "At 5.10, finding I could weather the enemy, I hoisted American colors,... run him close,... and kept up such a heavy and well-directed fire, that in less than fifteen minutes she surrendered" (being totally cut to pieces).... [This is the same Captain Lawrence who died in another naval fight with these immortal words upon his lips, Don't give up the ship!] 230

Perry's Victory.—But the best news of the whole war was that which appeared in a paper of September, 1813:

From Lake Erie we have most glorious news. Thanks be to God for this splendid victory that has relieved a very exposed and

extensive frontier from the allied bayonet and scalping-knife. But Commodore Perry holds an able pen! He writes to [General Harrison]...:

"Dear General. — We have met the enemy; and they are ours. Two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop. Yours with great respect and esteem,

O. H. Perry." 251

The Yankee Privateers. — Meanwhile, many Yankee clippers, fitted out at private expense, were abroad upon the ocean to seize what British property they could. The following item will show that they were sometimes very lively:

The Yankee in her last cruize of 49 days, captured the brig Ann, with rum, salt, and dry goods, for Newfoundland, valued at \$40,000; brig Mary, salt, coals, and crockery, worth \$20,000; brig Despatch, dry goods, cutlery, &c., &c., invoiced at 180,000 sterling! brig Telemachus, with rigging, coals, provisions, &c., \$40,000; brig Favorite, of little value . . .; schr. Katy, laden with wine; . . . [and three others].

The effect of this sort of business in England may be seen in the following extract from resolutions passed at a meeting of merchants at Glasgow, in September, 1814:

There is reason to believe, in the short space of less than twentyfour months, above eight hundred vessels have been captured by the power, whose maritime strength we have hitherto...held in contempt...

When ... we have declared the whole American coast under blockade, it is equally distressing and mortifying, that our ships cannot with safety traverse our own channels, ... and that a horde of American cruizers should be allowed ... to take, burn, or sink our own vessels ... almost in sight of our own harbors.²³²

The Battle of New Orleans. — Meanwhile, in the south-west, the young Tennessee backwoodsman, Andrew Jackson, who,

as a boy, had been in the Revolution, was fighting Indians or British, as they came to hand, and he it was who won the victory of New Orleans. Peace had already been signed when this battle was fought, but the news of it had not yet come to our country. The following is a part of a speech made by General Jackson to his troops a short time after the battle:

On the eighth of January, the final effort was made. At the dawn of day, the batteries opened and the columns advanced. Knowing that the volunteers from Tennessee and the militia from Kentucky were stationed on your left, it was there they directed their chief attack.

Reasoning always from false principles, they expected little opposition from men whose officers even were not in uniform, who were ignorant of the rules of dress, and who had never been caned into discipline — fatal mistake! A fire incessantly kept up, directed with calmness and unerring aim, strewed the field with the bravest officers and men of the column which slowly advanced, according to the most approved rules of European tactics. . . . Unable to sustain this galling and unceasing fire, . . . at length they . . . retired from the field.²³³

The Peace. — On the same day with the news of the battle of New Orleans, came the news of the making of peace to New York. Both England and America were worn out by the war and ready to stop fighting; and though nothing was said about impressment in the peace, yet there has been no impressment since; and in an English newspaper of that date we read:

With what scorn and contempt, did we speak of this noble republic, but a little time ago, and now this same contemptible republic, victorious by land and sea, stands upon a prouder eminence than all the other nations of the world put together!... I thiuk that America will henceforth be the arbiter of all other nations. All other nations must keep their eyes upon America; and all the lovers of freedom must remember the republic.²³⁴

STUDY ON IO.

1. Mark with a blue flag the battle-fields of this war where Americans were victorious. 2. With red flags the British victories. 3. What were the chief places in which this war was waged? (See List of Events for 1812–1815, together with reference maps.) 4. Why should the people be enraged at the affair of the River Raisin? 5. From what part of the country did the leading troops in the battle of New Orleans and the massacre of the River Raisin come? 6. Why was the victory of Perry so important? 7. In what two ways did the privateers injure the British? 8. Where had our American seamen learned to manage ships so well? 9. Where had the troops at New Orleans-learned to shoot so well? 10. What had taught them to be so cool? 11. What good did the War of 1812 do?

Supplementary Reading. — Samuel G. Goodrich [Peter Parley]. Recollections of a Lifetime, I., Letter xxx. George Cary Eggleston, The Big Brother; and Captain Sam, by same author. Mrs. Seawell's Little Jarvis.



11. THREATS TO THE UNION.

JEFFERSON, MADISON, MONROE, J. Q. ADAMS, JACKSON, Presidents.

Yes, I have ambition. But it is the ambition of being the humble instrument, in the hands of Providence, to reconcile a divided people, once more to revive harmony and concord in a distracted land,—the pleasing ambition of contemplating the glorious spectacle of a free, united, prosperous, and fraternal people.—Clay, in speech before Senate.²²⁵

The Embargo in New England.—Even at the time of the Embargo Act, New England Federalists were greatly troubled at the course of the general government, and a committee of the Massachusetts Legislature reported:

The produce of our agriculture, of our forests, and our fisheries, is excluded altogether from every foreign market; our merchants and mechanics are deprived of employment; our coasting trade is

interrupted and harassed.... The sources of our revenue are dried up.... In fact, the evils which are menaced... are so enormous... that they must soon become intolerable, and endanger our domestic peace and the union of these states.... 236

The Hartford Convention.—The New England Federalists were also greatly opposed to the War of 1812, and to the way it was carried on, and called a convention at Hartford, which sat in secret session, and whose members were strongly suspected of proposing that New England should either leave the Union or disobey the commands of government. A prominent Maryland editor of that time wrote:

Men of New England, what interest have you in any of these things?... Vote against the administration, if you cannot approve its measures, and turn them out if you can... but obey the laws, repel the invader, and give us evidence of your "religion, morality and steady habits" by expelling traitors from influence amongst you. The majority must rule; bad, indeed, would it be if three states should dictate to fifteen, one of which states [New York] is at this time, perhaps, quite as populous and wealthy as all those to be represented in the Hartford Convention; and if not so now, will, in 10 or 20 years, be twice as powerful. Redeem yourself from the sins of those wicked persons... obey Washington and suspect every one for a villain that splutters about "geographical distinctions." Give us the hand of fellowship... we are men, flesh and blood like yourselves; and supporting and supported, we may defy a world in arms.²³⁷

Before the matter went further, the war came to an end; but the Federalists lost all their power after the Hartford Convention, and were no longer a party.

South Carolina Nullifiers. — As early as 1824, the government had begun the system of laying a Protective Tariff or

duty on goods that were imported into the United States and that were of the same kind as those we were trying to make, but cheaper than they were. For instance, many people in the United States were trying to manufacture salt; and so that they could have a chance to sell this salt, a large duty or protective tariff was put on all the salt that came from any other place. The way it worked may be seen from the following speech of a Missouri senator:

[The price of salt brought from the West Indies] is nine cents a bushel; from Portugal, eight cents a bushel. At these prices, the West could be supplied with salt at New Orleans, if the duty was abolished; but, in consequence of the duty, it costs thirty-seven and a half cents a bushel.... Remove this duty and the trade would be prodigious.... The levee at New Orleans would be covered—the warehouses would be crammed with salt;... a bushel of corn, or of potatoes, a few pounds of butter,... of beef or pork, would purchase a sack of salt; the steamboats would bring it up for a trifle; and all the upper States of the Great Valley, where salt is so scarce, so dear, and so indispensable for rearing stock and curing provisions,... would be cheaply and abundantly supplied.²³⁸

Cotton and woollen goods, and many other things which we were beginning to manufacture, were protected in the same way, and there was great discontent in the West and the South. But the people of New England asked, How are the people here to live, where farming does not pay, where the soil is all rocks and stones? What are we to do? South Carolina answered:

The stamp act of 1765, and the tariff of 1828 — kindred acts of despotism: when our oppressors trace the parallel, let them remem-

ber, that we are the descendants of noble ancestry, and profit by the admonitions of history.²³⁹

At last, in 1832, when the protective tariff was made higher yet, the people of South Carolina called a convention which passed unanimously an *Ordinance of Nullification*, by which they declared the tariff "null, void, and no law, nor binding on this state"; they further forbade the people to pay the duties, and raised volunteers to fight, if the United States should try to



make them pay. But President Jackson ordered General Scott down, to be ready for any fighting, and issued a famous proclamation:

To say that any state may at pleasure secede from the Union, is to say the United States is not a nation....

Carolina is one of these proud states, her arms have defended, her best blood has cemented, this happy Union! And then add, if you can, without horror and remorse, this happy Union we will dissolve...

the very names of Americans we discard.... But the dictates of a high duty oblige me solemnly to announce that you cannot succeed.

The laws of the United States must be executed . . . my duty is emphatically pronounced in the Constitution $^{240}\,$

Almost at once after this proclamation, a compromise tariff was proposed by Henry Clay of Kentucky, which made the South more contented, and so this trouble went by.

STUDY ON II.

1. Why were the New England Federalists discontented with the general government? 2. How was the produce of their forests and fisheries excluded from every foreign market? 3. What did they threaten to do if they were not relieved? 4. What would each of the following classes of people think of the protective tariff? A Kentucky farmer, who raised horses and pigs; a Southern planter, who raised cotton; a New England manufacturer of cotton goods; a Portuguese salt-maker. 5. What did the Southerners mean by saying let them remember, that we are the descendants of a noble ancestry, and profit by the lessons of history? 6. What did the South Carolinians try to nullify by their ordinances? 7. What did they propose to do if they were forced to pay the taxes? 8. What example did they think they were following, when they resolved to do this? 9. How was this case different? 10. What had the Constitution pronounced the duty of Andrew Jackson to be? 11. What did he evidently intend to do if the South Carolinians seceded? 12. What do you understand by a compromise tariff?

Supplementary Reading. — Recollections of a Lifetime, by S. G. Goodrich [Peter Parley], chs. ix. and xvii. of Vol. I.; xxi. of Vol. II.

~02020~



QUESTION.

MONROE, J. Q. ADAMS, JACKSON, VAN BUREN, HARRISON, AND TYLER,

Presidents.

If I could be instrumental in eradicating this deepest stain upon the character of our country . . . ; if I could only be instrumental in ridding of this foul blot that revered state which gave me birth, or that not less beloved state which kindly adopted me as her son, I would not exchange the proud satisfaction which I should enjoy for . . . all the triumphs ever decreed to the most successful conqueror. — Speech of Clay in 1827.²⁴¹

The Missouri Compromise. — Another question threatened the Union. That part of the Louisiana Purchase which is now

Missouri was, by 1820, ready to be admitted as a state; the question was whether she should come in with slavery or without. From the diary of John Quincy Adams, then in the Cabinet of President Monroe, we gather something of the history of this question:

[Feb. 23d, 1820.] — . . . Members of the House of Representatives called upon me, and, conversing on the Missouri slave question, which at this time agitates Congress and the nation, asked my opinion . . . of agreeing to a compromise. The division in Congress and the nation is nearly equal on both sides. The argument on the free side is, the . . . duty of preventing the extension of slavery in the immense country from the Mississippi River to the South Sea. The argument on the slave side is, that Congress has no power by the Constitution to prohibit slavery in any State, and, the zealots say, not in any Territory. The proposed compromise is to admit Missouri . . . without any restriction . . . as to slavery, but to prohibit the future introduction of slaves in all territories of the United States north of 36° 30′ latitude. I told these gentlemen that my opinion was, the question could be settled not otherwise than by a compromise. . . .

March...2d.—The compromise of the slave question was this day carried in Congress [by the influence of Clay]....²⁴²

The Abolitionists. — About 1830, a society was formed in the Northern states, whose principles were as follows:

We maintain . . . that no man has a right to enslave or imbrute his brother. . . .

That every American citizen who retains a human being in involuntary bondage as his property, is, according to Scripture . . . a manstealer.

That the slaves ought instantly to be set free, and brought under the protection of law....

That all those laws which are now in force, admitting the right of slavery, are therefore, before God, utterly null and void. . . .

We maintain that no compensation should be given to the planters emancipating their slaves. . . .

Our trust for victory is solely in God. We may be personally defeated, but our principles never! Truth, Justice, Reason, Humanity must and will gloriously triumph....²⁴³

Men who thought like this were called **Abolitionists**; and their chief paper, the *Liberator*, edited by **William Lloyd Garrison**, always bore the motto, — *No Union with Slaveholders*.

We can see how the Abolitionists were looked at in the South from the following speech of Mr. Calhoun, the South Carolina senator:

Under this relation [of slavery] the two races have long lived in peace and prosperity.... While the European race has rapidly increased in wealth and numbers...the African race has...a degree of comfort which the laboring classes in few other countries enjoy.... There is no other example in history in which a savage people, such as their ancestors were...have ever advanced so rapidly in numbers and improvement....

It is against this relation between the two races that the blind and criminal zeal of the Abolitionists is directed—a relation that now preserves in quiet and security more than 6,500,000 human beings, and which cannot be destroyed without destroying the peace and property of nearly half the states of the Union. . . It is madness to suppose that the slaveholding States would quietly submit to be sacrificed. Every consideration—interest, duty, and humanity,—the love of country,—the sense of wrong, . . . and, finally, despair—would impel them to the most daring . . . defence of property, family, country, liberty, and existence.²⁴⁴

The Slave in Africa. — The condition of the negro in Africa may be gathered from the following account which an African slave gives of his early home:

My father . . . contented himself with five wives. My mother was the only one who had a son, and she was, consequently, in high favor. . . . [She] taught me to bow down every morning before a hideous image which . . . was tolerably well carved, and intended, I suppose, to represent the devil: it had a wide mouth stretching from ear to ear, long tusks, and huge goggle eyes. The words my mother taught me were only a few monotonous petitions to this hideous monster to do me no harm — not to burn me, or kill me, or run away with me. It was the worship of fear and terror, not of love. . . . I remember, at one time, the army having returned, with [my father] at their head of course, bringing fifty prime prisoners, that an uncommon jollification was resolved upon and . . . a barrel of rum and other requisites for the carousal were brought [and they all] continued to drink and smoke and feast during the night. 245

[We hear of an African king holding a festival where] about 500 or 600 of his subjects were sacrificed for his recreation.... Thieves and other offenders, together with the remnant of unpurchased slaves... are reserved by them to be sacrificed to their gods; which horrid ceremony takes place at least once a month.²⁴⁶

STUDY ON 12, LIST AND MAPS.

1. What was the Missouri Compromise? 2. Between whom was it made?
3. What free states had been admitted up to this date of 1820? 4. What slave states? 5. What do you notice in regard to the order of their admission? 6. Why do you think this order was followed? 7. Take your Outline Map for this period, and mark with a red line the boundary between free soil and slave soil in 1820. (See index and list.) 8. What was the difference between the view that the Abolitionists took and the view of Washington in regard to doing away with slavery? 9. How did they justify their view? 10. How did he justify his view? 11. How did the Abolitionists threaten the Union in the North? 12. In the South? 13. In what ways were the ancestors of the slaves savages? 14. How did bringing them to this country as slaves civilize them? 15. In which country were their lives safer?

Supplementary Reading. - Lowell's Ode to William Lloyd Garrison. Whittier, Voices of Freedom.

13. TRADE AND LIFE FROM 1815-1845; LOCAL PICTURES.

MONROE, JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, JACKSON, VAN BUREN, HARRISON, AND TYLER, Presidents.

One of the things we were most curious about on arriving in America, was to visit the extreme limits of European civilization... After we left New York and advanced towards the north-east, our destination seemed to flee before us. We traversed places celebrated in Indian history; we reached valleys named by them; we crossed streams still called by the names of their tribes; but everywhere the wigwam had given way to the house—the forest had fallen—where there had been solitude there was now life.—A French Traveller in 1831.247

The following extracts from newspaper and magazine notices, and from the accounts of travellers will tell us what was being done and what was to be seen in our country in these years of our history.

At Pittsburgh. —

[1814] This morning the steam boat Vesuvius intended as a regular trader between New Orleans and the falls of Ohio, left Pittsburg.... Everything being in perfect order, she passed... in front of the town... firing a salute. Most of the citizens were assembled on the bank as she passed....

I endeavored to keep pace with her along the road which skirts the river. But she moved so rapidly, that after riding three miles and a half in nineteen minutes, I gave up the attempt....²⁴⁸

[1820] Whenever the soot-cloud is driven before the wind, long streets are revealed lined with well-built...dwellings, with here and there a stately mansion, or dusky palace belonging to some lord of coal-pits and ore-beds.

Hark! how enterprise and industry are raging away! while steam and water power shake the hills to their very foundations!... every breeze is redolent with nameless odours of factories and work-shops;

and the ear is stunned by the ceaseless uproar from clatter and clang of cog and wheel—the harsh grating of countless rasps and files—the ringing of a thousand anvils—the spiteful clickings of enormous shears biting rods of iron into nails—the sissing of hot tongs in water—and the deep earthquaking bass of forge-hammers....²⁴⁹

Advertisement in an Indiana Paper of 1830. —

J. & O. Lindley have just received direct from Philadelphia, and are now opening... a large and splendid assortment of British, India, and American goods, consisting in part of... broadcloths;... blue and fancy calicoes...; black and white silks...; domestic plaids and united stripes...; all of which will be sold at the lowest Louisville prices for cash, tow,...flax, linen,... butter, eggs, oats, corn, wheat,... brandy, whiskey....²⁵⁰

A Traveller's Account of New Orleans in the '20's. -

I walked to that part of the Levée alloted to the steamboats. Thirteen enormous vessels of this description were lying along the ... river. One of these ... was just setting off for Louisville ... 1400 miles distant. ...

[On her decks] groups of ladies and gentlemen were moving about as if... in a fairy castle.... A little further down the stream... lay about a hundred very odd-looking craft... called arks.... They are flat-bottomed,... square,... and... made of rough planks.... It is in these arks that the... grain, the salted meats, the spirits, the tobacco, the hemp, the skins and the fruits of those vast regions bordering on the Missouri, the Ohio, and the Mississippi, are brought down to the ocean.... When they have reached New Orleans, and discharged their cargoes... they are broken up and the planks sold.... The crew... take their passage on... one of the numerous steamboats... together with fish, salt, sugar, steel, iron, and all sorts of things suited to... those multitudinous inland cities starting up every day in the heart of the western country....

On Sunday morning early... I visited the markets of New Orleans.... I could just see the Mississippi at intervals,... glittering under the branches of a row of the Pride of India trees, round the roots of which were heaped large heaps of coal, floated down in arks or flatboats all the way from Pittsburgh.... At another place lay... flagstones,... brought across the seas from Liverpool. These were again intermixed... with bales of cotton, hogsheads of tobacco and sugar,... as far as the eye could reach in both directions.... A dense grove of masts formed the background, from which the flags of all nations drooped listlessly in the calm. 251

In the Old North-west.—In 1820, Gen. Lewis Cass, then governor of what was left of the old North-west Territory, made an expedition northward and westward, from the journal of which we note the following:

[At Michilimackinac,] the Indian trade is chiefly conducted by the American... Fur Company.... The beach of the lake has been constantly lined with Indian huts and bark canoes.... These savages resort to the island for the purpose of exchanging their furs, for blankets, knives, and other articles....

[At the Sault St. Marie]. — It appears to have been among the primary objects of this expedition to prepare the way for . . . an American garrison at this place. To attain this object, a council of the chiefs . . . was this morning summoned [by General Cass]. . . . They were, however, determined not to accede to our wishes, and in seeing ourselves surrounded by a brilliant assembly of chiefs, dressed in costly broadcloths, feathers, epaulets, medals, and silver wares, of British fabric . . . all gratuitously given, we could not mistake the influence by which they were [moved. Nevertheless, General Cass prevailed]. For this cession . . . they were paid upon the spot, in blankets, knives, silver wares, broadcloths, and other Indian goods.

During our stay at the Sault, eleven barges and canoes from the upper lakes descended the rapids...principally laden with furs and skins for the North West and American companies.

[At Chicago.] — The village consists of ten or twelve dwelling houses, with a . . . population of probably sixty souls. The garrison stands on the south shore of Chicago creek, . . . and, like the majority of our frontier posts, consists of a square stockade, inclosing barracks, quarters for the officers, a . . . provision store, &c., and defended by bastions at the . . . angles. . . . To the ordinary advan-



OLD FORT DEARBORN IN THE 20'S. (From the Sketch of an Early Settler.)

tages of a... market town, it must, hereafter, add that of a depot, for the inland commerce, between the northern and southern sections of the Union, and a great thoroughfare for strangers, merchants and travellers.²⁵²

A Letter from Great Falls, N.H., in 1831. —

Dear Sir: This village, seven years since, was an entire swamp and wilderness. It then contained a solitary farmhouse, and a small saw-mill. It now contains five large factory mills, two large hotels, ten blocks (three stories high) of brick, and about one hundred frame dwelling houses, three churches and eight or ten stores, and about two thousand inhabitants. There are four cotton and one

woolen mill. The cotton mills contain, it is said, more spindles than are run by any other establishment in the United States, viz., thirty-one thousand! with preparations sufficient to supply nine hundred looms, which produce six millions of yards of cotton cloth per annum.²⁵³

Office-hunters at Washington. — In his first year of presidency, Jackson removed 491 post-masters and 239 other officers. Clay wrote:

Among the official corps there is the greatest solicitude.... The members of it feel something like the inhabitants of Cairo when the plague breaks out; no one knows who is next to encounter the stroke of death, or, which with many of them is the same thing, to be dismissed from office.

Horace Greeley, in December, 1840, writes from Washington:

We have nothing new here in politics, but large and numerous swarms of office-hunting locusts sweeping into Washington daily. All the rotten land speculators, broken bank directors, swindling cashiers, etc., are in full cry for office, office; and even so humble a man as I am is run down for letters, letters.²⁵⁴

STUDY ON 13.

1. When, by whom, and why was Pittsburgh founded? 2. What occupations could people have there or near there? 3. Why should it become a rich and great city? 4. What was there for people to do at Cincinnati? 5. What did the people in the Indiana country do for a living? 6. How did they pay for what they bought? 7. Where did what they bought come from? 8. How did the steamboat help this country to settle and grow rich faster? 9. What could a Liverpool ship buy at New Orleans? 10. From what part of the country would each of these things come? 11. For what part of our country was the Mississippi the road to a market? 12. What was that market? 13. What was there left of the old North-west Territory not made into states, in 1820? (See list and map.) 14. What was the business of the people in this part? 15. What made the Indians unwilling to allow the Americans to stay at Sault St. Marie? 16. What was the beginning of

Chicago? 17. What made Great Falls in New Hampshire grow so fast? 18. How did people get office under Jackson? 19. Why were they put out of it?

Supplementary Reading. — Edward Eggleston's Circuit Rider. Memorials of a Southern Planter, by Susan Dabney Smedes. Baltimore, 1887.

--020400---

14. TRADE AND LIFE FROM 1815–1845, IN THE COUNTRY IN GENERAL.

MONROE, JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, JACKSON, VAN BUREN, HARRISON, AND TYLER, Presidents.

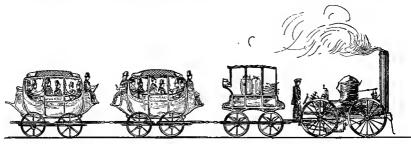
Fifty-two years since, he, who is this day to lay the first stone of the great road, was one among a band of fearless and noble spirits who resolved and declared that freedom which has been transmitted . . . to us. . . . The prondest act of his life and the most important . . . was the signature of independence; the next, the laying of the first stone of the work which is to perpetuate the union of the American states.—From Address, on the laying of first stone of Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, by Charles Carroll, of Carrollton, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. 255

Immigration.—This was the time when immigrants began to pour into America by the thousand; the following are the figures for two weeks during the summer of 1817: from England, 649; Wales, 51; Ireland, 581; Scotland, 134; Germany and Switzerland, 826; France, 31—total, 2272. The editor in whose magazine these figures are given remarks upon them:

... The degree of suffering must ever be very great to rouse a courage sufficient to cause many to... fly to a strange land from whence they never expect to return; [but in spite of this, and all the strong ties of kindred and home, the immigration]... is powerful, and will increase. We have room enough yet; let them come. The tree of liberty we have planted is for the healing of the people of all nations.²⁵⁶

The First Railroads.—During this time, too, the first railroads began to be built; a ride on the first New York railroad is thus described:

Having mounted our vehicle, a fine large gray horse was attached to it.... "Ready!" said the stageman; the driver whistled to the gray; away went the car through hills and over valleys. Before we had done looking at our novel vehicle, the car was stopped to water the horse under a bridge; and, on inquiring, we found that we had come four miles in less than twenty minutes.²³⁷



AN EARLY RAILROAD CAR (From Old Print.)

The first important railroad in our country was the Baltimore and Ohio road; while they were laying their tracks, the directors received the following letter from England:

LIVERPOOL, Nov. 6, 1829.

Mr. Winans and Geo. A. Brown have just returned from Rainhill, about 12 miles from this city, on the Liverpool and Manchester Railroad, where they have been amusing themselves riding on Mr. Stevenson's locomotive engine, at the rate of TWENTY-EIGHT MILES per hour, drawing about thirty passengers. She is represented to have gone one mile in a minute and sixteen seconds... but this Mr. Stevenson himself can scarcely credit. She drew forty-two tons, on a level road, fifteen miles an hour.... New railroads are projecting all over the country.... Canal property is ruined.... In

fact, they are even anticipating that it may be necessary to let the canals dry, and to lay rails on them.²⁵⁸

In the address made on the occasion of the opening of this Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, it was said:

We are about opening the channel through which the commerce of the mighty country beyond the Alleghany must seek the ocean... and... which is to perpetuate the union of the American states.²⁵⁹

The First Telegraph Line. — It was in 1843 that Mr. Morse asked Congress for an appropriation of \$30,000 to erect a telegraph line between Washington and Baltimore. One who was then present tells us the story of its passage:

The bill came up, and ... met with most decided opposition.... [One member] moved that the Secretary use the appropriation in trying ... to construct a railroad to the moon. [Another] looked upon all magnetic telegraphs as ... fit for nothing. Nobody who did not understand the Pottawotamie or some other outlandish jargon could know what the telegraph reported.

While the bill was undergoing the ordeal of ridicule, ... Mr. Morse stood leaning on the bar of the House, ... in a state of intense excitement.... Seeing him thus, I went to him, remarking that he appeared to be much excited. He turned and said, ... "If you knew how important this is to me, you would not wonder. I have spent seven years in perfecting this invention, and all that I had: if it succeeds, I am a made man; if it fails, I am ruined."

[The bill passed, work began at once on the first electric telegraph line in the world; it was ready in time to report the proceedings of the democratic convention at Baltimore which nominated Mr. Polk for president.] The terminus of the line in Washington was in a room...under the Senate-chamber.... Here [Mr. Morse] received and communicated messages during the sitting of the convention, and read them to the large crowd assembled around the window....

Every few minutes it was reported that Mr. So-and-so had made such a motion, and in a minute or two, "the motion has failed," or, "has carried," as the case might be. Again, . . . "Mr. Polk has been proposed, and a vote is being taken; . . . he . . . is nominated."

This talking with Baltimore was something so novel, so strange, so extraordinary, and upon a matter of such intense interest, that we could hardly realize the fact. It seemed like enchantment, or a delusion, or a dream.²⁶⁰

The Indian Question. — The government's view of what to do with the Indians may be seen in the following speech made by a leading senator:

There remained up to the year 1824...large portions of many of these states... in the hands of the Indian tribes; in Georgia, nine and a half millions of acres; in Alabama, seven and a half millions; in Mississippi, fifteen and three quarter millions; ... in the state of Missouri, two millions and three quarters; in Indiana and Illinois, fifteen millions; and in Michigan, east of the lake, seven millions. All these states and territories were desirous, and most justly and naturally so, to get possession of these vast bodies of land, generally the best within their limits....

At the commencement of the annual session of 1836–37, President Jackson had the gratification to make known to Congress the completion of the long-pursued policy of removing all the Indians in the states, . . . to their new homes west of the Mississippi. . . . The result has proved to be . . . still more beneficial to the Indians than to the whites. . . . They were daily wasting under contact with the whites, and had before their eyes the . . . certain fate of the hundreds of tribes found by the early colonists. . . . The removal saved the southern tribes from that fate; and in giving them new and unmolested homes beyond the verge of the white man's settlement, in a country temperate in climate, fertile in soil, with an outlet for hunting, abounding with salt water and salt springs, it left them to work out in peace the problem of Indian civilization. 261

The way the Indians looked at these removals may be seen in the autobiography of Black Hawk. After the War of 1812, in which he had fought against the whites, he signed a treaty of peace at St. Louis, in which he also signed away the lands of his tribe. Of this treaty and its results, he says:

Here, for the first time, I touched the goose quill to the treaty—not knowing, however, that, by that act, I consented to give away my village. Had that been explained to me, I should have opposed it, and never would have signed their treaty....

If another prophet had come to our village in those days and told us what has since taken place, none of our people would have believed him! What! to be driven from our village and hunting grounds, and not even permitted to visit the graves of our forefathers, our relations and friends? This hardship is not known to the whites. With us it is a custom to visit the graves of our friends, and keep them in repair for many years.... There is no place like that where the bones of our forefathers lie, to go to when in grief. Here the Great Spirit will take pity on us!

But, how different is our situation now, from what it was in those days! Then we were as happy as the buffalo on the plains, but now, we are as miserable as the hungry, howling wolf in the prairie! 2652

FIRST STUDY ON 14.

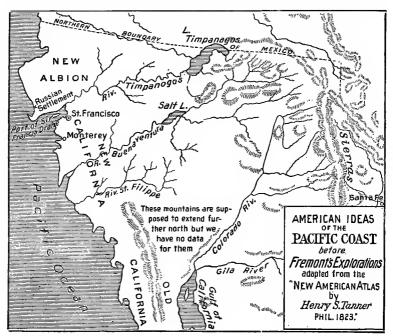
1. From what countries in Europe did immigrants come before the year 1845? 2. Why should people want to come here instead of staying at home? 3. What part of the railroad was invented first? 4. Why did people think canals were ruined? 5. After a railroad was made over the Alleghanies, where else could the people of the Ohio Valley find a market besides at New Orleans? 6. What part of our country would still depend upon New Orleans? 7. How could a railroad unite the people in the Mississippi Valley more closely to the people on the Atlantic seaboard? 8. What differences do you notice between the old railroad train in the picture and our modern railroad cars? 9. What seems to have suggested the shape of the first cars? 10. Why was it hard for Morse to get his telegraph bill passed through Congress? 11. What difference did the

telegraph make with people? 12. Name three great inventions that came in between the end of the Revolution and 1845, and tell whose name we should remember with each of them. (See list at close of Group.)

SECOND STUDY ON 14.

1. How could the inhabitants of the states justify themselves in removing the Indians? 2. What could the Indians say for themselves? 3. What did the white people want of the land? 4. What did the Indians want of it? 5. What great Indian wars did we have between 1812 and 1845? (See list at close of Group.) 6. What famous Indian appeared in these wars? 7. What famous American general? 8. In what part of our country were these wars? 9. Add to your Outline Map the new cities founded between 1800 and 1845. (See list at close of Group.)

Supplementary Reading. — Morse's Account of his Invention of the Telegraph, in Library of Am. Literature, V. 235. Hale's Stories of Invention.



15. THE OREGON QUESTION AND THE OREGON TRAIL.

MONROE, JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, JACKSON, VAN BUREN, HARRISON
AND TYLER, POLK, Presidents.

O you youths, Western youths,
So impatient, full of action, full of manly pride and friendship,
Plain I see you Western youths, see you tramping with the foremost,
Pioneers! O pioneers!

-- WALT WHITMAN. 263

The Oregon Question.—As we have already seen, the British and the Americans had both appeared on the north-west coasts of America, from the Columbia northward; the question was, to which of them did this further north-west belong? By a treaty made in 1818, the two countries had agreed to enter the Oregon country together. In a speech by Senator Benton, a famous Missouri senator, we see the spirit in which Oregon was entered:

After twenty-five years, the American population has begun to extend itself to the Oregon.... Two thousand are now setting out from the frontiers of Missouri.... I say to them all, Go on! the government will follow you, and will give you protection and land!... Let the emigrants go on, and carry their rifles.... Thirty thousand rifles on the Oregon will annihilate the Hudson Bay Company, drive them off our continent....

The settlers in Oregon will also recover and open for us the North American road to India! This road lies through the South Pass, and the mouth of the Oregon.²⁰⁴

The Oregon Trail.—One of the travellers to Oregon in these early days describes the experiences of the trail or road to the Oregon country:



The wagons are of the kind known as "Pennsylvenia Wegons."

On the 21st of May, 1839, the author and sixteen others arrived in the town of Independence, Missouri.... It is the usual place of "outfit" for the overland traders to Santa Fé.... In the month of May of each year, these traders congregate here, and buy large Pennsylvania wagons, and teams of mules to convey their calicoes, ... boots ... etc., over the plains to that distant ... market....

Our road on the fifth [of June] was through a rich level prairie.... Fifteen miles of march brought us to our place of encampment. A certain portion of the company...unpacked the... mules of the... provisions, ammunition, &c.; another portion pitched the tent; another gathered wood and built a fire; whilst others brought water, and... others... put... pots and... pans to their appropriate duties.... A few minutes transposed our little cavalcade... into an eating, drinking and joyous camp....

On the 9th we reached Council Grove, which derives its name from the practice among the [Santa Fé] traders, . . . of assembling there for the appointment of officers and the establishment of rules and regulations to govern their march through the dangerous country south of it. If they are attacked . . . by the Comanche cavalry . . . they form an oblong rampart of waggons laden with cotton goods that . . . shields team and men from the small arms of the Indians. The same arrangement is made when they halt for the night. . . .

We traversed Council Grove with . . . four persons in advance to mark the first appearance of an ambuscade; . . . in the rear . . . four men . . . all on the look-out, silent, with rifles lying on the saddles in front. . . .

[On the 13th, we met some Santa Fé] traders, returning to St. Louis with ten wagons full of furs and 200 Santa Fé sheep.

The 14th, 15th and 16th [of July] were days of more than ordinary hardships. With barely food enough to sustain life, drenched daily by thunder-storms and by swimming and fording the numerous [streams]... and wearied by the continual packing and unpacking of our animals,... I was so much reduced... on the evening of

the 16th that I was unable to loosen the girths of my saddle, or spread my blanket for repose.

The buffalo country was now entered, and herds on herds blackened the horizon. At Fort Bent, the Santa Fé traders left the Oregon travellers, who struck northwards for the Oregon trail, which ran at this time something as follows: from Independence, Missouri, along the Kansas and the Blue Fork of the Kansas to the Platte; along the Platte and North Platte to Fort Laramie, and then through the Black Hills by the Sweet Water; over the South Pass, to Fort Hall, to Fort Boisé, on the Snake River, just west of Boisé City, along the Snake to the Columbia.

By fall, they were making their way through the mountain region; now and then they came to a white man's settlement; one of the first of these was an American fur-trading post thus described:

It... is a hollow square of one-story log-cabins, with roofs and floors of mud.... Around these we found the conical skin lodges of the squaws of the white trappers,... and also the lodges of a few Snake Indians, who had preceded their tribe to this, their winter haunt. Here also were the lodges of Mr. Robinson, a trader.... His skin lodge was his warehouse; and buffalo robes were spread upon the ground and counter, on which he displayed his butcher knives, hatchets, powder, lead, fish-hooks, and whiskey.

Fort Hall was built by Captain Wyeth, of Boston, in 1832, for the purposes of trade with the Indians ... without being molested by the Hudson's Bay Company... In this he was disappointed.... They established a fort near him [Fort Boisé]... surrounded him everywhere [so that Wyeth] was induced to sell his whole interest... in Oregon, to his... skilful and powerful antagonists.... Goods are [now] sold at this post fifty per cent lower than at the American posts....

At the Presbyterian mission near Walla-Walla, they were received by Dr. Marcus Whitman, one of the founders of Oregon.

Breakfast being over, the doctor invited us to a stroll.... The garden was first examined;... the apple trees growing thriftily on its western border; the beautiful tomato and other vegetables, bordering the grounds. Next, to the fields,... two hundred acres... under good cultivation.... Then to the new house. The adobie walls had been erected a year.... And last to the grist-mill.... It would, with the help of himself and an Indian, grind enough in a day to feed his family a week.... It appeared to me quite remarkable that the doctor could... in five years,... fence, plough, build, plant an orchard, and thus open a plantation on the face of that distant wilderness; learn an Indian language and do the duties, meanwhile, of a physician....

[At the Dalles Mission, founded by the Methodists, affairs were in a similar state; at Willamette, a Methodist Episcopal Mission] several American citizens... called on me to talk of their fatherland.... The constantly repeated inquiries were—"Why are we left without protection...? Why are foreigners permitted to domineer over American citizens [and] drive their traders from the country?"... These people have put fifty or sixty fine farms under cultivation... have erected for themselves comfortable dwellings... and have herds of excellent cattle.... The reader will find it difficult to learn any sufficient reason for their being left by the Government without the institutions of civilized society.²⁶⁵

The Oregon Treaty. — The Oregon question was not settled until 1846, when by a treaty with Great Britain, the present Oregon boundary was established.

STUDY ON 15.

1. What claims could the Americans lay to the Oregon country? (See index, North-west Coast.) 2. What claim could the British have to it? 3. How should the possession of the Oregon country give us the North American road to India? 4. What other reasons had the Americans for wanting

this country? 5. What different reasons had the British for wanting it? 6. Take Outline Map for this period, and mark in green the Oregon trail. 7. What must a man on the old Oregon trail be able to do? 8. To suffer? 9. What were the pleasures of the way? 10. What classes of people were living in the Oregon country in 1839? 11. Which class was doing the most for its permanent settlement? 12. How did the Hudson Bay Company manage to drive our traders out of the Oregon country? 13. How did the Americans think they could drive out the British? 14. The Americans in Oregon had much trouble with the Indians, while the Hudson Bay Company had little or no trouble with them; how can you account for this? 15. Why should Dr. Whitman be called a founder of Oregon rather than the fur-traders? 16. How was the Oregon question finally answered? (See list, 1846.) 17. What false ideas had Americans of the geography of the West in 1830? (See map on p. 255.)

Supplementary Reading.—Irving's Captain Bonneville. Parkman's Oregon Trail. Ross Cox's Adventures on the Columbia River. London, 1831. Alexander Ross's Adventures of the First Settlers on the Oregon (London, 1849); also, his Fur-Hunters of the Far West.

16. THE SPANISH WEST.

The whispering woods and fragrant breeze
That stirred the grass in verdant seas
On billowy slopes,
And glistening crag in sunlit sky,
Mid snowy clouds piled mountain high,
Were joys to me;
My path was o'er the prairie wide,
Or here on grander mountain side,
To choose, all free.

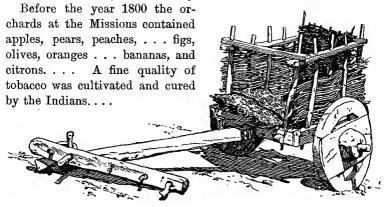
- Fremont, on recrossing the Rocky Mountains after many years. 266

The Santa Fé Trail. — During all the years that Americans were pressing into the Oregon country, we were close upon

the days of the Mexican War; but before we begin the study of that war, we must see something of the condition of the Spanish West. In our study of the Oregon trail, we have already met the Santa Fé traders. After they left the Oregon trail at Fort Bent, their own course lay through mountains and deserts to Santa Fé.

Spanish Settlements in California. — By 1840, Southern California was full of Spanish-Mexican settlements. One of these early Spanish settlers writes:

The Spanish pioneers of California... came slowly.... They had seeds, trees, vines, cattle, household goods, and servants, and in a few years their orchards yielded abundantly, and their gardens were full of vegetables. Poultry was raised by the Indians, and sold very cheaply.... Beef and mutton were to be had for the killing, and wild game was very abundant....

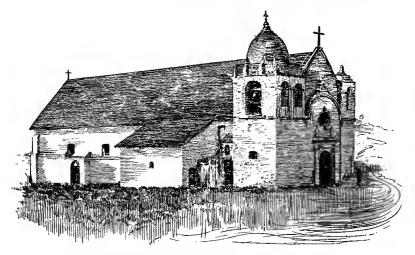


MEXICAN CARRETA. (From a Photograph.)

In the old days every one seemed to live out-doors.... We travelled as much as possible on horseback. Only old people or invalids cared to use the slow cart, or carreta....²⁶⁷

Another gives an incident of trade:

One afternoon a horseman...came to our ranch, and told my father that a great [American] ship...was about to sail... into San Pablo... to bny hides and tallow.... By working very hard we had a large number of hides and many pounds of



OLD SPANISH MISSION-CHURCH AND RESIDENCE OF SAN CARLOS.

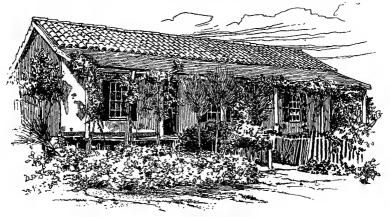
(From a Photograph.)

tallow ready on the beach when the ship appeared.... The captain looked over the hides, and then asked my father to...go to the vessel. Mother was much afraid to let him go, as we all thought the Americans were not to be trusted unless we knew them well.... Father said, however, that it was all right: he went and put on his best clothes, gay with silver braid, and we all cried, and kissed him good-by, while mother...had us all kneel down and pray for father's safe return. Then we felt safe.

He came back the next day, bringing four boat-loads of cloth, axes, shoes, fish-lines, and many new things. There were two grind-

stones and some cheap jewelry. After the ship sailed my mother and sisters began to cut out new dresses, which the Indian women sewed.... One of the Morgans heard that we had the grindstones, and sent and bought them with two fine horses.²⁶⁸

Americans in Texas.—By 1833, twenty thousand Americans, mostly from the South, had pressed into the Mexican province of Texas, and were raising cotton, herding cattle, and trading. Meanwhile, Mexico had become independent



OLD SPANISH ADOBE HOUSE.
(From a Photograph.)

of Spain, as we had become independent of England, and like us, too, had become a republic. But the new government was very badly carried on, and did not in the least suit the Americans, who revolted against it. For the spirit of this revolt, let us turn to the diary of David Crockett, a Tennessee frontiersman, who had joined the Texans at the *Alamo*, the fortress of San Antonio. He says:

I found Colonel Bowie, of Louisiana, in the fortress, a man celebrated for having been in more desperate personal conflicts than

any other in the country, and whose name has been given to a knife of a peculiar construction... A few years ago he went on a hunting excursion into the prairies of Texas, with nine companions. They were attacked by a roving party of Comanches, about two hundred strong, and such was the science of the colonel in this sort of wild warfare, that after killing a considerable number of the enemy, he fairly frightened the remainder from the field of action...

I write this on the nineteenth of February, 1836.... We are all in high spirits, though we are rather short of provisions, for men who have appetites that could digest anything but oppression. . . .

February 23.—Early this morning the enemy came in sight, marching in regular order, and displaying their strength to the greatest advantage.... We have had a large national flag made ... with a large white star, of five points, in the center, and between the points the letters TEXAS.

March 3. — We have given over all hopes of receiving assistance

from Goliad. . . . Colonel Travis [the commander] harangued the garrison, and concluded by exhorting them, in case the enemy should carry the fort, to fight to the last gasp, and render their victory even more serious to them than to us. This was followed by three cheers. . . .

March 5.—Pop, pop, pop! Boom, boom! throughout the day.—No time for memorandums now.—Go ahead!—Liberty and independence forever!²⁴⁴

Here ends Colonel Crockett's manuscript. At daylight, on



SAM HOUSTON.

the 6th of March, but six Texans were left alive in the Alamo; these were captured by the Mexican general, Santa Anna, and

promised protection; but Santa Anna shortly had them put to death. Among these was David Crockett.

A short war followed, ended by the battle of San Jacinto, in which "seven hundred and fifty citizens... attack upwards of twelve hundred veterans.... In twenty minutes... [Santa Anna] himself is a prisoner; the camp and baggage all taken; and the loss of the victors, six killed and twenty wounded." 245

Houston was their leader: Houston, "the pupil of Jackson," who had himself lived much with the Cherokee Indians, before he became a Texan ranger. By this battle, Texas became independent, and Houston was chosen President.

STUDY ON 16.

1. Trace in green the Santa Fé trail. (See preceding lesson.) 2. What did the Santa Fe traders sell in Santa Fe? 3. What did they bring back? 4. What made this trade very difficult? 5. What made it very desirable? 6. Who made the first settlements in California, Texas, New Mexico, and when? (See index.) 7. How could people make a living in California? 8. What was the relation of the Indians and the settlers? 9. What was used for money there? 10. How could an American trading vessel get to California? 11. What advantages had the early pioneers in California over the early pioneers in Ohio or Michigan? 12. Why should people from the South go into Texas, and people from the North go into Oregon? 13. How was the battle of the Alamo like the battle of Lexington? 14. Describe the national flag of the Texans. 15. What sort of men were the Texans, judging by Houston, Crockett, and Bowie? 16. Where had they got their training? 17. What act of treachery did Santa Anna commit at the Alamo? 18. Why should Americans be proud of the heroes of the Alamo? 19. By 1840, what parts of the Spanish West had Americans entered? 20. Why had they gone into each of these parts? 21. Why would Houston make a good President for the Texan Republic?

Supplementary Reading.—Bret Harte's The Miracle of Padre Junipero. Domenech's Texas. Stories of Old New Spain, by Thomas A. Janvier (New Mexico and Arizona). Californiana and Ranch and Mission Days in Alta California, in Century Magazine, December, 1890. Helen Fiske Jackson's Ramona.

17. THE MEXICAN WAR; THE WINNING OF THE SPANISH WEST, 1846.

POLK, President.

To-morrow, three hundred wilderness-worn dragoons, in shabby and patched clothing, who have long been on short allowance of food, set forth to conquer ... a Pacific empire; to take a leap in the dark of a thousand miles of wild plains and mountains, only known in vague reports.

Our success — we never doubt it!...shall give us for boundary, that world-line of a mighty ocean's coast,... and shall girdle the earth with civilization.—Philip St. George Cooke, Commander of Mormon Battalion.²⁷¹

The Annexation of Texas.—Texas was now free from Mexico, but was not yet a part of the United States. Twice the Texans asked to be admitted to the Union, but were twice refused. As Clay said in one of his Senate speeches, "Annexation, and war with Mexico, are identical." Then John Quincy Adams and a large party opposed it because, as they said:

A large portion of the country, ... have solemnly... determined that... the annexation of Texas to this Union... shall be speedily carried into execution; and that, by this admission of new Slave territory and Slave States, ... the Slave-holding power in the Government shall be secured and riveted. 272

On the other hand, Southerners said:

Let one more Northern State be admitted, and . . . the balance of interests is gone . . . forever. Let the South stop at the Sabine, while the North may spread unchecked beyond the Rocky Mountains, and the Southern scale must kick the beam. 273

We may see what the feeling in Texas itself was from these words of Sam Houston, as he retired from the presidency of Texas:

If the United States shall...ask her to come into her great family of states, you will then have other conductors,... to lead you into the beloved land from which we have sprung—the land of the broad stripes and bright stars.... If we remain an independent nation,...the Pacific alone will bound the mighty march of our race and our empire.²⁷⁴

Under President Polk, Texas was at last annexed.

The Opening of the Mexican War. — The question now arose as to how much was meant by Texas; the Texans themselves claimed to the Rio Grande, while the Mexicans said they had no right beyond the Nueces. In 1846, President Polk ordered General Taylor, then commanding in Texas, to take his army into this disputed strip of land and hold it for the United States. The Mexicans also began to mass their troops at the frontier, and to cross the Rio Grande. This brought on a skirmish between the Americans and Mexicans, and the Mexican War had begun. Of its causes the Mexicans said:

The ... ambition of the United States, favored by our weakness, caused it... From the days of their independence... they desired... to become the absolute owners of almost all this continent... The North American Republic has already absorbed territories pertaining to Great Britain, France, Spain, and Mexico....

Among the citizens themselves, of the nation which has made war on us, there have been many who defended the cause of the Mexican Republic...a Clay, an Adams, a Webster.²⁷⁵

The opening scene of the war was on the Texas frontier, in 1846, but Taylor soon pushed his way into north-eastern Mexico. Troops were sent under *General Scott* to attack the city of Mexico, and under General Kearney to attack or seize Santa Fé.

The Mormon Battalion and the California Trail.—Among those who joined Kearney was a young Missourian, named Cooke. Kearney had easily gained possession of Santa Fé, and sent Cooke with a battalion of Mormons on to make a wagon road through Arizona to California, by which his troops and supplies could follow. In Cooke's journal of this enterprise we read:

Nov. 9th [1846]. — In six days, resting one, the battalion could only make forty miles. . . . This slow progress was over very bad ground, . . . deep sand, steep hills and rocks . . .; the men, nearly all of them, laboring in aid of the weak teams to move the wagons. . . .

[The Journal continues with entries like this through the months of November, December, and the half of January.]

January 16th.—... Camping two nights, in succession, without water, the battalion made in forty-eight hours, ... fifty-six miles.... A great many of my men are wholly without shoes, and use every expedient, such as rawhide moccasins, ... and even wrapping their feet in pieces of woolen and cotton cloth.

January 18th. — Some of the men did not find strength to reach camp before daylight this morning.... They staggered as they marched, as they did yesterday.... I went through the companies this morning; they were eating their last four ounces of flour; of sugar and coffee, there has been none for some weeks....

[On the 30th of January they reached the mission of San Diego.] We rode on into a valley . . .; its smooth sod was in sunlight and shade; a gentle brook wound through it; the joyous lark, the gay blackbird, the musical bluebird, . . . warbled together the evening song; it seemed a sweet domestic scene which must have touched the hearts of my far, rude wanderers. 276

This Mormon Battalion afterwards made its way into Utah, where its members met other Mormons, and helped to found Salt Lake City.

The Bear-flag Revolt.—But when General Kearney followed the Mormon Battalion into California, he found it already ours. The American settlers in the Sacramento valley had been frightened by the following proclamation, put forth by the Mexican governor of California:

Being informed that a multitude of foreigners... are residing in the district, and ... have made themselves owners of real property [land], this being a right belonging only to citizens; I have concluded [to advise]... those foreigners... that they will be subject, unless they retire... from the country, to be expelled from it whenever the Government may find it convenient.²⁷⁷

The events which followed are described in a letter written by the leader of the Bear-flag revolt:

Information had reached the upper end of Sacramento valley . . . that two hundred Spaniards were on their way up the valley for the purpose of destroying our wheat, burning our houses, and driving off our cattle. Aroused by appearances so shocking, a very few of us resolved to meet our enemy. . . . The two hundred Spaniards proved to be a band of horses (about two hundred) guarded by a Spanish officer and fifteen men, being driven up . . . for the declared and express purpose of being mounted with soldiers and being sent back to enforce said proclamation. In self-defence, those few men ... seized the moment and pursued those horses, captured their guard and drove the horses to the neighborhood of Captain Fremont's camp. Still . . . we pursued our way night and day, adding to our number a few true hearts to the number of thirty-four men, until the dawn of the morning ... when we charged upon the fortress [of Sonoma], and captured eighteen prisoners . . . [raising a rose-colored flag, with a bear and a star]. We have strengthened our position and continue to hold it, under the authority of twentyfour well-armed men, and (as we have good right to believe) the will of the people.... This day we proclaim California a Republic....

It is our . . . earnest desire to . . . unite our adopted and rescued country, to the country of our early home. 278

The United States officers stationed at Monterey, not having heard that the United States was at war with Mexico, refused aid to these settlers; but *Colonel Fremont*, who happened to be in California on one of his exploring expeditions, and who knew that the government was desirous of getting California, gave them aid, and a short war followed which ended in the independence of California.

FIRST STUDY ON 17.

1. When was Texas an independent country? 2. Why were many of our people anxious to have Texas annexed? 3. Why were others opposed to it? 4. What is meant by the southern scale kicking the beam? 5. At the time when Texas was annexed, how many free states were there in the Union? 6. How many slave states? (See list of events for these two questions.) 7. How did the Texans feel about annexation, and why should they feel so about it? 8. What quarrel led to the Mexican War, and who were the parties to it? 9. How did we come to have anything to do with this quarrel? 10. What did the Mexicans think was the cause of the war? 11. What territories had we already absorbed from Great Britain? 12. From France? 13. From Mexico?

SECOND STUDY ON 17.

1. In what directions did we send our armies in the Mexican War?
2. Why should the Southerners and the Western people send more volunteers to this war than the Northern and Eastern states?
3. Why was the march of the Mormon battalion valuable?
4. Why did this battalion have to suffer so much?
5. What was the cause of the Bear-flag revolt?
6. What cause had the Mexicans to find fault with the Americans?
7. What does the Bear-flag revolt show as to the number of people in California?
8. What did those who revolted wish to do with California?

18. THE MEXICAN WAR; INVASIONS OF NORTH-ERN AND CENTRAL MEXICO, 1846-1847.

POLK, President.

And on—still on our columns kept
Through walls of flame its withering way;
Where fell the dead, the living stept,
Still charging on the guns which swept
The slippery streets of Monterey.²⁷⁹

Buena Vista. — Meanwhile by the hard-fought battles of Monterey and Buena Vista, General Taylor had seized on northeastern Mexico. The sort of fighting in northern Mexico may be seen from the description of the end of the fight at Buena Vista, as given by one who was engaged:

The battle had been raging some time..., and was setting against us, when General Taylor, with Colonel [Jefferson] Davis and others, arrived on the field. Several regiments . . . were in full retreat.... Bragg, with almost superhuman energy, was sustaining the brunt of the fight. Many officers of distinction had fallen. Colonel Davis rode forward to examine the position of the enemy, and concluding that the best way to arrest our fugitives would be to make a bold demonstration, he resolved at once to attack the enemy, there posted in force, immediately in front.... It was a resolution hold almost to rashness.... With a handful of Indiana volunteers, . . . and his own regiment, he advanced at double-quick time, firing as he advanced. His own brave fellows fell fast under the rolling musketry of the enemy, but their rapid and fatal volleys carried dismay and death into the adverse ranks. A deep ravine separated the combatants. Leaping into it, the Mississippians soon appeared on the other side, and with a shout that was heard over the battle-field, they poured in a well-directed fire, and rushed upon the enemy. Their deadly aim and wild enthusiasm were irresistible. The Mexicans fled in confusion to their reserves, and Davis seized the commanding position they had occupied.²⁸⁰

The Taking of Mexico. — While General Taylor was winning Monterey and Buena Vista, *General Scott* was advancing on Mexico by way of Vera Cruz. We quote from his own accounts:

The city of Vera Cruz, and its castle, San Juan de Ulloa, were both strongly garrisoned. Santa Anna, relying upon them to hold out till the . . . yellow fever . . . became rife, had returned to his capital, and was busy collecting . . . troops . . . from every quarter of the republic . . .

The governor of the city, who was also governor of the castle, was duly summoned to surrender. The refusal was no sooner received than a fire on the walls and forts was opened... By the 24th, the landing of additional heavy guns... gave us all the battering power needed, and the next day... the whole was in "awful activity."... On the 27th terms of surrender [were agreed upon].... The city and castle; the republic's principal port of foreign commerce; five thousand prisoners, with a greater number of small arms; four hundred pieces of ordnance and large stores of ammunition, were the great results of the first twenty days after our landing, and all at the very small loss... of sixty-four officers and men killed or wounded.

[From Vera Cruz Scott marched on the city of Mexico; on entering the mountains, he was met by Santa Anna, whom he defeated, and by August he was entering the valley of the city of Mexico.]

Descending the long western slope, a magnificent basin, with, [Mexico] near its centre, . . . first broke upon our enchanted view. Probably not a man in the column failed to say to himself: That splendid city soon shall be ours!

[But Mexico contains two hundred thousand inhabitants, and is a walled city standing] on a slight swell of ground, near the centre of an irregular basin, and is girdled with a ditch in its greater extent—a navigable canal of great breadth and depth—very difficult to bridge in the presence of an enemy...; having eight entrances or gates...each of which we found defended by... strong works....

An isolated mound... of great height, strongly fortified to the top... and flooded around the base by the season of rain and sluices from the lakes... commands the principal approach to the city from the east.... [Another road led into the city from the east through] a village at a fortified bridge...; but on the other side of the bridge, we should have found ourselves... on a narrow causeway, flanked on the right and left by water or boggy ground.

Thinking the eastern approaches too hard, Scott turned to the south; where again were fortified villages, bridges, convents, marshes, and hard battles to fight. After one of the hardest of these, *Molino del Rey*, Robert E. Lee, Beauregard, and other officers were sent to examine carefully the southern entrances to the city. After their return, it was resolved to enter the city on the west; but it was first necessary to take the castle of *Chapultepec*, on the heights commanding the approach.

The advance of our...men,...was unwavering, over rocks, chasms, and mines, and under the hottest fire of cannon and musketry.... The enemy were steadily driven from shelter to shelter.... At length the ditch and wall of the main work were reached; the scaling ladders were brought up and planted by the storming parties; some of the daring spirits, first in the assault, were cast down—killed or wounded; but... streams of heroes followed, and...our...colors [were] flung out from the upper walls...²⁸¹

The troops now pressed into the city along the road thus opened, and took possession of it; soon after, the arrangement of terms of peace began; and in February, 1848, Mexico un-

willingly accepted very nearly her present northern boundary, in return for \$15,000,000 and peace.

The Opposing Armies. — Ulysses S. Grant, then a young officer with General Taylor, says of the two armies engaged in this war:

The victories in Mexico were, in every instance, over vastly superior numbers.... [In our army,] every officer, from the highest to the lowest, was educated in his profession, not at West Point necessarily, but in the camp, in garrison, and many of them in Indian wars.... A better army, man for man, probably never faced an enemy than the one commanded by General Taylor in the earliest two engagements of the Mexican war....

The Mexican army of that day was hardly an [army].... The private soldier was picked up... when wanted; his consent was not asked; he was poorly clothed, worse fed, and seldom paid.... With all this I have seen as brave stands made by some of these men as I have ever seen made....²⁸²

STUDY ON 18.

1. Why should we be proud of the Mississippi and Indiana volunteers at Buena Vista? 2. What reasons had they for making such a firm stand? 3. What good did the fighting in north-eastern Mexico do? 4. Why should Santa Anna think that Vera Cruz would be safe if it were not taken before the yellow fever broke out? 5. Why was it necessary for Scott to take Vera Cruz before going on to Mexico? 6. Make a list of the ways in which Mexico was defended. 7. Of what use to Scott was the battle of Chapultepec? 8. What were the difficulties of getting into Chapultepec? 9. Of what use was it to get into the city of Mexico? 10. What advantages had the Mexicans in the Mexican part of the war? 11. What advantages had the Americans? 12. What states or territories have been formed from the land won by this war?

GENERAL STUDY ON MEXICAN WAR.

(See list of events, 1846-1847, and reference maps of Mexico and the West.) 1. Take your Outline Map for this period, and mark in red the

Mexican victories of the war. 2. Mark in blue the American victories. (Count the battles about Mexico as one.) 3. What were the seats of this war? 4. What were the Mexicans fighting for? 5. What were we fighting for? 6. Why should we not be as prond of this war as of the Revolution? 7. What was the original territory of the United States, and what great additions have been made to it? 8. When was the northern boundary of Mexico made exactly what it now is? (See index, Gadsden Purchase.)

Supplementary Reading. — Whittier's Angels of Buena Vista.

19. GOLD IN CALIFORNIA.

⊸ಂ¦≎:∽—

POLK, TAYLOR, AND FILLMORE, Presidents.

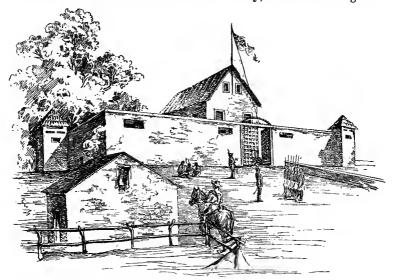
A tale it was of lands of gold That lay toward the sun. Wild wing'd and fleet It spread among the swift Missouri's bold Unbridled men, and reached to where Ohio roll'd.

-Joaquin Miller, in By the Sundown Seas.283

The Gold Fever.—In the summer of 1848, gold was discovered at Sutter's Fort. The military commander of California thus describes the effect of this discovery:

We arrived [at Sutter's Fort July 2d]. Along the whole route mills were lying idle, fields of wheat were open to cattle and horses, houses vacant and farms going to waste... Captain Sutter had only two mechanics in his employ (a wagon maker and a blacksmith), whom he was then paying ten dollars a day. [Captain Sutter is a Swiss immigrant, who some time ago, came into California with a small party of men and built this fort which bears his name.] On the fifth resumed the journey...to...the Lower Mines, or Mormon diggings. The hill-sides were thickly strewn with canvas tents and bush arbors, [in which the miners live].... A small gutter not more than...two or three feet deep was pointed

out to me as the one where two meu...had, a short time before, obtained \$17,000 worth of gold.... Hundreds of similar ravines, to all appearances, are as yet untouched.... Flour is already worth at Sutter's, \$36 a barrel, and soon will be fifty. Unless large quantities of breadstuffs reach the country, much suffering will



SUTTER'S FORT. (From Revere's "Tour of Duty.")

occur; bnt...it is believed the merchants will bring from Chili and Oregon a plentiful supply for the coming winter.... I was surprised to learn that... no thefts or robberies have been committed in the gold district.²⁸⁴

As fast as the news reached them, Oregonians, Mexicans, Sandwich Islanders, Americans from Maine to Texas, Europeans, Chinamen, and Australians, started for California; and before the close of 1849 there were at least a hundred thousand men in this new territory. These were the *Forty-Niners*.

The Way to California. — A pamphlet of directions written in 1848 describes the following routes:

From New York to San Francisco, round Cape Horn, 130 days, and \$350. From New York to San Francisco, via Panama,



A FORTY-NINER.

37 days, and \$420. Besides these, a route across Mexico; the best route, "were it not for the danger (or rather certainty) of being robbed on the road."

The other route to the gold mines was by the old Trail to Santa Fé; thence into California by the road made by the Mormon Battalion. One of the immigrants of '49 notes in his journal:

July 1. — The desert over which we were to pass . . . was an arid plain, without a drop of water, or a blade of grass.... Slowly, but steadily, we walked on. The night closed in upon hundreds of wagons.... (From Contemporary Descriptions.) All walked who could, in order . . . to save their cattle; and as the night wore heavily

on, all sounds of mirth . . . ceased, and the creaking of wheels and the howling of wolves alone were heard. . . .

... Mothers might be seen wading through the deep dust or heavy sand of the deserts, or climbing mountain steeps, leading their poor children by the hand; or the once strong man, pale, emaciated by hunger and fatigue, carrying upon his back his feeble infant, crying for water and nourishment, and appeasing a ravenous appetite from the carcass of a dead horse or mule. . . . 285

Early Government in California. - California was ours, and was now filling with people so fast, that she wished to become a state. But the old question came up again, "with slavery or without?" And while the men of the free states were debating this question in Congress with the men of the slave states, California had no government at all. So the Californians had to think what to do for themselves; for something had to be done, and done quickly. As we read in letters of the time, "Large portions of the population, lazy and addicted to gambling . . . support themselves by stealing cattle and horses. . . . Wanted [a justice of the peace] . . . who is not afraid to do his duty, and who knows what his duty is." "American desperadoes . . . commit . . . assaults on the native population." ²⁸⁶ As a result of all this, at a mass-meeting in Sacramento [Sutter's Fort] in January, 1849, the following resolutions were passed:

Whereas, The frequency . . . with which robberies and murders have of late been committed have deeply impressed us with the necessity of having some regular form of government, with laws and officers to enforce the observance of those laws;

And whereas, The discovery ... of gold has attracted ... an immense immigration from all parts of the world, ... thus adding to the present state of confusion ...;

Therefore . . .

Resolved, That in the opinion of this meeting it is . . . very necessary, that the inhabitants of California should form a . . . Government [of their own for the time being] to enact laws and appoint officers . . . , until . . . Congress see fit to extend the laws of the United States over this Territory.

Resolved, . . . That we recommend to the inhabitants of California to hold meetings and elect delegates to represent them in the convention to be assembled . . . for the purpose of . . . preparing a form of government to be submitted to the people for their sanction.²⁸⁷

During the course of the year, such a convention met, and formed a constitution for the state of California, in which it was

declared that California should not allow slavery within her borders, and with this constitution California was finally admitted to the Union.

Even up in the mines a Forty-Niner tells us:

When a man was arrested for stealing, or anything of that sort, a jury of twelve men being selected, they would take their seats on the logs or the ground, listen to the case and pronounce their judgment, . . . when the verdict would be acted upon without delay. A common penalty was to shave one-half the head, give the offender a few vigorous lashes, and bid him leave the diggings and never return, under penalty of death.²⁸⁸

STUDY ON 19.

1. Why should flour be worth so much at Sutter's? 2. Why should men bring it from Chili and Oregon rather than from the Mississippi valley? 3. Why should the merchants be willing to ship it so far? 4. Why should Captain Sutter have to pay his blacksmith and carpenter so much money? 5. Why would a man rather go to the mines than stay at home and work, when he could certainly earn so much money by staying? 6. Why should men care so much for gold? 7. Make a list of the things that they must run the risk of in the early California days to get it. 8. Why should no thefts or robberies be at first committed in the gold district? 9. Why should there be so many of them after the country became full of people? 10. Why was it right for the people to judge wrong-doers themselves? 11. How was the Sacramento mass-meeting like a New England town-meeting? 12. How did the miners manage to make their judgments fair? 13. How had it happened that Sutter's Fort had turned into the city of Sacramento in one year?

Supplementary Reading. — The First Emigrant Train to California, by one of the emigrants. Century, November, 1890; see also following numbers of the Century. J. D. B. Stillman's Seeking the Golden Fleece, . . . San Francisco, 1877. A. Delano's Life on the Plains and among the Diggings. Walter Colton's The Discovery of Gold in California, in Library of American Literature, V. 464.

20. LIST OF IMPORTANT EVENTS FROM 1783-1850.

A. 1783-1789. — The United States under the government of the CON-FEDERATION formed by the thirteen original states; of these, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Pennsylvania are free states, having emancipated their slaves before the close of the Revolution. The others are still slave states.

1784. — Virginia grants her western lands to the Continental Congress.

Rhode Island and Connecticut begin to emancipate their slaves by law.

 $1785. - \mathbf{M} \text{assachusetts}$ surrenders claims to her western lands to the Congress.

American coinage established, with the dollar for the unit, as planned by Hamilton, Jefferson, and Gouvernour Morris.

1786.—Connecticut surrenders her western lands to the Confederation, except some lands in Ohio, known as the *Connecticut Reserve*, which she gave up in 1800.

Shay's rebellion in western Massachusetts; an insurrection of poor farmers who are dissatisfied with the government.

Experiments with steamboats begin.

1787. — Constitutional Convention meets in Philadelphia and frames the CONSTITUTION. (See p. 203.)

Congress passes the Ordinance of '87. (See p. 200.)

Federalist and Anti-Federalist parties formed. (See p. 209.)

South Carolina cedes her western lands to the Confederation.

Attempt by one General Wilkinson, to get Kentucky to secede from the Confederation, and ally herself to Spain.

1788.—Georgia, Connecticut, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina, New Hampshire, Virginia, and New York adopt the Constitution.

Georgia cedes her western lands to the United States.

Settlement begins at Marietta, Ohio.

Alexander Hamilton, James Madison, and John Jay publish the Federalist in defence of the Constitution.

B. 1789-1797. — Administrations of WASHINGTON; elected by unanimous choice of both parties.

John Adams, Vice-President.

1789. — April 30, Washington inaugurated as President. (See p. 211.)

North Carolina agrees to the Constitution.

COTTON begins to be cultivated as a crop in the Southern States.

1790. — Rhode Island agrees to the Constitution.

War in Ohio between the new settlers and the Indians.

North Carolina cedes her western lands to the United States.

COTTON MANUFACTURES begin in Rhode Island.

1791. — Vermont admitted as a free state.

Generals Harmar and St. Clair fighting Indians in Ohio.

1792. — Kentucky admitted as a slave state.

Capt. Robert Gray in the Columbia explores and names the Columbia River.

1793. — Eli Whitney invents the cotton-gin, a machine for rapidly cleaning cotton from the cotton-seed.

Alexander Mackenzie, sent out by the English North-west Fur Company to explore towards the Pacific; first white man to cross the Rocky Mountains; discovers the *Fraser River*, believes it to be the Columbia.

1794. — Whiskey insurrection near Pittsburg, on account of a tax on whiskey; put down by the government.

Ohio Indians defeated by General Anthony Wayne.

1795. — Jay, in behalf of the United States, concludes a treaty with Great Britain for the surrender of the north-western forts which the British still held, for the payment of American claims, and other matters. A treaty made with Spain, allowing the free use of the Mississippi to both countries. (See p. 197.)

1796. — Tennessee admitted as a slave state.

C. 1797-1801. — Administration of John Adams, the Federalist candidate.

Thomas Jefferson, Vice-President.

1798. — Navy department organized. Short war with France. Alien and sedition laws passed; by the former, any suspicious foreigner could be arrested; by the latter, any citizen who should speak evil of the government. Both laws greatly disliked, and the Federalist party begins to lose its power. Both laws repealed.



REFERENCE MAP OF UNITED STATES WEST OF MISSISSIPPI RIVER.

Facing p. 283.

Steam-engines begin to take the place of horse-power in America.

1799. — Death of Washington.

1800. — The capital removed from Philadelphia to Washington.

Spain cedes Louisiana back to France.

D. 1801-1809. — Administrations of Thomas Jefferson, the Anti-Federalist candidate.

Aaron Burr, Vice-President, 1801-1805. George Clinton, Vice-President, 1805-1809.

1801. — War with Tripoli, to put down the pirates she sent out to trouble commerce. Peace made in 1805, stopping piracy.

1802. — Ohio admitted as a free state.

Georgia cedes to the United States her western lands.

1803. — Purchase of Louisiana. (See p. 215.)

Fort Dearborn, on the present site of Chicago, built as a frontier-post.

1804–1806. — Expedition of Lewis and Clarke. (See p. 217.) Government sends out General Pike to explore the Mississippi, Great Osage, Red, and Arkansas rivers to their sources.

1805. — Aaron Burr accused of conspiring to set up a government of his own in Kentucky and Tennessee.

1806-1807. — War of blockades. Congress passes the *Embargo Act*. (See p. 230, 237.)

Henry Clay enters Congress; famous for his speeches and political writings.

1807.—Robert Fulton makes the first successful steamboat; its first trip from New York to Albany.

1809. — Non-Intercourse Act passed. (See p. 230.)

E. 1809-1817. — Administrations of James Madison, candidate of Anti-Federalist party.

George Clinton, Vice-President, 1809–1813. Elbridge Gerry, Vice-President, 1813–1817.

1810. — John Jacob Astor founds the Pacific Fur Company, and sends out men and means to found Astoria.

1811.—General W. H. Harrison, Governor of the North-west Territory, defeats the Indians under their famous leader Tecumseh, at Tippecanoe.

1812-1815. - War of 1812.

John C. Calhoun enters Congress.

1812.—The Constitution takes the British ship Guerriere. (See p. 232.) Unsuccessful attempts of Americans to invade Canada. Other successful naval engagements. American successes; **Decatur** and Bainbridge, famous captains.

Louisiana admitted as a slave state; the remaining part of the Louisiana purchase known as the Missouri Territory. Hull surrenders Detroit to the British.

1813. — Massacre of River Raisin. (See p. 233.) Unsuccessful attempts to invade Canada. Perry's victory on Lake Erie in September; other naval victories, under Captains Lawrence and Porter. (See p. 234.) British whaling trade in Pacific broken up. American privateers injure British commerce. (See p. 235.)

Daniel Webster enters Congress; famous for his speeches.

Edward Everett begins his work as preacher and orator.

After Perry's victory, General Harrison invades Canada, and at the Battle of the Thames recovers possession of Detroit and Michigan. Astoria taken by the British. British ships blockade Atlantic coast.

Massacre at Fort Mims by the Creek Indians; Creek War begins in the South-west under General Jackson.

1814.—Creek War continued; ended by Jackson in eastern Alabama; Creeks surrender most of their lands. Maine coast controlled by British fleet. British enter Washington, burn the Capitol and other public buildings. Hotly contested and indecisive battles of Fort Erie and Lundy's Lane near Niagara. Continued naval successes. Jackson takes Pensacola, which had been friendly to the British. Hartford Convention. (See p. 238.) Treaty of Peace. (See p. 236.)

1815.—In early January, battle of New Orleans. A second victorious. (See p. 235.) Decatur brings the Barbary pirates once more to terms.

1816. — Indiana admitted as a free state.

F. 1817-1825. — Administrations of James Monroe, the Anti-Federalist candidate, almost unanimously elected. Era of good feeling.

Daniel D. Tompkins, Vice-President.

1817. — Mississippi admitted as a slave state.

Erie Canal from Albany to Buffalo begun.

William Cullen Bryant begins his work as a poet and editor; writes largely on American subjects.

Indian war in Florida with the Seminoles.

1818-1846. — Agitation of the Oregon Question. (See p. 256.)

1818. — Illinois admitted as a free state.

Spaniards and Indians at war with the Georgians; Seminole War. General Jackson seizes on Pensacola.

1819.—As a result of the Seminole War, and Jackson's successes, Spain agrees to sell Florida to the United States for \$5,000,000, and a clear claim to Texas.

Washington Irving begins his work as a historian, novelist, and descriptive writer, writing on American subjects.

Alabama admitted as a slave state.

First steam-vessel crosses the Atlantic, sailing from New York under a Connecticut captain.

1820. — Missouri Compromise | passed. (See p. 241.) Maine admitted as a free state.

1821. — Missouri admitted as a slave state.

James Fenimore Cooper begins his work as a novelist, basing his stories on Indian and frontier life.

Mexico declares herself independent of Spain. Americans, under the lead of the Missourian, *Moses Austin*, obtain permission to establish a colony in Texas.

1823. — George Stephenson, of England, builds the first railroad locomotive in the world.

President Monroe puts forth in his annual message the doctrine that America should not interfere in European affairs, that no more European

pean colonies should be planted in America, and that the United States should not stand idly by and see any nation of Europe try to deprive any nation in North or South America of their independence. This is known as the *Monroe Doctrine*.

Gaslights begin to come into common use.

1824.—The **Protective Tariff** begins to be recognized as a part of the policy of the government; the revenue obtained is applied to making roads and other internal improvements.

G. 1825–1829. — Administration of John Quincy Adams; confusion of parties.

John C. Calhoun, Vice-President.

1825. — Georgia expels the Cherokees.

1826.—By this date, English and American fur-trappers had begun to penetrate California. Quarrels of Americans and Mexicans in Texas.

1827.—First railroads started in America near Boston and near Albany. (See p. 251.) Nathaniel Hawthorne begins his work as a writer of romances, basing them chiefly on the old New England life.

Edgar A. Poe begins his work as a poet and story-teller.

1828.—John G Whittier begins his work as a poet, writing about American subjects.

H. 1829-1837. — Administrations of Andrew Jackson, the candidate of the Democratic party, the successor of the old Anti-Federalist party. Opposite party begins to take the name of Whigs.

John C. Calhoun, Vice-President, 1829–1833. Martin Van Buren, Vice-President, 1833–1837.

1829. — Mexico emancipates her slaves. William Lloyd Garrison begins the Abolitionist agitation in the United States. (See p. 243.)

Post-Office Department organized as a separate part of the government.

1830. — General removal of officeholders by Jackson to make room for men of his own party, in accordance with the doctrine that to the victors belong the spoils. Oliver Wendell Holmes and Henry W. Longfellow begin their work as poets and prose-writers, using American subjects. **Nullification** agitation begins. Webster and Haynes' famous debate on the subject.

1832. — Nullification Convention in South Carolina. (See p. 238.)

Black Hawk War. (See p. 254.)

1831. — William Lloyd Garrison establishes the Liberator.

1833. — Clay's compromise tariff bill passed, and the South for the time being, satisfied.

1834. — Methodist, Presbyterian, and Jesuit missionaries in the Oregon country. (See p. 260.)

McCormick takes out patent for the reaping machine.

1835-1842. — Seminole War.

George Bancroft begins his work as a writer of American history.

Ralph Waldo Emerson begins work as a writer.

1836. — Arkansas admitted as a slave state.

Texas proclaims her entire independence of Mexico; Houston victorious in the battle of San Jacinto against Santa Anna, is made president of this new republic. (See p. 265.)

John Eriksson invents screw-propeller; steam war-vessels take the place of sailing war-vessels.

1837. — Michigan admitted as a free state.

Wendell Phillips begins his work as an orator.

I. 1837-1841. — Administration of Martin Van Buren, candidate of the Democratic party.

Richard M. Johnson, Vice-President.

1837.—Riot at Alton; attack of a pro-slavery mob on an anti-slavery editor. Many riots on account of the slavery question from this time on.

Temperance societies begin to be formed.

1839-1840. — France and England acknowledge the independence of Texas.

1838. — William H. Prescott begins his work as a historian, writing on subjects connected with American history.

J. 1841-1845. — Administration of William H. Harrison, candidate of the Whig party.

> John Tyler, Vice-President. Harrison dying in 1841, Tyler becomes President for rest of the term.

1841-1842. — Regular emigration from the Mississippi valley into Oregon and California. (See p. 260.) John C. Fremont sent out by the government to survey the best route over the Rocky Mountains.

James Russell Lowell begins his work as a poet and essayist, writing very generally on American subjects.

Maine boundary settled by the Ashburton treaty. Tariffs made higher. 1844. — Mormons, driven out of older settlements, start for Utah.

First successful electric **Telegraph** line in the world built from Baltimore to Washington, by **Samuel F. B. Morse**. (See p. 252.)

K. 1845-1849. — Administration of James K. Polk, candidate of the Democratic party.

George M. Dallas, Vice-President.

1845.—Florida admitted as a slave state. Texas admitted as a slave state. (See p. 267.)

Fremont sent ont on another surveying expedition to find the shortest and best way for a railroad to the Pacific coast.

1846.—Iowa admitted as a free state. Oregon boundary fixed by treaty with Great Britain as at present.

Sewing machine invented by Elias Howe.

1846-1848. - Mexican War.

Agassiz begins his scientific work in America.

1846. — March, General Taylor ordered to take possession of the disputed territory in Texas; skirmish between his men and the Mexicans at Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma. War declared by the United States. Taylor crosses the Rio Grande, and begins the invasion of Mexico. General Kearney ordered to New Mexico; Santa Fé surrenders, and a military government established over New Mexico and Arizona. The Mormon Battal-

ion sent to make a road into California. (See p. 269.) Bear-flag revolt in California, and California falls into the hands of the United States. (See p. 270.) General Taylor wins the battle of *Monterey*.

1847.—Taylor's victory at Buena Vista. (See p. 272.) Scott's expedition into Mexico. Takes city of Mexico, after the battles of Vera Cruz, Cerro Gordo, Contreras, Molino del Rey, and Chapultepec. (See p. 273.)

Massacre of Dr. Whitman by the Oregon Indians, who believe him to have dangerous magical power.

1848.—Peace concluded between the United States and Mexico. (See p. 275.)

Gold discovered in California. (See p. 276.) Wisconsin admitted as a free state.

L. 1849-1853. — Administration of Zachary Taylor, candidate of the Whig party.

Millard A. Fillmore, Vice-President. Taylor dying in 1850, Fillmore becomes President for rest of the term.

1849. — Organization of the Department of the Interior, to provide for the management of the new territories.

FIRST STUDY ON LIST AND MAPS.

1. Compare the territory of the United States in 1783 and in 1850. 2. At what time and by what means had each great addition to the original territory been made? (Mark and name these additions on your Ontline Map for this period.) 3. What part of this territory had been already erected into states in 1850? 4. Distinguish this part by light cross-lines of blue. 5. Write a list of the thirteen original states, and after these add the other states, in the order of their admission; write after each the date of its admission, and underline the slave states with black; underline also with black those of the tbirteen original states which were still slave states in 1850. 6. What do you notice in regard to the order of admission of free and slave states? 7. What reasons can you give for this order?

SECOND STUDY ON LIST.

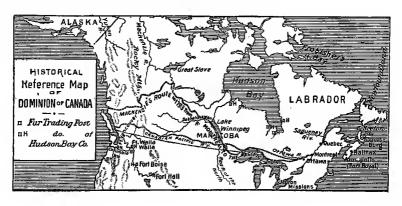
1. Under what two sorts of government were we during this time?
2. What were our first political parties, and what was the difference between them?
3. What were the political parties at the close of the

period? 4. Which of our presidents had been generals? 5. In what war had each been a general? 6. Why was it natural for our people to choose these generals as presidents? 7. What do you understand by the phrase, to the victors belong the spoils? 8. Make a list of the following dates, and write opposite each one the name or event which you should remember with it: 1787, 1789, 1803, 1812, 1820, 1846. 9. Learn this list of dates by heart.

THIRD STUDY ON LIST.

- 1. In what wars were the United States engaged during this time? 2. What did she gain by each? 3. What quarrels did the states have among themselves? 4. Which of these troubles threatened to divide the Union? 5. Into what parts would the Union have divided at these times if real disunion had come? 6. What prevented the Union from being divided?
- 7. What sorts of writings did Americans produce during this time? 8. Why should this literature be called American? 9. Make a list of the famous inventions of this period. 10. Of these inventions, which were American? 11. Of these, which would you select as the most important of all?
- 12. Why should an American have been proud to have been an American during this period from 1783-1850? 13. In what way was this period the period of the making of the land and state?

Supplementary Reading for Period in General.—C. C. Coffin's *Building the Nation. Samuel Adams Drake's The Making of the Great West. New York, 1887. United States Histories as before.



GROUP VI.

RECORDS OF CIVIL STRIFE.

1. THE FUGITIVE SLAVE LAW.

TAYLOR AND FILLMORE, Presidents.

I conjure gentlemen — whether from the South or the North, . . . by all their love of liberty — by all their veneration for their ancestors — by all their regard for posterity — . . . I implore them to pause — solemnly to pause — at the edge of the precipice, before the fearful and disastrous leap is taken in the yawning abyss below. — Clay, in Senate speech of 1850. 289

The Senate of 1850.—In the Senate of 1850 were many famous men. Three of them were famous old men whom we



JOHN C. CALHOUN. (From Portrait.)



HENRY CLAY. (From Portrait.)

have met before, — Henry Clay of Kentucky, John C. Calhoun of South Carolina, Daniel Webster of Massachusetts; others of

them were young men, whose fame was still before them, — Jefferson Davis of Mississippi, who had led the famous cav-



DANIEL WEBSTER. (From Portrait.)

alry charge at Buena Vista, Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois, and William H. Seward of New York.

The Debate on the Fugitive Slave Law.—Such were the leaders of the Senate of 1850, when they were debating the question—Shall California be admitted to the Union as a slave state or as a free state? As we have seen, it was hard for

them to agree. At last Henry Clay offered as a compromise, a bill called the omnibus bill, which provided 1) that California should decide the matter of slavery for herself; 2) that slaves should not be bought or sold in the District of Columbia; 3) that a strict fugitive slave law should be made, so that every United States officer should be bound to help a master get back his runaway slaves, and so that any one who helped the slave get away could be punished for it. Before this compromise was accepted, they debated it for seven months. Clay presented the bill with the following remark:

With you, gentlemen Senators of the free States, what is it?... A sentiment, a sentiment of humanity and philanthrophy.... But... on the other side... there is a vast amount of property to be sacrificed.... And this is not all. The social intercourse, ... safety, property, life, everything, is at hazard... in the slave States.²⁹⁰

A lively debate at once sprung up, in which Jefferson Davis said:

Is a measure in which we of the minority are to receive nothing a measure of compromise?... Never will I take less than the Missouri Compromise line extended to the Pacific Ocean, with the... right to hold slaves in the territory below that line.²⁹¹

To this Mr. Clay answered:

Coming from a slave State, as I do, I owe it to myself, I owe it to truth, I owe it to the subject, to say that no earthly power could induce me to vote... for the introduction of slavery where it had not before existed, either north or south of that line. Sir, while you reproach, and justly too, our British ancestors for the introduction of this institution upon the continent of America, I am, for one, unwilling that the posterity of the present inhabitants of California and New Mexico shall reproach us for doing just what we reproach Great Britain for doing to us... If the citizens of those territories choose to establish slavery... it will be their own work, and not ours. 292

On the fourth of March, 1850, Mr. Calhoun spoke on this bill; it was his last appearance in the Senate, and he was so feeble that his speech had to be read for him by a friend. One who was then present thus describes the scene:

The Senate-chamber and galleries filled to overflowing,—the appearance of Mr. Calhoun, . . . wrapped in a cloak, his long, white, bushy hair hanging wildly down the sides of his pale, emaciated face, his countenance lighting up and his eye flashing out of its deep socket as he cast it around on Senators when certain passages were read, . . . was a most unique, impressive, and dramatic scene.²⁸³

In this speech he said:

How can the Union be saved? There is but one way ...; and that is, by a full and final settlement, on the principle of justice, of

all the questions at issue. The South asks for justice, simple justice, and less she ought not to take. . . .

But can this be done? Yes, easily; not by the weaker party,... but by the stronger. The North has only... to do justice by conceding to the South an equal right in the acquired territory, and to do her duty by causing the stipulations relative to fugitive slaves to be faithfully fulfilled, to cease the agitation of the slave question....

But will the North agree to do this? It is for her to answer... If you who represent the stronger party cannot agree to settle them on the broad principle of justice and duty, say so; and let the States we both represent agree to separate and part in peace.²⁹⁴

Three days after, Webster replied in one of his greatest speeches:

I put it to all the sober and sensible minds at the North as a question of morals and a question of conscience. What right have they... to embarrass the free exercise of the rights secured by the Constitution to the persons whose slaves escape from them? None at all; none at all....

- Sir,... I hear with pain, and anguish and distress the word secession.... Secession! Peaceable secession! Sir, your eyes and mine are never destined to see that miracle. Where is the line to be drawn?... What is to remain American?... Where is the flag of the Republic to remain?
- ... To break up! To break up this great government, to dismember this great country, to astonish Europe with an act of folly such as Europe for two centuries has never beheld in any government! No, sir; no, sir! There will be no secession. Gentlemen are not serious when they talk of secession.²³⁵

In the course of the debate William H. Seward of New York thus expressed the views of a large party of the North:

I deny that the Constitution recognizes property in man. . . . It is true, indeed, that the national domain is ours; it is true, it was

acquired by the valor and with the wealth of the whole nation; but... the Constitution devotes the domain to union, to justice,... to liberty.

But there is a higher law than the Constitution.... The territory is a part... of the common heritage of mankind.... And now the simple, bold, and even awful question... is...: Shall we, who are founding institutions... for countless millions... shall we establish human bondage...?

So the debate went on day after day; but at last the Compromise bill was passed, and the pony express carried the news to California that she was admitted to the Union. As for the matter of slavery, she had already decided against it.

STUDY ON I.

1. What did the Compromise of 1850 grant to the South? 2. What did it grant to the North? 3. How many compromises in regard to slavery had preceded this one? 4. What other compromises had Clay managed? 5. When have we met Calhoun before? 6. Webster? 7. Why did the South care so much about this slavery question? 8. Why did the North care so much about it? 9. Why was returning fugitive slaves called a constitutional duty? 10. What could the Abolitionists say to this? 11. Who first brought slaves to this country? (See index.) 12. Where did they come from? 13. What Southern sentiment do you remember against slavery in the early days of the republic?

Supplementary Reading. — Article on Ashland, Clay's Kentucky home, in *Century* Magazine, December, 1886. Whittier's *Ichabod* and *The Lost Occasion*.

~~;~~~~

2. THE FUGITIVE SLAVE.

You are loosed from your moorings and free; I am fast in my chains and am a slave!... O, that I were on one of your gallant decks, and under your protecting wing!... The glad ship is gone; she hides in the dim distance. I am left in... unending slavery. O God, save me!... Is there any God? Why

am I a slave? I will run away.... One hundred miles straight north, and I am free! Try it? Yes! God helping me, I will. It cannot be that I shall live and die a slave!—A fugitive slave's apostrophe to the ships in Chesapeake Bay.²⁹⁷

How the Abolitionists received the Fugitive Slave Law.—You can imagine how the Fugitive Slave Law was received by the Abolitionists. A very famous one among them, a Syracuse minister, Samuel J. May, thus preached to his people in regard to it:

Do you inquire of me by what means you ought to withstand the execution of this diabolical law? If you are fully persuaded that it would be right for you to maim or kill the kidnapper who had laid hands upon your wife, son, or daughter, or should be attempting to drag yourself away to be enslaved, I see not how you can excuse yourself from helping, by the same degree of violence, to rescue the fugitive slave from the like outrage. . . . ²⁹⁸

How it looked to the Fugitive Slave. — Perhaps the most famous of all the fugitive slaves was Frederick Douglass. In a letter to his former master, he thus justifies himself for running away:

The very first mental effort that I now remember... was an attempt to solve the mystery—why am I a slave?... I went away into the corner of the fence, wept and pondered over the mystery. I had... got some idea of God,... and that he had made the blacks to serve the whites as slaves. After this, my Aunt Jinny and Uncle Noah ran away, and the great noise made about it by your father-in-law, made me for the first time acquainted with the fact, that there were free states as well as slave states. From that time, I resolved that I would some day run away....

Three out of the ten years since I left you, I spent as a common laborer on the wharves of New Bedford, Mass. It was there I earned my first free dollar. It was mine. I could spend it as I pleased.... That was a precious dollar to me. You remember when

I used to make seven, or eight, or even nine dollars a week in Baltimore, you would take every cent of it from me every Saturday night, saying that I belonged to you, and my earnings also....

Of his feelings on the eve of escape, Mr. Douglass says:

The case, sometimes, to our excited visions, stood thus. At every gate through which we had to pass, we saw a watchman; at every ferry, a guard; on every bridge, a sentinel; and in every wood, a ... slave-hunter. We were hemmed in on every side.... On the one hand, stood slavery... the evil from which to escape. On the other hand, far away,... under the flickering light of the north star,—behind some craggy hill or snow-covered mountain—stood a doubtful freedom, half-frozen, beckoning us to her icy domain.... The reader can have little idea of the phantoms of trouble which flit, in such circumstances, before the uneducated mind of the slave. 299

The Underground Railway.— The Abolitionists all through the states did what they could to help the fugitives get away, and their houses were known as stations on the underground railway; and they had arrangements by which the slaves could be carried from one station to another until they reached Canada, or some place where they could be safe. A very famous route by the underground railway was from Cincinnati to Detroit; another led by Baltimore to New York, and thence into Canada or New England.

The Rescue of Jerry.—One of the most famous of the fugitive slave cases was that of Jerry, which is thus related by Samuel J. May:

Jerry was an athletic mulatto, who had been residing in Syracuse for a number of years, and working... as a cooper. I found him in the presence of the... District Attorney, who was conducting the trial,... in which [it was claimed]... that the prisoner was an escaped... slave belonging to a Mr. Reynolds, of Missouri.

The doomed man was not allowed to state his own case.... While we were attending to the novel proceedings, Jerry, not being closely guarded, slipped out of the room under the guidance of a young man of more zeal than discretion, and in a moment was in the street below. The crowd cheered and made way for him.... Being manacled, he could not do his best; but he had got off nearly half a mile, before the police officers... overtook him.... Jerry fought like a tiger, but...he was attacked behind and before and soon subdued. He was... brought down through the center of the city, and put into a back room of the police office.... The people, citizens and strangers, were alike indignant. As I passed among them, I heard nothing but executions and threats of release....

[Soon afterward], I went to the office of the late Hiram Hoyt, where I found twenty or thirty picked men laying a plan for the rescue.... At a given signal the doors and windows of the police office were to be demolished at once, and the rescuers to rush in and fill the room, press around and upon the officers, ... and so soon as they were confined and powerless ..., several men were to take up Jerry and bear him to the buggy [in which he was to be taken out of town, and put on the way to Canada, by the Underground Railway.]

The plan was well and quickly executed, but... the officers of the United States government set about to punish us "traitors," who had evinced so much more regard for "the rights of man conferred by God" than for a wicked law enacted by Congress. Eighteen of us were indicted. The accusation was brought before Judge Conkling at Auburn. Thither, therefore, the accused were taken. But we went accompanied by nearly a hundred of our fellow-citizens, many of them the most prominent men of Syracuse, with not a few ladies.... The United States Attorney found that he could not empanel [get] a jury upon which there were not several who had formed an opinion against the law. So he let all the "Jerry Rescue Causes" fall to the ground forever....

After our triumph over the Fugitive Slave Law, we Abolitionists in Central New York enjoyed for several years a season of comparative peace.³⁰⁰

STUDY ON 2.

1. How did the Abolitionists defend themselves for disobeying the Fugitive Slave Law? 2. What were the differences between a slave and an ordinary day laborer? 3. Why had a slave reason to feel that if he tried to run away he would meet guards and watchmen everywhere until he reached Canada? 4. Why would he be safe in Canada? 5. What was the effect of the Fugitive Slave Law upon the Abolitionists? 6. What effect would the underground railway have upon the number of fugitive slaves? 7. Why should Southerners say, as they did, that the Abolitionists stole their slaves? 8. What would make it hard to obey the Fugitive Slave Law in a place like Syracuse? 9. What was there unfair in the trial of Jerry? 10. Why should those who helped Jerry to escape be called traitors? 11. What was the reason that they could not be condemued? 12. What was it, then, that triumphed over the Fugitive Slave Law?

Supplementary Reading. — Harriet Beecher Stowe's Uncle Tom's Cabin. Whittier's Song of Slaves in the Desert, and Rendition of Anthony Burns. Lowell, On the Capture of Certain Fugitive Slaves. Charles Humphrey Roberts' Down the O-h-i-o. Chicago, 1891. Longfellow's Slave in the Dismal Swamp; Slave singing at Midnight; The Quadroon Girl.



3. THE STRUGGLE FOR KANSAS, 1854-1858.

PIERCE, President.

Come on, then, gentlemen of the slave states. Since there is no escaping your challenge, I accept it in behalf of freedom. We will engage in competition for the virgin soil of Kansas, and God give the victory to the side that is stronger in numbers as it is in right.—Seward, in speech in the Senate of 1854.301

The Kansas-Nebraska Bill.—Meanwhile, people were beginning to settle in Kansas and Nebraska, and the question came up again in regard to slavery in these new territories. Most of the Northern party held that this question had been

already settled by the Missouri Compromise; the South, on the other hand, held that that compromise was itself unfair. Senator Stephen A. Douglas, in conversation with a Kentucky senator, thus expressed himself in regard to it:

The repeal of the Missouri Compromise restriction... is due to the South.... The repeal, if we can effect it, will produce much stir and commotion in the free states of the Union.... I shall be probably hung in effigy in many places. It is more than probable that I may become permanently odious among those whose friendship and esteem I have heretofore possessed.... But, acting under the sense of the duty which animates me, ... I will do it. 302

In accordance with this resolution, Douglas presented the Kansas-Nebraska bill, and it was passed. According to this law, the question of whether slaves should be allowed in these new territories was to be decided by the settlers.

The Beginning of the Republican Party.—As soon as this bill was passed, a new party called the Republican Party sprang up. It believed that the United States had a right to prevent slavery from going into the territories, and it grew rapidly, many Whigs and Democrats joining it, as well as most of the Abolitionists, who before would belong to no party.

How Lawrence, Kansas, was founded.—Even while the Kansas-Nebraska bill was being discussed, the New England anti-slavery men began to plan what they would do in case it was passed. The plan adopted was put forth in a speech made at Worcester, by Eli Thayer. He said:

Let every effort be made, ... to fill up that vast and fertile territory with free men — with men who hate slavery, and who will drive the hideous thing from the broad and beautiful plains where they go to raise their free homes. [Loud cheers.]³⁰³

Almost at once after this speech, Mr. Thayer drew up the charter for the *Massachusetts Emigrant Aid Company*, a society which should help emigrants who wished to settle in Kansas, by furnishing them with such things as they needed in order to settle.

On the 17th of July, 1854, the first party of twenty-nine emigrants were cheered out of the railroad station by their friends, . . . and on the 29th of August a second party of seventy, which was increased very much on the route, moved out of Boston, singing . . . one of the "Lays of the Emigrants," written for the occasion by Mr. Whittier:

We cross the prairies as of old The Pilgrims crossed the sea, To make the West, as they the East, The homestead of the free! We go to rear a wall of men On Freedom's southern line, And plant beside the cotton-tree The rugged Northern pine!

As the pro-slavery squatters had settled in little towns on the borders near Missouri, the first object of the New England emigrants was to create a centre for the anti-slavery settlers. The conductor of the first party... went up the Kansas River. Soon a camp of tents, increased later by huts and log-cabins, marked the site of... Lawrence [so named for the treasurer of the Emigrant Aid Company]. 304

The Election of March, 1855. — March, 1855, had been set as the date for the election which was to decide whether Kansas should be a free or a slave state. One of the Missouri borderers gives the following account of the Missouri point of view:

There had been a good deal of talk about the settlement of Kansas, ... since the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska bill. It was but a short time after the passage of that act that we learned through the papers about the forming of a society in the East for the purpose of promoting the settlement of Kansas territory, with the view of making it a free state. Missouri, being a slave state, and believing

that an effort of that kind, if successful, would injure her citizens in the enjoyment of their slave-property, ... became determined to use all means in their power to counteract the efforts of eastern people on that subject. ...

It was determined by the Missourians that if the eastern emigrants were allowed to vote, we would vote also, or we would ... break up the elections.³⁰⁵



THE VOTING-PLACE OF 1855.

(After Photograph of Sketch owned by Kansas Historical Society.)

The proceedings on the day of election are related by a citizen of Lawrence:

On the day previous to the election a number of teams and wagons loaded with armed men, and men on horseback, came into town [Leavenworth]. They were strangers here; they came in

from the South and Southwest.... They had tents, and were armed....

Some of these men were on the ground ... before the polls were opened; they came in bodies of, perhaps, a hundred at a time, and voted. ...

Generally speaking, these men were quiet and peaceable; they proclaimed at all times the right of every person to vote with the rest. They were situated very compactly about the place of voting, which was very much crowded. . . .

There were a large number who had arms at the polls; some few had shot-guns and rifles, but mostly revolvers and knives....

In frequent conversations which I had with different persons of the party during the day, they claimed to have a legal right to vote in the territory, and that they were residents by virtue of their heing then in the territory. They said they were free to confess that they came from Missouri.³⁰⁶

Action of the Free-State Men. — The result of this election was to choose a legislature that made Kansas a slave state. But the free-state men claimed that this election was not fair, and held a convention at Topeka, where they resolved:

That we cannot and will not quietly submit to surrender our "Great American birthright"—the elective franchise.... We will endure... these laws no longer than the best interests of the territory require,... and will resist them to a bloody issue, as soon as we ascertain that peaceable remedies shall fail.³⁰⁷

Fighting followed, and the troubles in Kansas did not cease for nearly five years, when she became a free state.

STUDY ON 3.

1. Why should the Kansas-Nebraska bill be called the repeal of the Missouri Compromise? 2. What proof that Mr. Douglas was honest in urging this repeal? 3. Name three important effects of the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska bill. 4. How would filling up Kansas with free men make it a free state, after the Kansas-Nebraska bill was passed? 5. Why

should immigrants go to Kansas rather than to Nebraska? 6. Why should the people on the Missouri border wish Kansas to be a slave state? 7. Why should the Missourians think they had as good a right to vote as the immigrants? 8. Why should the immigrants think they had a better right? 9. How did the Missourians manage so as to carry the election? 10. What was there about the election that was not fair, even allowing that the Missourians could vote? 11. What did the Kansas immigrants mean by calling the right to vote our Great American Birthright?

Supplementary Reading. — Mrs. Sara T. L. Robinson's Kansas: Its Interior and Exterior Life. Boston, 1856.



4. JOHN BROWN.

PIERCE, BUCHANAN, Presidents.

I am a South Carolinian, and at the time of the raid was very deeply imbued with the political prejudices of my state; but the serenity, calm courage, and devotion to duty which your father and his followers then manifested impressed me very profoundly. It is impossible not to feel respect for men who offer up their lives in support of their convictions. — From a letter to John Brown's son. ³⁰⁸

John Brown's Camp in Kansas. — Of all the Kansas fighters, no one was more feared than Capt. John Brown and his sons. A correspondent of the New York *Tribune* who visited his camp, thus describes it:

Near the edge of the creek a dozen horses were tied, all ready saddled for a ride for life, or a hunt after Southern invaders. A dozen rifles and sabres were stacked against the trees. In an open space, amid the shady and lofty woods, there was a great blazing fire with a pot on it; three or four armed men were lying on red and blue blaukets on the grass; and two fine-looking youths were standing, leaning on their arms, near by.... Old Brown himself stood near the fire, with his shirt-sleeves rolled up, and a large fork in his hand. He was cooking a pig. He was poorly clad, and his

toes protruded from his boots. In this camp no manner of profane language was permitted.

... It was at this time that the old man said to me;... "It's a mistake, sir,... that our people make, when they think that bullies are the best fighters, or that they are the men fit to oppose these Southerners. Give me men of good principles; God-fearing men; men who respect themselves,—and with a dozen of them, I will oppose any hundred...ruffians." I remained in camp about an hour. Never before had I met such a band of men. They were... earnestness incarnate. Six of them were John Brown's sons.

John Brown's Raid. — Such was the man who formed the plan of invading the South itself with an armed force, setting the negroes free, and arming them in their own defence. In the fall of 1859, he made his way to the vicinity of Harper's Ferry, Virginia, with his little band, and on the night of October 16, attacked the United States Arsenal there, and captured the armory. A Virginian, who was one of Brown's prisoners at Harper's Ferry, says:

About daylight one of my servants came to my room door and told me "there was war in the street." I, of course, got up at once, dressed, and went out.... As I proceeded I saw a man come out of an alley near me, then another, and another, all coming towards me; when they came up to me I inquired what all this meant; they said, nothing, only they had taken possession of the government works....

Up to this time I had not seen any arms; presently, however, the men threw back the short cloaks they wore, and displayed Sharpes's rifles, pistols, and knives... They at once cocked their guns, and told me I was a prisoner. This surprised me, of course, but I could do nothing, being entirely unarmed.... They said... they only wanted to carry me to their captain, John Smith. I asked where Captain Smith was. They answered, "At the guardhouse, inside of the armory enclosure."...

Upon reaching the gate I saw what, indeed, looked like war—negroes armed with pikes, and sentinels with muskets all around. When I reached the gate I was turned over to "Captain Smith."

We were not kept closely confined, but were allowed to converse with him. I asked him what his object was; he replied, "To free the negroes of Virginia." He added that he was prepared to do it, and by twelve o'clock would have fifteen hundred men with him, ready armed. Up to this time the citizens had hardly begun to move about, and knew nothing of the raid. When they learned what was going on, some came out armed with old shot-guns, and were themselves shot by concealed men... During the day and night I talked much with John Brown, and found him as brave as a man could be, and sensible upon all subjects except slavery. Upon that question he was a religious fanatic, and believed it was his duty to free the slaves, even if in doing so he lost his own life. During a sharp fight one of Brown's sons was killed....

Brown... turning to me, said, "This is the third son I have lost in this cause." Another son had been shot in the morning and was then dying, having been brought in from the street. 310

The state militia of Virginia and Maryland were at once called out, and after two days of fighting, John Brown was captured, and the raid was at an end.

John Brown's Defence. — When John Brown was brought to trial, he offered the following as his defence:

I am yet too young to understand that God is any respecter of persons. I believe that to have interfered as I have done... in behalf of his despised poor, was not wrong, but right. Now, if it is deemed necessary that I should forfeit my life for the furtherance of the ends of justice and mingle my blood further with the blood of my children and with the blood of millions in this slave country whose rights are disregarded by wicked, cruel, and unjust enactments,—I submit; so let it be done.³¹¹

His defence could not stand before the courts, and in the beginning of December John Brown was hanged.

Opinions of John Brown. — In the Senate report on the John Brown raid, it was described as "the act of lawless ruffians."

Mr. Lawrence, the treasurer of the Emigrant Aid Society, writes:

But what shall we say of John Brown?... He was always armed; he was always disloyal to the United States government and to all government except what he called the "higher law." He was always ready to shed blood, and he always did shed it without remorse. ³¹²

Wendell Phillips, in a famous speech on Harper's Ferry, said:

This is the man who, in the face of the nation, avowing his right, and laboring with what strength he had in behalf of the wronged, goes down to Harper's Ferry to follow up his work. Well, men say he failed.... Soldiers call Bunker Hill a defeat; but liberty dates from it though Warren lay dead on the field.... Actually... twenty-two men have been found ready to die for an idea. God be thanked for John Brown.... 313

The Effect of the Raid in Virginia. — This is described by one who was a girl at the time:

The only association I have with my old home in Virginia that is not one of unmixed happiness relates to the time immediately succeeding the execution of John Brown at Harper's Ferry... There seemed to be no especial reason for us to share in the apprehension of an uprising of the blacks. But there was the fear—unspoken,...dark, boding, oppressive and altogether hateful.... The notes of whip-poor-wills in the sweet-gum swamp near the stable, the mutterings of a distant thunder-storm, even the rustle of the night wind in the oaks that shaded my window, filled me with nameless dread. In the day-time it seemed impossible to associate suspicion

with those familiar tawny or sable faces that surrounded us. We had seen them for so many years smiling or saddening with the family joys or sorrows; they were so guileless, so patient, so satisfied. What...should transform them into tigers thirsting for our blood? The idea was preposterous. But when evening came again, and with it the hour when the colored people... assembled themselves together for dance or prayer-meeting, the ghost that refused to be laid was again at one's elbow. Rusty bolts were drawn and rusty fire-arms loaded. A watch was set where never before had eye or ear been lent to such a service. In short, peace had flown from the borders of Virginia. 314

STUDY ON 4.

1. How much did John Brown care about freeing the slaves? 2. What shows that John Brown was a religious man? 3. Why should John Brown wish to take the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry? 4. Where did he probably think that the 1500 men of whom he spoke would come from? 5. What is meant by calling Brown a religious fanatic? 6. How did he justify himself for fighting against his country? 7. How could the Senate committee describe him and his band as lawless? 8. To what is reference made in the phrase the higher law which Brown is said to have obeyed? 9. Explain how it was that peace had flown from the borders of Virginia.

Supplementary Reading.—A Virginia Girl in the First Year of the War, Century, August, 1885, or in Battles and Leaders of the Civil War. Whittier's John Brown.

ംഗൂട്ടേഗം

5. TRADE AND LIFE IN THE FIFTIES.

TAYLOR AND FILLMORE, PIERCE, BUCHANAN, Presidents.

The new fashioned way of setting off by rail—is there no poetry in that? Yes. The thought that in a few brief hours, you, who are leaving the ocean side, will stand on the shores of our great inland seas, and will look out upon the level horizon of the prairies, and will drink the waters of the Mississippi—this

has in it the element of sentiment. The feeling of mastering the powers of nature, and yoking them to your chariot wheels, . . . gives a sense of wings to the mind. — A traveller of $^{54.315}$

Chicago in 1854.—A traveller of 1854 writes:

In the Chicago hotels, ... every man is either just in from Cincinnati, St. Louis, Milwaukie, Detroit or Cleveland, or he is just starting for one of these places. Unless he makes his hundred miles between breakfast and dinner, he counts himself an idler, and talks of growing rusty. A great deal of his business he transacts "aboard the cars," or the steamboats; some of it at the hotels; and all of it on his feet. . . .

The society one meets in a Chicago hotel consists principally of the gentlemen of the road. I mean the railroad-men, so called — road-builders and road owners. There are also the men of real estate, who deal in prairie and river bottoms. There are grain and lumber merchants. There are speculators of every kind. But all have only one thought in their minds. To buy, sell, and get gain — this is the spirit that pervades...the country.... Though men do not write books there, or paint pictures, there is no lack ... of mind. The American people is intent on studying... how best to subdue and till the soil of its boundless territories; how to build roads and ships....

At Chicago, two persons meeting, stand over against each other like two door-posts. Neither gives signs of superiority or inferiority. They have no intention of either flattering or imposing upon each other. Words are not wasted. So is the cut of each other's coat a matter of perfect indifference. Probably the man who is "up for Congress" wears the shabbier one of the two.

But... a family of Germans going by the hotel one morning,... struck me as the most remarkable show I had seen in the West—the coming in of European immigrants to take possession of our Western plains.

The father strode down the middle of the street. Unaccustomed to the convenience of sidewalks in his own country, he shared the

way with the beasts of burden, no less heavily laden than they.... By one hand he held his pack, and in the other he carried a large tea-kettle. His gude-wife followed in his tracks, at barely speaking distance behind. A babe at the breast was her only burden. Both looked straight forward, intent only upon putting one foot before the other. In a direct line, but still further behind, trudged on, with unequal footsteps, and eyes staring on either side, their first-born son, or one who seemed such. There were well towards a dozen summers glowing in his face. A big tin pail, containing, probably, the day's provisions, and slung to his young shoulders, did not seem to weigh too heavily upon his spirit. He travelled on bravely, and was evidently trained to bear his load. A younger brother brought up, at a few paces distant, the rear, carrying, astride his neck, ... a sister....

I watched this single file of marchers westward until they disappeared at the end of the avenue. They would not stop or turn aside, save for needful food and shelter, until they crossed the Mississippi. On the rolling prairies beyond, the foot-worn travellers would reach their journey's end, and, throwing their weary limbs upon the flowery grass, would rest in their new home, roofed by the sky of Iowa. 316

The Southern Immigrant. — The following picture of Southern immigration into Texas is given us by a traveller of 1854:

We overtook, several times in the course of each day, the slow emigrant trains... Several families were frequently moving together,... on the long road from Alabama, Georgia, or the Carolinas. Before you come upon them you hear, ringing through the woods, the fierce cries and blows with which they urge on their jaded cattle. Then the stragglers appear, lean dogs, or fainting negroes, ragged and spiritless.... Then the white covers of the wagons, jerking up and down as they mount over a root or plunge into a rut.... Then the active and cheery prime negroes.... Then the black pickininnies, staring, in a confused heap, out at the

back of the wagon, more and more of their eyes to be made out among the table legs and bedding as you get near; behind them, further in, the old people and young mothers, whose turn it is to ride. As you get by, the white mother and babies, and the tall... master, on horseback, or walking with his gun, urging up the black driver and his oxen.... The masters are plainly dressed, often in homespun... 317

Denver in 1859. — Horace Greeley, the famous editor of the New York Tribune, visited Denver in this year and writes:

Denver was then about six months old; but the rival city of Auraria (since absorbed by it), lying just across the bed of Cherry Creek... had already attained an antiquity of nearly a year.... I suppose there were over a hundred dwellings in the two cities, when I reached them.... All were built of cottonwood logs from the adjacent bank of the South Platte.... I seem to remember that all the chimneys were of sticks and mud;... and, while several had windows (I mean one apiece) composed of four to six lights of seven-by-nine glass, others were content with the more primitive device of a rude wooden shutter, closed at night.... The rival eities were gaining population quite rapidly during the ten days that I spent in or near them....

There were several rude bedsteads just constructed in the Denver House,—the grand hotel of the city,—on which you were allowed to spread your blankets and repose for a dollar a night.... Two blacklegs rented opposite corners of the public room, and were steadily swindling greenhorns at three-card monte.... The gamblers and other rough subjects had an unpleasant habit of quarrelling and firing revolvers at each other in this bar-room when it was crowded, and sometimes hitting the wrong man. 318

Manufactures in 1860.— In 1860, the manufactures of the whole South, including Virginia, the Carolinas, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Texas, Arkansas, and Tennessee, amounted to about \$150,000,000, of which Virginia

produced \$51,000,000. These manufactures consisted of lumber, liquors, flour, leather, and a few cotton and woollen goods. The Northern Mississippi Valley states — Kentucky, Missouri, Nebraska, Iowa, Illinois, Indiana, Ohio, Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota — produced about \$390,000,000, mostly in flour, whiskey, lumber, and agricultural implements. Massachusetts, New York, and Pennsylvania produced more than \$750,000,000 of iron, cotton, and woollen goods, leather, paper, shoes, glass, machinery, etc. The cities in the Union that produced more than \$10,000,000 worth of manufactured goods in 1860 were Troy, Rochester, Buffalo, New York, Brooklyn, Newark,



A SOUTHERN PLANTER.

(After Kemble.)

Philadelphia, Pittsburg, Baltimore, Boston, Worcester, Providence, Hartford, Cincinnati, Chicago, and St. Louis. The great manufacture of shoes in the United States was at Lynn; and of the 1083 cotton manufactories in the country, 570 were in New England. 319

Cotton is King. — Meanwhile the Southern states were furnishing cotton to the mills of the North and of England, sending out millions of pounds every year, of which the greater part went to England, who bought little cotton elsewhere. Says a London paper of this decade:

The lives of nearly two million of our countrymen are dependent upon the cotton crops of America. . . . Should any dire calamity

befall the land of cotton, a thousand of our merchant ships would rot idly in dock; ten thousand mills must stop their busy looms; two thousand thousand mouths would starve, for lack of food to feed them.³²⁰

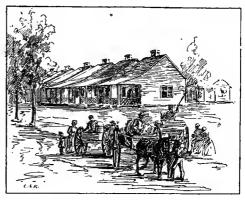
Says a Southern senator in the Senate in 1860:

There are five millions of people in Great Britain who live upon cotton... Exhaust the supply of cotton for one week, and all England is starving.... I tell you that *Cotton is King!* ³²¹

Population.—In 1860, the population of the Union was about 31,000,000; of this total, the Southern states, reckoning as above, contained 9,000,000, of which 3,500,000 were slaves.

STUDY ON 5.

1. How did it happen that so many people had business in Chicago? 2. From what places did these people



NEGRO QUARTERS.

(After Newspaper Sketch of the Time.)

come? 3. How could grain get easily from Chicago to New York? (See p. 285, 1817.) 4. In what other way could grain get from the prairies to the sea-board? 5. What were the people in the Mississippi Valley doing in the fifties? 6. Why did we not have any great poets or artists from this part of our country or from California during this time? 7. Why should the poor man in Europe want to go out into the American prairies? 8. Of what use were these immigrants to us? 9. What would turn them into Americans? 10. What good qualities as immigrants did the German family described possess? 11. What difference between the Southern picture of immigration and the Northern picture? 12. What proportion of the white population of the Union was in the South in 1860?

SECOND STUDY ON 5.

1. What had caused the sudden springing up of Denver? 2. Why did not some one stop the roughs from firing revolvers? 3. What was the

chief business of the South in 1860? 4. Of the North? 5. If anything should happen to the South, who would suffer? 6. If anything should happen to the North, who would suffer? 7. Of whom was cotton king? 8. Of whom was corn king? 9. How did Northern people help to support slavery? 10. What new states had come into the Union during this period? (See list at close of Group.) 11. Which of them were free states and which slave? 12. Judging by the admissions of these states, which part of our country was growing during this time? 13. What great writers lived and worked during the fifties? (See list at close of Group.)

Supplementary Reading.—Jessie Benton Fremont's Far West Sketches. Boston, 1890. Susan Dabney Smede's Memorials of a Southern Planter. 1887. Frederick Law Olmsted's A Journey through Texas. New York, 1859.

--0**20**200--

6. ELECTION OF LINCOLN AND SECESSION OF SOUTH CAROLINA, 1860.

BUCHANAN, President.

Fling down thy gauntlet to the Huns,
And roar the challenge from thy guns;
Then leave the future to thy sons,
Carolina!

— Southern poem of time.822

Parties, Candidates, and Platforms.—Since 1854 the Republican party had been growing stronger and stronger, and it was much feared by the Democrats that 1860 would see the election of a Republican President. This was the more likely to happen, as the Democratic party had itself split into two parts, Northern and Southern. The candidate of the Republican party was Abraham Lincoln, an Illinois lawyer, who had risen by his own efforts from great poverty and ignorance to be a much-trusted and loved citizen in his own state. The candi-

date of the Northern Democrats was STEPHEN A. DOUGLAS, also an Illinois lawyer. The Southern Democrats nominated John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky. There was, besides, another party, called the American party, with John Bell for a candidate. The excitement of this campaign was tremendous. A reporter who was present at the National Republican Convention held in Chicago, writes that when Lincoln's nomination was announced:

Men embraced each other and fell on one another's neck, and wept out their repressed feeling. They threw hats in air, and almost rent the roof with huzzas. Thousands and thousands were packed in the streets outside, who stood patiently receiving accounts of the proceedings within, from reporters posted on the roof, listening at the numerous open sky-lights, and shouting them . . . to the crowd below. . . . 323

The questions at issue are thus stated: for the Republicans, by Lincoln:

I say we must not interfere with the institution of slavery in the States where it exists, because the Constitution forbids it, and the general welfare does not require us to do so. We must not withhold an efficient fugitive slave law, because the Constitution requires us, as I understand it, not to withhold such a law. But we must prevent the outspreading of the institution, because neither the Constitution nor the general welfare requires us to extend it. 324

For the Southern Democrats, by Davis:

Neither Congress nor a Territorial legislature, . . . possesses power to annul or impair the Constitutional right of any citizen of the United States to take his slave property into the common territories, and there hold and enjoy the same while the Territorial condition remains.

For the Northern Democrats, by Douglas:

I tell you, gentlemen of the South, in all candor, I do not believe a Democratic candidate can ever carry any one Democratic State of the North on the platform that it is the duty of the Federal Government to force the people of a Territory to have slavery when they do not want it.³²⁵

For the American National Constitutional party, by their platform, which ran:

The Constitution of the country, the Union of the States, and the Enforcement of the Laws.

Secession of South Carolina.—It was soon seen that the result of the campaign would be the election of Lincoln. Upon this, the governor of South Carolina sent a circular letter to the governors of the several cotton states, in which he said:

South Carolina . . . will unquestionably call a convention as soon as it is ascertained that a majority of the electors will support Lincoln. If a single State secedes, she will follow her. If no other State takes the lead, South Carolina will secede (in my opinion) alone, if she has every assurance that she will be soon followed by another or other States; otherwise it is doubtful.

To this the governor of Louisiana replied that he did not advise secession, but

If . . . the General Government shall attempt to coerce a State [force her to remain in the Union] and forcibly attempt the exercise of this right, I should certainly sustain the State in such a contest.

North Carolina and Georgia gave much the same answer. The governor of Mississippi replied that "if any state moves, I think Mississippi will go with her"; and Alabama promised "to rally to the rescue" if the government should use force against a seceding state. Florida answered:

Florida is ready to wheel into line with the gallant Palmetto State [South Carolina]... in any course which she... may think proper to adopt, looking to... the honor and safety of the South.³²⁶

Almost at once after this correspondence, came the news of the election of Lincoln; South Carolina at once determined on her course, and on the 20th of December, 1860, the following broadside appeared in the streets of Charleston:

CHARLESTON MERCURY.

Extra:

Passed unanimously at 1.15 o'clock P.M. Dec. 20th, 1860,

AN ORDINANCE

to dissolve the Union between the State of South Carolina, and other States united with her under the compact entitled the Constitution of the United States of America.

We, the people of the State of South Carolina, in Convention assembled, do declare and ordain, . . . that the Union now subsisting between South Carolina and other States, under the name of United States of America, is hereby dissolved. [Passed by unanimous vote of 169 members, Dec. 20, 1860.]

THE UNION IS DISSOLVED.327

One who was living in Charleston at the time wrote:

No one living in Charleston at the time . . . can ever forget the scenes by which it was accompanied. No sooner had the bells of St. Michael's announced the fact than the wildest frenzy seemed to seize the whole population. The air was rent with huzzas; . . . palmetto branches were borne in triumph along the streets; bales of cotton were suspended on ropes stretched from house to house,

on one of which was inscribed in large letters, "The world wants it"; while the stirring notes of the Marseillaise, afterward exchanged for those of Dixie, met the ear at every corner.³²⁸



A PALMETTO FLAG.

STUDY ON 6.

1. Why should there be so great an excitement over this campaign? 2. Name the events which had happened since 1850 to cause this excitement. (See list.) 3. Why should the Republicans especially be excited? 4. Just what was the difference between the Northern and Southern Democrats at this election? 5. Between the Republicans and the Northern Democrats? 6. Between the Republicans and the Abolitionists? 7. What did the American party refer to by the enforcement of the laws?

8. By the preservation of the Union? 9. What threats of secession had been made in our history before 1860? 10. Why should any cotton state fear to secede alone? 11. What was secession? 12. At what times in our history had compromise prevented disunion?

7. THE QUESTION OF THE HOUR.

BUCHANAN, LINCOLN, Presidents.

The Chief Magistrate derives all his authority from the people, and they have conferred none upon him to fix terms for the separation of the States. The people themselves can do this also if they choose; but the Executive, as such, has nothing to do with it. His duty is to administer the present Government, as it came to his hands, and to transmit it, unimpaired by him, to his successor.—Lincoln, in first inaugural. 329

Opinion in the South.—The greatest excitement sprang up when the news of the secession of South Carolina ran over the country. By the first of February, she was joined by North

Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas. The opinion of the *Secessionists* was best expressed, perhaps, by the words of Jefferson Davis, in his last speech in the United States Senate:

Secession... is to be justified upon the basis that the states are sovereign.... When you deny to us the right to withdraw from a government ... which ... threatens our rights, we but tread in the paths of our fathers when we proclaim our independence.... I am sure... I but express... the feelings of the people whom I represent toward those whom you represent ... when I say I hope, and they hope, for peaceable relations with you, though we must part. \$30\$

But even in the South there were many who did not approve of secession at that time. Alexander Stephens said in a speech before the Georgia Legislature:

Shall the people of the South secede from the Union in consequence of the election of Mr. Lincoln...? My countrymen, I tell you frankly, candidly and earnestly that I do not think that they ought. In my judgment, the election of no man, constitutionally chosen to that high office, is sufficient cause for any State to secede from the Union.

Should Georgia determine to go out of the Union... whatever the result may be, I shall bow to the will of the people. Their cause is my cause, and their destiny is my destiny.³³¹

Houston, then governor of Texas, in a speech before a Union mass-meeting, said:

Whenever an encroachment is made upon our constitutional rights, I am ready to peril my life to resist it; but let us first use constitutional means....

Let the people say to these abolition agitators of the North, and to the disunion agitators of the South, "You can not dissolve this Union. We will put you both down; but we will not let the Union go!" 332

In the border states, many felt as Robert E. Lee of Virginia did; he was then a colonel in a regiment of the United States army posted in Texas. When the United States forts in Texas were taken possession of by the Secession party, Lee left to report for duty at Washington. One of his friends then with him says, "I have seldom seen a more distressed man;" another thus gives the substance of his parting words:

If Virginia stands by the old Union, so will I. But if she secedes (though I do not believe in secession as a constitutional right, nor that there is a sufficient cause for revolution), then I will still follow my native state with my sword, and, if need be, with my life.... These are my principles, and I must follow them.³³³

The governor of Kentucky thus addressed the South:

To South Carolina, and such other States as may wish to secede from the Union, I would say:... We cannot sustain you in this movement, merely on account of the election of Lincoln.... We implore you to stand by us, and by our friends in the Free States; and let us all... with a united front, stand by each other, by our principles, by our rights, our equality, our honour, and by the Union under the Constitution.³³⁴

Opinion in the North.—This, too, varied. Many felt as Horace Greeley did:

If the Cotton States shall decide that they can do better out of the Union than in it, we insist on letting them go in peace. The right to secede may be a revolutionary one, but it exists nevertheless.³³⁵

At a great Democratic state convention, held in Albany, N.Y., one of the principal speakers said:

What, then, is the duty of the State of New York? What shall we say to our people when we come to meet this state of facts? That the Union must be preserved. But if that cannot be, what then? Peaceable separation. [Applause.]

Still another speaker at this same convention said:

We have reached a time when, as a man—if you please, as a Democrat—I must use plain terms. There is no such thing as legal secession... But if secession be not lawful, oh, what is it! I use the term reluctantly but truly—it is rebellion. [Cries of "No! No! Revolution."] It is rebellion! rebellion against the noblest government that man ever framed. [A Voice: We are all rebels, then.] 336

Lincoln's Opinion. — Under these circumstances, the opinion of our first Republican President was awaited with breathless interest. In his inaugural address of the 4th of March, 1861, he said:

I hold that, in contemplation of universal law, and of the Constitution, the union of these States is perpetual.

It follows from these views, that no State, upon its own mere motion, can lawfully get out of the Union; that resolves and ordinances to that effect are legally void;

I therefore consider that, in view of the Constitution and the laws, the Union is unbroken; and to the extent of my ability, I shall take care, as the Constitution itself expressly enjoins upon me, that the laws of the Union be faithfully executed in all the States.

The power confided to me will be used to hold, occupy, and possess the property and places belonging to the Government, and to collect the duties and imposts; but beyond what may be necessary for these objects, there will be no invasion, no using of force against or among the people anywhere.³³⁷

STUDY ON 7.

1. What was the question of the honr? 2. What parties were there in regard to it in the Sonth, and what did each think? 3. What did the Middle states wish? 4. Why should they wish this more earnestly than the South or the North? 5. What two opinions were there in the North in regard to secession? 6. In regard to coercion? 7. What was Lee's country? 8. Why was Lee so distressed? 9. To what constitutional rights did Houston refer? 10. To what constitutional means? 11. Why should Lincoln's opinion be anxiously waited for? 12. What was that opinion in regard to secession? 13. In regard to coercion? 14. In what two ways did men think of saving the Union at this time? 15. What President had taken the same ground as Lincoln before?

For the whole of the inaugural address, see Old South Leaflets.



8. THE FORMATION OF THE CONFEDERACY.

BUCHANAN, LINCOLN, Presidents.

Then cheer, boys, cheer, raise the joyous shout,

For Arkansas and North Carolina now have both gone out;

And let another rousing cheer for Tennessee be given,

The single star of the bonnie Blue Flag has grown to be eleven!

Hurrah! Hurrah! for the bonnie Blue Flag

That bears a single star.

- Song sung in New Orleans in 1861.328

The Constitution of the Confederacy.—Meanwhile, as rapidly as possible, the seceded cotton states were forming a Confederacy among themselves and electing delegates to meet at a convention to be held at Montgomery. In March, 1861, they adopted a Constitution very much like that of the United States. Some of the important changes may be seen in the following extracts:

CONSTITUTION OF THE CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA.

We, the people of the Confederate States, each state acting in its sovereign and independent character, in order to form a permanent federal government,... invoking the favor and guidance of Almighty God—do ordain and establish this constitution for the Confederate States of America....



CONFEDERATE CAPITOL AT MONTGOMERY.

Congress shall... [not levy] any duties nor taxes on importations from foreign nations... to promote or foster any branch of industry....

No...law denying or impairing the right of property in negro slaves shall be passed.

The President . . . and the Vice-President shall hold their offices for the term of six years; but the President shall not be reëligible. . . .

[Any slave] in any state or territory of the Confederate States ... escaping into another ... shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such slave belongs. . . .

The Confederate States may acquire new territory; and...in all such territory, the institution of negro slavery...shall be recognized and protected by Congress.³³⁹

Jefferson Davis was chosen President of this Confederacy, and Alexander H. Stephens Vice-President.

Attempt of the Confederacy to treat with the United States. — In accordance with the last clause quoted of the Confederate constitution, the new government at Montgomery sent



THE MARKET-NEW ORLEANS.

a commission to Washington in March, to make arrangements regarding the common property and their future relations. William H. Seward, Lincoln's Secretary of State, sent them a copy of

Lincoln's inaugural address, writing at the same time:

A simple reference to [this address] will be sufficient to satisfy [the commissioners] that . . . the Secretary of State cannot . . . admit that the so-called Confederate States constitute a foreign power. . . .

Under these circumstances, the Secretary of State... is unable... to appoint a day on which they may present the evidences of their authority and the objects of their visit to the President of the United States.³⁴⁰

The Confederacy and Slavery. — Alexander H. Stephens, in a speech at Savannah, said:

The prevailing ideas entertained by ... most of the leading statesmen at the time of the formation of the old constitution were

that the enslavement of the African was in violation of the laws of nature.... Those ideas, ... rested upon the assumption of the equality of races. This was an error....

Our new government is founded upon exactly the opposite ideas; its foundations are laid, its corner-stone rests, upon the great truth that the negro is not the equal to the white man, that slavery... is his natural...condition. [Applause.]

We hear much of the civilization... of the barbarous tribes of Africa.... In my judgment,... [this will never be done] but by first teaching them to work, and feed, and clothe themselves.³⁴¹

STUDY ON 8.

1. Draw on your outline map for the Civil War a red line around the states which formed the Southern Confederacy. 2. Compare the preamble of the constitution of the Confederacy with that of the United States on p. 207; what difference do you notice? 3. What reasons had the South for making the other changes noted? 4. How was this new Confederacy like the old one of 1781-1789? 5. What property had the United States in the Confederacy? 6. What United States property is there in your town or city or county? 7. What was the attitude of the Confederacy toward the institution of slavery? 8. How did President Lincoln's inaugural answer the question in regard to the common property?

9. THE FIRST SHOT AND CALL TO ARMS.

Yes, we'll rally round the flag, hoys, we'll rally once again,
Shonting the battle cry of Freedom;
We will rally from the hill-side, we'll gather from the plain,
Shouting the battle cry of Freedom.

-Rally-song of North.

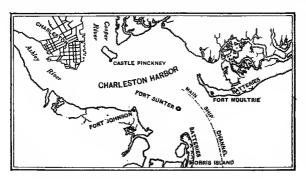
Southrons, hear your country call you!
Up, lest worse than death hefall you!
To arms! to arms! to arms, in Dixie!
Lo! all the heacon-fires are lighted—
Let all hearts be now united!
To arms! to arms! to arms, in Dixie!

- Southern rally-song.842

The Fall of Sumter. — As we have seen, the garrison at Fort Moultrie had moved into Fort Sumter. Anderson's reasons for this move are thus given by one of his men:

Fort Moultrie's walls were but twelve feet high. They were old, weak, and full of cracks....

Previous to Lincoln's election, Governor Gist had stated that in that event the state would undoubtedly secede, and demand the forts, and that any hesitation or delay in giving them up would lead to an immediate assault.... Yet the administration made



SKETCH-MAP OF FORTS IN CHARLESTON HARBOR.

no arrangements to withdraw us, and no effort to re-enforce us, because to do the former would excite great indignation in the North, and the latter might be treated as coercion at the South....

[Under these circumstances Major Anderson moved to Fort Sumter, where the governor of South Carolina sent two officers] to request him... to immediately return to Fort Moultrie. Anderson replied, in substance, that as commander of the forces of Charleston he had a... right to occupy any fort in the harbor. He stated that he, too, was a Southern man; that he believed the whole difficulty was brought on by the faithlessness of the North... but as to returning to Fort Moultrie, he could not, and he would not do it....³⁴³

On the 12th of April, General Beauregard, hearing that a fleet of war-vessels was just about to force an entrance into Charleston harbor to support Anderson, opened fire on Sumter.

After nearly two days of fighting, Anderson sent the following dispatch to Washington:

Sir: Having defended Fort Sumter for thirty-four hours until the quarters were entirely burned, the main gates destroyed,...the magazine [of powder] surrounded by flames, ... and no provisions but pork remaining, I accepted terms of evacuation offered by Gen. Beauregard . . . and marched out of the fort ... with colors flying and drums beating, . . . saluting my flag with fifty guns.344



"THE BUGLE CALL." (From Painting by Hunt.)

The Spirit of the Hour. — With the fall of Sumter, The Civil War had begun. Lincoln and Davis each called for troops. Mass-meetings were called in every part of the country, North and South. Stephen A. Douglas, in a speech at Chicago, said:

Every man must be for the United States or against it. There can be no neutrals in this war; only patriots — or traitors.

Sam Houston, in a speech in Texas, declared:

The time has come when a man's section is his country. I stand when I see the ... people ... for whose defence my

blood has been spilt, \dots threatened with invasion, I can but cast my lot with theirs. \dots

A Kentucky senator, addressing a Louisville mass-meeting, said:

Lincoln... has commanded us to send troops.... Kentucky will not do it.... Let us not fight the North or South, but tell our sister Border States that with them we will stand to maintain the Union, to preserve the peace, and uphold our honor, and our flag....

In a speech at a great mass-meeting in Union Square, New York, her Democratic Mayor said:

... We have heard that the Confederate flag shall wave over your Capitol before the first of May. [Groans.]... Before that flag shall fly over the national Capitol, every man, woman and child would enlist for the war. (Cheers, and cries of "That they will.")

An Irishman, at the same meeting, said:

Fellow-citizens, all through Europe, when down-trodden men look up and seek for some sign of hope, where do they look but to that flag, the flag of our Union?... That flag must not be allowed to trail in the dust, not though the hand that held it down is a brother's.

A German, speaking at the same meeting, said:

We have got in this country that freedom for which we have fought in vain on the other side of the Atlantic Ocean, and we will show that we are worthy of that new fatherland by defending its rights.³⁴⁵

The Rally, North and South. — The call to arms was answered by deeds as well as words, both North and South. Thousands and thousands of volunteers began their march,

millions on millions of dollars were raised for their support. The whole land was in motion. An Ohio senator thus describes the scenes at his state capitol:

Companies began to stream in from all parts of the state. On their first arrival, they were quartered wherever shelter could be had.... Going to my evening work at the State House, as I

crossed the rotunda I saw a company marching in by the south door, and another disposing of itself for the night upon the marble pavement near the east entrance; as I passed on into the north hall, I saw another that had come a little earlier holding a prayer-meeting, the stone arches echoing with the excited supplications of some one who was borne out of himself by the terrible pressure of events . . . , while, mingling with his pathetic, beseeching tones as he prayed for his country, came the shrill notes of the fife and the thundering din of the . . . bass-drum from the company marching in from the other side.

On the streets the excitement was of a rougher if not more intense character. . . . [Some one] would sometimes venture to speak out their sympathy with the rebellion. . . . In the boiling temper of the time the quick answer was a blow.³⁴⁶



UNION SOLDIER IN UNI-FORM.

(After War-numbers of Harper's Weekly.)

In the South, a similar spirit marked the hour. A Southern soldier writes:

At the first whisper of war among these excited crowds, a hundred youths repaired to a lawyer's office, drew up a muster roll, ... and began drilling in a concert-hall ...; and in every vacant building-lot of the village might be seen some half-dozen or more going through the movements...; and before a week had elapsed, two

full companies were drilling thrice a day, and marched through the streets every evening to the sound of fife and drum. . . . All wished



CONFEDERATE SOLDIER
IN UNIFORM.
(After War-numbers of Harper's
Weekly.)

to go forth and fight the Yankees... and settle the question without further delay....

The ambition of all was to carry a musket in the holy war of independence.... 347

STUDY ON 9.

1. Why did Anderson move into Fort Sumter? 2. Why did the Charleston people think he did it? 3. Why did the Charleston people attack Anderson? 4. Why should President Buchanan think that withdrawing the garrison would cause great indignation at the North? 5. Why should reinforcing it cause great indignation at the South? 6. How did Fort Sumter command Charleston? 7. How did it command the harbor of Charleston? 8. Whom was Anderson in honor bound to obey? 9. Why was his obedience harder than if he had been a Northern man? 10. Why did he surrender at last? 11. Why did Sam Houston fight for Texas when he did not believe in secession? 12. What did Senator Dixon of Kentucky hope the border states might do? 13. Why did the Irishman

and the German wish the Union to be preserved? 14. What made men willing to fight for the South? 15. What made men willing to fight for the North?

Supplementary Reading.—Henry Ward Beecher's address on the reraising of the flag over the ruins of Sumter, in Old South Leaflets. My Maryland, poem in Library of American Literature, IX. 596.

10. THE FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR, 1861.

LINCOLN, President.

They have met at last — as storm-clonds

Meet in heaven;

And the Northmen back and bleeding

Have been driven:

And their thunders have been stilled,

And their leaders crushed or killed,

And their ranks, with terror thrilled,

Rent and riven.

- From poem written just after Bull Run. 848

The Battle of Bull Run. — Sumter had fallen in April; before July, the Southern Confederacy was fully formed; the armies, both North and South, were marching to the front; and in the early part of that month, the Union forces began a march for Richmond. But they were met at the little stream of Bull Run, by the Confederate troops of Beauregard, who says of this battle:

The political hostilities of a generation were now face to face with weapons instead of words. Defeat to either side would be a deep mortification, but defeat to the South must turn its claim of independence into an empty vaunt. . . . That one army was fighting for union and the other for disunion is a political expression; the actual fact on the battle-field, in the face of cannon and musket, was that the Federal troops came as invaders, and the Southern troops stood as defenders of their homes, and further than this we need not go. The armies were vastly greater than had ever before fought on this continent.²⁴⁹

The story of the battle itself is thus told by a newspaper reporter:

It was noon, and now the battle commenced in the fierceness of its most extended fury. The batteries on the distant hill began to play upon our own, and upon our advancing troops, with hot and thunderous effects.... The noise of the cannonading was deafening and continuous.... It was heard at Fairfax, at Alexandria, at Washington itself.... All eyes were now directed to the distant hill-top, now the centre of the fight. All could see the enemy's infantry ranging darkly against the sky beyond, and the first lines of our men moving with fine determination up the steep slope. The cannonading upon our advance, the struggle upon the hill-top, ... were watched by us, and as new forces rushed in upon the enemy's side the scene was repeated over and over again....

Our fellows were hot and weary; most had drunk no water during hours of dust, and smoke, and insufferable heat. No one knows what choking the battle atmosphere produces in a few moments, until he has personally experienced it.... The conflict lulled for a little while. It was the middle of a blazing afternoon. Our regiments held the positions they had won, but the enemy kept receiving additions.... A sudden swoop, and a body of cavalry rushed down upon our columns near the bridge. They came from the woods on the left, and infantry poured out behind them.... The ambulances and wagons had gradually advanced to this spot, and of course an instantaneous confusion and dismay resulted. Our own infantry broke ranks in the field, plunged into the woods to avoid the road, got up the hill as best they could, without leaders, every man saving himself in his own way.

The Flight from the Field. -

For three miles, hosts of Federal troops...all detached from their regiments, all mingled in one disorderly route... were fleeing along the road, but mostly through the lots on either side. Army wagons, sutler's teams, and private carriages, choked the passage, tumbling against each other, amid clouds of dust and sickening sights and sounds.... Then the artillery, such as was saved, came thundering along, smashing and overpowering every thing. For ten

miles the road over which the grand army had so lately passed southward, gay with unstained banners, and flushed with surety of strength, was covered with the fragments of its retreating forces, shattered and panic-stricken in a single day.³⁵⁰

Comments of the Press. —

Boston Courier.

It is our duty, as it is our wish, to derive from the calamity every lesson it is fitted to ... enforce.... We are now fully engaged in a war, and with men who, it is evident, can and will fight.

New Orleans Crescent.

Many a brave Southerner has had to fall, too — but our loss, we are confident, is small in comparison to that of the enemy. Our brave boys fought with heroic courage, but they fell in the holy cause of defence against aggression.

London Times.

What the Americans call freedom . . . does not show to advantage at this critical time. . . . The last six months have proved beyond all question that [it] . . . is at least as likely to hurry a nation into war and debt, as the . . . most absolute despot.

Manchester Examiner.

Here we have politically the freest nation on the globe, as well as the most commercial, flinging their wealth and their lives away in order to fight for a principle. . . . This sight is one of the most glorious and inspiriting that the world ever beheld. It proves . . . that the freest people are the most ready to fight for any object that they consider just. ³⁶¹

The Blockade.—As soon as the war began, President Lincoln ordered a blockade of Southern ports; that is, he forbade ships to enter or leave them, and sent the ships of the navy to

watch these ports and see that the blockade was kept. George Cable, then a boy in New Orleans, describes the effect of the blockade in that city:

In the spring of 1862... there had come a great silence upon trade. Long ago the custom warehouses had first begun to show a growing roominess, then emptiness, and then had remained shut, and the iron bolts and cross-bars of their doors were gray with cobwebs.... For some time later the Levee had kept busy; but its stir and noise had gradually declined, faltered,... and faded out.... The blockade had closed in like a prison gate... and the queen of Southern commerce, the city that had once believed it was to be the greatest in the world, was absolutely out of employment.³⁵²

The experiences in other Southern cities were similar; as for the effect of the blockade in Europe, we turn to the English press:

content. Levery week the stock of cotton... becomes "small by degrees and beautifully less," and the question arises where shall we look for a fresh supply...? This difficulty must have been present to the minds of the Southern planters when they raised the standard of revolt. They argued that the first law of nature, self-preservation, would compel England and France to force the blockade of the Southern ports to supply themselves with an article the possession of which is necessary to keep down starvation... at home, and in this... they reasoned wisely. There are those among us who contend that... we must in self-defence violate the blockade to secure that great essential of life—cotton. **Southern ports to supply the secure that great essential of life—cotton. **Southern ports to secure that great essential of life—cotton. **Southern ports to secure that great essential of life—cotton. **Southern ports to secure that great essential of life—cotton. **Southern ports to supply the secure that great essential of life—cotton. **Southern ports to supply the secure that great essential of life when the possession of the secure that great essential of life.

STUDY ON 10.

1. How might Beauregard call the Northern troops at the battle of Bull Run invaders? 2. What was the Union army trying to do when it was met at Bull Run? 3. Why should the defeated troops feel ashamed of this battle? 4. Of what use was the battle of Bull Run to the South? 5. Of what use to the North? 6. What principle was the North fighting for?

7. What principle was the South fighting for? 8. What did the blockade hinder the South from getting? 9. What hindered her from making what she could not get? 10. Why should England be distressed by the blockade? 11. Take your Outline Map for the Civil War, and mark with a red cross Confederate victories of the first year of the war. 12. Mark with a blue cross the Union victories. (See list of events for this period.) 13. What were the fields of war in 1861? 14. What prominent generals were on either side? 15. At what points had the Union troops invaded the Confederacy? 16. Where had the Confederates invaded the North?

Supplementary Reading. — Manassas, in John Esten Cooke's Hammer and Rapier. New York, 1870. A Virginia Girl in the First Year of the War, Century Magazine, August, 1885; also in Battles and Leaders of the Civil War, Vol. I. Recollections of a Private, in Century Magazine, November, 1884, or in Battles and Leaders of the Civil War, Vol. I.



11. THE SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR.

LINCOLN, President.

At anchor in Hampton Roads we lay,
On board of the Cumberland, sloop-of-war;...
And we knew that the iron ship of our foes
Was steadily steering its course
To try the force of our ribs of oak.
Down upon us heavily runs,
Silent and sullen, the floating fort;
Then comes a puff of smoke from her guns,
And leaps the terrible death,
With flery breath,
From each open port.

- Longfellow, in poem on "Cumberland."

The Merrimac and Monitor. — During the second year of the war, the blockade was greatly strengthened, and one of the events which did the most to enforce it, was the invention of the Iron-clads. The western armies had already begun to use iron-

clad gun-boats on the Mississippi and its tributaries, often making them by covering river steamboats with iron plates; and in March of 1862, the Confederates tried the same plan on the ocean, and taking one of their frigates cut her down and covered her with iron. This was the Merrimac, and she was sent at once to Hampton Roads, where lay five great frigates of the United States navy, stanch and first-class ships. The story of the next two days is told as follows by a Confederate officer who witnessed the scene; the first encounter of the Merrimac was with the Cumberland and Congress.

As soon as the Merrimac came within range, the batteries and war-vessels opened fire. She passed on up, exchanging broadsides with the Congress, and making straight for the Cumberland, at which she made a dash, firing her bow-guns as she struck the doomed vessel with her prow. I could hardly believe my senses when I saw the masts of the Cumberland begin to sway wildly. After one or two lurches, her hull disappeared beneath the water, her guns firing to the last moment. Most of her brave crew went down with their ship, but not with their colors, for the Union flag still floated defiantly from the masts, which projected obliquely for about half their length above the water. . . . [The Merrimac now turned on the Congress, and quickly destroyed her,] for the projectiles hurled at the Merrimac glanced harmlessly from her iron-covered roof, while her rifled guns raked the Congress from end to end with terrific effect. [The Merrimac now faced the Minnesota, the third of her great antagonists.] The lofty frigate, towering above the water, now offered an easy target to the rifled guns of the Merrimac and the lighter artillery of the gun-boats . . . , and they raked their motionless antagonist from stern to stern.... Just at that moment the scene was one of unsurpassed magnificence. The bright afternoon sun shone upon the glancing waters..., and the flames were just bursting from the abandoned Congress. stranded Minnesota seemed a huge monster at bay, surrounded by the Merrimac and the gun-boats. The entire horizon was lighted up by the continual flashes of the artillery of these combatants, . . . while land and water seemed to tremble under the thunders of the incessant cannonade.

The *Minnesota* was now in a desperate situation... She had lost many men, and had once been set on fire... But...darkness was falling upon the scene of action [and this day's fight was over]. [The next morning] the *Merrimac*,...headed toward the *Minnesota*. But a most important incident had taken place during the night. The *Monitor* had reached Old Point about ten o'clock; her commander had been...ordered to proceed at once to the relief of the *Minnesota*....

As soon as the Merrimac approached her old adversary, the Monitor darted out from behind the Minnesota, whose immense bulk had effectually concealed her from view. No words can express the surprise with which we beheld this strange craft, whose appearance was tersely and graphically described by the exclamation of one of my oarsmen, "A tin can on a shingle!" Yet this insignificantlooking object was at that moment the most powerful war-ship in the world. The first shots of the Merrimac were directed at the Minnesota, which was again set on fire . . .; but the Monitor, having the advantage of light draught, placed herself between the Merrimac and her intended victim, and from that moment the conflict became a heroic single combat between the two iron-clads. For an instant they seemed to pause, as if to survey each other. Then advancing cautiously, the two vessels opened fire as soon as they came within range, and a fierce artillery duel raged between them.... For four hours, ... the cannonading continued with hardly a moment's intermission . . . , afterward they ceased firing and separated as if by common consent.354

Such was the famous fight of the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor*; of the two, the *Monitor* was much the smaller. A Confederate officer on the *Merrimac* reported: "After two hours' incessant firing I find that I can do her about as much damage as by snapping my thumb at her every two minutes and a half."

This little Monitor was the invention of John Ericsson.

The Fall of New Orleans. — The great event of 1862 in the Mississippi Valley was the fall of New Orleans into the bands of the United States fleet, commanded by Com. David G. Farragut and Gen. Benjamin F. Butler. The fleet forced their way by the Confederate forts at the mouth of the Mississippi, destroying the Confederate fleet as they went, and New Orleans surrendered in the last days of April. George W. Cable tells us of the day of surrender:

I shall not try to describe the day the alarm-bells told us the city was in danger and called every man to his mustering-point. The children poured out from the school gates and ran crying to their homes, meeting their sobbing mothers at their thresholds. The men fell into ranks.... I went to the river-side. There until far into the night I saw hundreds of drays carrying cotton out of the presses and yards to the wharves, where it was fired. The glare of those sinuous miles of flame set men and women weeping and wailing thirty miles away on the farther shore of Lake Pontchartrain....

In the afternoon, . . . came a roar of shoutings and imprecations and crowding feet down Common street. "Hurrah for Jeff Davis! Hurrah for Jeff Davis! Shoot them! Kill them! Hang them!" I locked the door on the outside and ran to the front of the mob, bawling with the rest, "Hurrah for Jeff Davis!" About every third man there had a weapon out. Two officers of the United States Navy were walking abreast, unguarded and alone, looking not to right or left, never frowning, never flinching, while the mob screamed in their ears, shook cocked pistols in their faces, cursed and crowded and gnashed upon them. So through the gates of death those two men walked to the City Hall to demand the town's surrender. It was one of the bravest deeds I ever saw done.

Later, ... an officer from the fleet stood on the City Hall roof about to lower the flag of Louisiana. In the street beneath gleamed the bayonets of a body of marines. A howitzer pointed up and

another down the street. All around swarmed the mob. Just then Mayor Monroe—lest the officer above should be fired upon and the howitzers open upon the crowd—came out alone and stood just before one of the howitzers, tall, slender, with folded arms, eyeing the gunner. Down sank the flag. . . . Then cheer after cheer rang out for Monroe. 355

STUDY ON II.

1. How did it happen that the Merrimac could destroy such strong ships as the Cumberland, Congress, and Minnesota? 2. Why could not they destroy the Merrimac? 3. Why could the Merrimac and Monitor not destroy each other? 4. Why did the Merrimac have to give up the contest? 5. What spirit was displayed by the combatants on either side? 6. To whom does the glory won by the Monitor belong? 7. Why did the nations of Europe begin to change their navies after this fight? 8. Why did the people of New Orleans set fire to their cotton when they found the Union troops were going to take their city? 9. Who might have fired on the Union officer who lowered the flag? 10. How did Mayor Monroe of New Orleans hinder this? 11. Describe two brave acts in connection with the taking of New Orleans. 12. Mark on Outline Map for the Civil War the Confederate victories of the second year with red. 13. The Union victories with blue. 14. What were the seats of war during this year? 15. Who were prominent leaders on either side?

Supplementary Reading. — The Merrimac and Monitor, in Old South Leaflets. Longfellow's poem The Cumberland. George W. Cable's New Orleans before the Capture, in Century Magazine, April, 1885. Commodore Farragut, in Scribner's Magazine, June, 1881.

12. THE WAR AND THE SLAVE.

LINCOLN, President.

Thus saith de Lord, bold Moses said,

Let my people go;

If not, I'll smite your first-born dead,

Let my people go,

Go down, Moses,

Way down in Egypt land,
Tell ole Pha-roh

Let my people go.

- Old slave song. 856

Contraband of War. — From the very beginning of the war, the negro slaves had escaped more or less to the Union lines, and many of the officers thought it right to treat them as fugitive slaves and sent them back; but they were often used in the Southern army as teamsters, cooks, etc., and Benjamin F. Butler declared that since they were of use to the enemy in war, it was perfectly right for the Union army to keep them as Contraband of war, just as it would keep guns, powder, fighting men, or anything else that it could get hold of that the enemy could use. So under this name, they were allowed to remain.

The Emancipation Proclamation. — But Lincoln solved the question more thoroughly. In the fall of 1862, he put forth a proclamation:

That on the first day of January, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, all persons held as slaves within any States..., the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States, shall be then, thenceforward, and forever free.³⁵⁷

On the first of January, accordingly, the Emancipation Proclamation was put forth. The following stories show how the colored people of the South became acquainted with it; one is of a slave who was a mere boy when the war broke out:

The other slaves told him he must listen sharp to what was said by the white folks, and report to them. He was the table waiter, and when they had talked over the war news his mistress would say to him, "Now Tom, you mustn't repeat a word of this." Tom would look, to use his own expression, "mighty obedient;" but, somehow, every slave on the plantation would hear the news within an hour.

One night the report of the proclamation came. The next morning the children were sitting in the slave-quarters at breakfast, when their young master rode up and told them they were free. They danced and sang for joy, and Tom, supposing he would have everything like his young master, decided at once what sort of a horse he would ride! They remained, however, on the plantation till 1865.

The history of another slave, one Holmes, a native of Charleston, was like this:

His father had learned to read a little, and secretly taught him his letters. He studied the business signs and the names on the doors when he carried home bundles for his master, and asked people to tell him a word or two at a time, until by 1860 he found himself able to read the papers very well....

When Charleston was threatened with capture by the Union troops, in 1862, his master, fearing they would get their freedom, sold his slaves to a trader, who confined them in the slave-prison until he should be ready to take them into the interior. While in prison Holmes got hold of a copy of President Lincoln's Proclamation of Emancipation. Great was the excitement and rejoicing as he read it aloud to his fellow-captives. Finally he was sold to a merchant of Chattanooga, Tennessee....

[Near the end of 1863] Chattanooga fell into the hands of the Union troops, and Holmes took advantage of the... proclamation which he had read the year before in the Charleston slave-pen. He hired out as a servant...[in] the Union army, at \$10 a month, but in the spring returned to the employ of his old owner, who offered him \$30 a month.

As for those who were then near the Union army:

They flocked in upon the line of march by bridle-paths and across the fields; old men on crutches, babies on their mothers' backs; women wearing the cast-off jackets of Yankee cavalry-men, boys in abbreviated trousers of rebel gray; sometimes lugging a bundle of household goods snatched from their cabins as they fled, ... but oftener altogether empty-handed.... But they were free; and with what swinging of ragged hats, and tumult of rejoicing hearts and fervent "God bless you's," they greeted their deliverers! 2558

Many of these Freedmen, as the emancipated slaves were now called, were enlisted into the Union army. Of their behavior as troops at the siege of Vicksburg, General Grant wrote:

On the 7th of June our little force of colored and white troops across the Mississippi, . . . were attacked by about three thousand men. . . . With the aid of the gun-boats the enemy were speedily repelled. . . . This was the first important engagement of the war in which colored troops were under fire. These men were very raw, having all been enlisted since the beginning of the siege, but they behaved well. 359

Of the general conduct of those negroes who remained on the old plantations during the whole war, *Henry W. Grady*, a famous Southern orator and editor, said:

History has no parallel to the faith kept by the negro in the South during the war. Often five hundred negroes to a single white man, and yet through these dusky throngs the women and children walked in safety, and the unprotected homes rested in peace. Unmarshalled, the black battalions moved patiently to the fields in the morning to feed the armies their idleness would have starved, and at night gathered anxiously at the big house to "hear the news from marster," though conscious that his victory made their chains enduring. . . . A thousand torches would have disbanded every Southern army, but not one was lighted. 360

STUDY ON 12.

1. In what states were there slaves that were not freed by the Emancipation Proclamation? 2. How did this proclamation injure the Southern masters? 3. What cause of trouble between the North and South did it remove? 4. Name three ways in which the slaves became acquainted with the Emancipation Proclamation. 5. What does the fact that so many of the slaves remained upon the old plantations show in regard to their masters? 6. Why did Holmes have to wait a year after the Proclamation was put forth before he could take advantage of it? 7. Why should the freedmen be poor? 8. Ignorant? 9. What proofs do you find of their ignorance in the text? 10. Why would it be harder for these freedmen to take care of themselves than for ordinary working-men? 11. What good qualities did the negro show during the war? 12. What could he have done during the war to injure the South? 13. What did he do to help the South? 14. Give four important events in the history of slavery, in their order.

Supplementary Reading.—Susan Dabney Smede's Memorials of a Southern Planter. Baltimore, 1887. The Negro Soldiers of Port Hudson, in Library American Literature, X. 488. Uncle Lige, Library American Literature, IX. 463.



13. THE THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR; CHANCEL-LORSVILLE, GETTYSBURG, AND VICKSBURG.

LINCOLN, President.

Only their deeds and names are ours—but, for a century yet,
The dead who fell at Gettysburg the land shall not forget.
God send us peace! and where for aye the loved and lost recline
Let fall, O South, your leaves of palm—O North, your sprigs of pine!

- CLARENCE STEDMAN. 861

Chancellorsville. — In the first months of 1863, fighting was heavy and the progress slow. Grant was besieging Vicksburg; the Union and Confederate armies, in Tennessee, simply checked

each other; in Virginia, Lee was gaining ground, and had already won the great victory of Fredericksburg. But in May,



ROBERT E. LEE.

he won the still greater victory of Chancellorsville. The following scene from this battle is thus described by an old Confederate colonel in a speech at Baltimore:

The troops were pressing forward with all the ardor... of combat. The white smoke of musketry fringed the front of the line of battle, while the artillery on the hills... shook the earth with its thunder and filled the air with the wild shrieks of the shells that plunged into the masses of the retreating foe. To add greater horror and sublimity to the seene,

the Chancellorsville house and the woods surrounding it were wrapped in flames. In the midst of this awful scene General Lee, mounted upon that horse which we all remember so well, rode to the front of his advancing battalions... One long, unbroken cheer, in which the feeble cry of those who lay helpless on the earth blended with the strong voices of those who still fought, rose high above the roar of battle and hailed the presence of the victorious chief.... But at that moment..., a note was brought to him from General Jackson.... The note... congratulated General Lee upon the great victory.... With a voice broken with emotion he bade me say to General Jackson that the victory was his, and that the congratulations were due to him.... 362

On hearing later that General Jackson was fatally wounded, Lee wrote him: Could I have directed events, I should have chosen, for the good of the country, to have been disabled in your stead. I congratulate you upon the victory which is due to your skill and energy.

One who was with Jackson at the last says:

When this despatch was handed to me at the tent, and I read it aloud, General Jackson turned his face away and said, "General Lee is very kind, but he should give the praise to God." 363

Gettysburg and Vicksburg. — But Chancellorsville was far from ending the war. Grant was still besieging Vicksburg; the Union armies still held their lines through Tennessee and Virginia. It was then that Lee invaded Pennsylvania, trying thus to change the seat of war to the northward, and relieve Vicksburg. It was in this invasion that Lee, with 70,000 men, met Meade with 100,000, in the famous battle of Gettysburg. This battle lasted for three days, and more than 20,000 men on either side perished. The last charge made from Lee's army, and its repulse, is thus described by one of the Union combatants:

From the opposite ridge, three-fourths of a mile away, a line of skirmishers sprang lightly forward out of the woods, and . . . moved rapidly down into the open fields, closely followed by a line of battle, then by another, and by yet a third. Both sides watched this never-to-be-forgotten scene—the grandeur of attack of so many thousand men. Gibbon's division, which was to stand the brunt of the assault, looked with admiration on the different lines of the Confederates, marching forward with easy, swinging step. . . .

Soon little puffs of smoke issued from the skirmish line, as it came dashing forward, firing in reply to our own skirmishers in the plain below, and with this faint rattle of musketry the stillness was broken; never hesitating for an instant, but driving our men before it... their skirmish line reached the ... road. This was Pickett's advance.... They pushed on toward the crest, ... while the ...

canister from the batteries tore gaps through those splendid Virginia battalions.

The men of our brigade, with their muskets at the ready, lay in waiting. One could plainly hear the orders of the officers as they commanded, "Steady, men, steady! Don't fire!"...

By an undulation of the surface of the ground ..., the rapid advance of the dense line of Confederates was for a moment lost to view; an instant after they seemed to rise out of the earth, and so near that the expression of their faces was distinctly seen. Now our men knew that the time had come, and could wait no longer. Aiming low, they opened a deadly ... discharge upon the moving mass in their front. Nothing human could stand it. ... All that portion of Pickett's division which came within the zone of this terrible close musketry fire appeared to melt and drift away in the powder-smoke. ...

A Confederate battery... commenced firing.... A cannon-shot tore a horrible passage through the dense crowd of men in blue, who were gathering outside of the trees; instantly another shot followed, and fairly cut a road through the mass.... Just then, as I was stepping backward, with my face to the men, urging them on, I felt a sharp blow as a shot struck me.... As I went down our men rushed forward past me, capturing battle-flags and making prisoners.

Pickett's division lost nearly six-sevenths of its officers and men. Gibbon's division, with its leader wounded, and with a loss of half its strength, still held the crest.³⁶⁴

That was the end of the battle, and that night Lee began his retreat to Virginia.

The Gettysburg fight ended on the third of July. On the fourth, Vicksburg surrendered to General Grant, after a siege of six weeks.

Chattanooga. — After Vicksburg fell, Grant was sent to the help of the Union troops in Chattanooga, who had been be-

sieged for two months by the Confederates. To relieve Chattanooga, Grant was obliged to capture two lofty and well-defended heights, *Lookout Mountain* and *Missionary Ridge*, both held by Confederate troops. A soldier who helped take Missionary Ridge thus describes the fight:



LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN.

At twenty minutes before four the signal-guns were fired. Suddenly twenty thousand men rushed forward, moving in line of battle by brigades. The enemy's rifle-pits were ablaze, and the whole ridge in our front had broken out like another Ætna. Not many minutes afterward our men were seen working through the felled trees and other obstructions. Though exposed to such a terrific fire, they neither fell back nor halted. By a bold and desperate push they broke through the works in several places.... The enemy was thrown into confusion, and took precipitate flight up the ridge.... The order of the commanding general had now been fully... carried out. But... with a sudden impulse, and without orders, all started up the ridge.... Sixty flags were advancing up the hill.... Sometimes drooping as the bearers were shot, but never reaching the ground, for other brave hands were there to seize them....

The sun had not yet gone down, Missionary Ridge was ours. . . . Dead and wounded comrades lay thickly strewn upon the ground; but thicker yet were the dead and wounded men in gray. Then

followed the wildest confusion, as the victors gave vent to their joy. Some madly shouted; some wept from very excess of joy;... even our wounded forgot their pain to join in the general hurrah....

In that one hour of assault, they lost 2337 men in killed and wounded, — more than twenty per cent of their whole force.³⁶⁵

STUDY ON THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR.

1. What made General Lee a good commander for the South? 2. What was there noble in the way he received Jackson's congratulations? 3. How should Lee imagine that by invading Pennsylvania he could relieve Vicksburg? 4. Why was the battle of Gettysburg important? 5. What was there grand about Pickett's advance? 6. What was there grand about the way it was met? 7. Why did it require great courage to take Missionary Ridge? 8. What proves that Missionary Ridge was stoutly held? 9. Take your Outline Map for this period and mark in red the Confederate victories of the year. 10. Mark in blue the Union victories. 11. What were the seats of war during this period? 12. Who was the leading general on each side? 13. How did the taking of Vicksburg give the Union the control of the Mississippi? 14. How did this cut the Confederacy in two? 15. By the taking of Chattanooga, the railroads were opened to what places?

Supplementary Reading. — Major Penniman's Tanner-boy (General Grant). J. E. Cooke's Gettysburg, in Hammer and Rapier. A Woman's Diary of the Siege of Vicksburg, Century Magazine, September, 1885. P. H. Hayne, Vicksburg, in Library American Literature, VIII. 461. J. W. Palmer, Stonewall Jackson's Way, Poem in Library American Literature, VIII. 259.

14. WAR-PICTURES.

~~~<del>~~</del>~~~

Arous'd and angry,
I thought to beat the alarum, and urge relentless war;
But soon my fingers fail'd me, my face droop'd, and I resign'd myself,
To sit by the wounded and soothe them, or silently watch the dead.

- WALT WHITMAN, in Drum-Taps.

Behind the Lines in Vicksburg. — A lady living in Vicksburg thus describes her experiences during the siege:

March 20th.—The slow shelling of Vicksburg goes on all the time.... Those who are to stay are having caves built.... [Ours] is well made in the hill that slopes just in the rear of the house, and well propped with thick posts....

June 7th.—... The weather has been dry a long time, and we hear of others dipping up the water from ditches and mud-holes. This place has two large underground cisterns of good cool water.... One cistern I had to give up to the soldiers, who swarm about like hungry animals seeking something to devour. Poor fellows! my heart bleeds for them. They have nothing but spoiled, greasy bacon, and bread made of musty pea-flour, and but little of that.... They come into the kitchen when Martha puts the pan of corn-bread in the stove, and beg for the bowl she mixed it in. They shake up the scrapings with water, put in their bacon, and boil the mixture into a kind of soup, which is easier to swallow than pea-bread....

July 3d. . . . Shells flying as thick as ever. Provisions so nearly gone, . . . that a few more days will bring us to starvation indeed. Martha says rats are hanging dressed in the market for sale with mule meat, — there is nothing else. . . .

July 4th. — It is evening. All is still. Silence and night are once more united. I can sit at the table in the parlor and write. [Vicksburg has surrendered. About noon,]...Mr. J. passed....

"Keep on the lookout," he said; "the army of occupation is coming along," and in a few minutes the head of the column appeared. What a contrast to the suffering creatures we had seen so long were these stalwart, well-fed men... Sleek horses, polished arms, bright plumes,—this was the pride and panoply of war. 386

Domestic Life in the Confederacy.—A Confederate gentleman thus describes the effect of the war on home-life in general:

From first to last, salt was the most precious of all commodities.... At times not a pound of salt could be bought at any price....

Iron was now the precious metal.... Frequent calls were made for plantation bells to be cast into cannon. Many church bells were also given.... A large society of ladies undertook to furnish material for building an iron-clad by collecting all the broken pots.

pans, and kettles in the Confederacy.... All idle nails were carefully drawn and laid away for future use. . . .

> As every thread of clothing had to be homespun, . . . the hum of the wheel and the thump of the loom were . . . almost as ceaseless as the tick of the clock...

> Much less than four years

had sufficed to reduce the . . . wardrobes to nothing. . . . Not Worn by a Confederate Soldier in latter part of the war. (Sketched from pair in Libby Prison to speak of the silk dresses, which amid the enthusiasm of

the earlier, brighter days of the war had been converted into battle-flags, woolen dresses and shawls had, later on, been made into shirts for the soldiers, as the carpets had been made into blankets. and the linen and curtains into lint and bandages for the wounded. . . .

A PAIR OF WOODEN-SOLED SHOES,

Museum, Chicago.)

Sugar, after the fall of Vicksburg, was almost as scarce as coffee. . . .

Every available bit of paper, every page of old account-books, whether already written on one side or not, and even the fly-leaves of printed volumes . . . [were] ferreted out and exhausted. Envelopes were made of scraps of wall-paper and from the pictorial pages of old books, - the white side out, stuck together in some cases with the gum that exudes from peach-trees. . . .

All these . . . burdens . . . were cheerfully borne, and . . . through all hardships and grievances the belief of the great mass of people in the Confederacy survived to the end.367

Scenes in Virginia. — The following pictures of the time are taken from the letters of private soldiers in the Northern army:

The estate upon which the army is encamped ... is a noble plantation lying in the bend of the James River. Every sign of vegetation is trampled out, and its broad acres are as bare and hard beaten as a travelled road... Most of the elegant furniture was left in the house. The rich carpets remained upon the floor. In three hours' time they were completely covered with mud.... It made my heart ache to see... [the soldiers] break mahogany chairs for the fire, and split up a rosewood piano for kindling.

## Another writes late in 1861:

We have taken very heavy colds, lying on our arms in line of battle, long frosty nights. For two days and nights there was a very severe storm, to which we were exposed all the time, wearing shoddy uniforms and protected only by shoddy blankets, and the result was a frightful amount of sickness. . . . 368

The Sanitary Commission. — To assist the government in caring for the sick and wounded soldiers, the Sanitary Commission was formed. Its work is thus described by Mrs. Mary A. Livermore, who was one of its managers:

The commission put nurses into the hospitals who had been trained for the work, and who, . . . were attracted to it by large humanity and patriotic zeal.

It established a series of kettles on wheels..., in which soup was quickly made in the rear of battle-fields, for the faint and wounded, even while the battle was in progress.

It invented hospital cars, . . . in which the ordinary hospital bed was suspended by stout tugs of india rubber, preventing jolting. . . .

After the battle of Antietam, where ten thousand of our own wounded were left on the field, besides a large number of the enemy, the Commission distributed 28,763... shirts, towels, bed-ticks, pillows, etc.; ... 2620 pounds of condensed milk; 5000 pounds of

beef-stock and canned meats; 3000 bottles of wine and cordials; 4000 sets of hospital clothing; several tons of lemons and other fruit; crackers, tea, sugar, rubber cloth, tin cups,... and other hospital conveniences.

Mrs. Livermore thus describes the scene at the opening of a great fair held in Chicago to help support the work of the commission:

By nine o'clock, the city was in a roar. Bands of music playing patriotic airs, bands of young men and women singing patriotic songs, groups of children singing their cheerful and loyal school songs, enlivened the streets. . . .

[In one part of the procession which opened the fair] came, in carriages, the convalescent soldiers from the hospitals... wan, thin, bronzed, haggard, maimed, crippled. One incessant roar greeted them in their progress. They were pelted with flowers. Ladies surrendered their parasols to them, to screen them from the sun. People rushed from the sidewalks to offer their hands....

But perhaps the most interesting spectacle of all was...a procession of the farmers of Lake County.... There were hundreds of farm-wagons, loaded to overflowing with vegetables. The staid farm-horses were decorated with little flags, larger flags floating over the wagons, and held by stout farmer hands. The first wagon of the procession bore a large banner, with this inscription: "The gift of Lake County to our brave boys in the hospitals, through the great North-western Fair."...

## On the Farms of Wisconsin. Mrs. Livermore writes:

In the early summer of 1863, frequent calls of business took me through the extensive farming districts of Wisconsin... Women were in the field everywhere, driving the reapers, binding and shocking, and loading grain...

"And so you are helping gather the harvest!" I said to a woman of forty-five or fifty, who sat on the reaper to drive, as she stopped

her horses for a brief breathing spell.... "Have you sons in the army?"

"Yes," and a shadow fell over the motherly face.... "All three of 'em'listed, and Neddy, the youngest, was killed at the battle of Stone River.... 360

#### STUDY ON 14.

1. In what ways did the citizens of Vicksburg suffer during the siege? 2. Why did they live in caves? 3. Why did they suffer for food? 4. Why did the Confederate soldiers have to wear such shoes? 5. Why did the people in the South suffer so for lack of clothing? 6. Of iron? 7. Why should they suffer more for sugar after the fall of Vicksburg? 8. Why did they not have paper? 9. What qualities did the Southerners show in meeting these troubles? 10. In what other ways would a Southerner living in Virginia or in any of the seats of war suffer? 11. From what did the soldiers in camp suffer? 12. How did the Sanitary Commission help the North? 13. How was this Commission supported? 14. What qualities were shown by those who were in the Sanitary Commission? 15. By those who supported it? 16. Why could the North so easily send clothing, flour, milk, lemons, tea, sngar, rubber cloth, etc., to the soldiers? 17. Why did the people feel so towards the convalescent soldiers from the hospitals? 18. Why were the women working the farms in Wisconsin? 19. In what ways did Southern women help their soldiers? 20. Northern women?

Supplementary Reading. — Mrs. Mary A. Livermore's My Story of the Civil War. Hartford, 1889. Eliza McH. Ripley's From Flag to Flag. New York, 1889. In War Times at La Rosa Blanche. 1888. Confederate Makeshifts, Harper's Magazine, LII. 576. Domestic Life in the Confederacy, Atlantic Monthly, August, 1886.

## 15. THE LAST CAMPAIGNS OF THE WAR; SHER-MAN'S MARCH.

LINCOLN, President.

Our camp-fires shone bright on the mountain
That frowned on the river below,
As we stood by our guns in the morning,
And eagerly watched for the foe;
When a rider came out of the darkness
That hung over mountain and tree,
And shouted "Up and be ready!
For Sherman will march to the sea!"

- Northern Song.370

Come — for the crown is on thy head!
Thy woes a wondrous beauty shed;
Not like a lamb to slaughter led,
But with the lion's monarch tread,
Oh! come unto thy battle bed,
Savannah! O Savannah!

- Southern Song. 371

Grant's Plan of Campaign.—After the great victories of 1863, Lincoln made Ulysses S. Grant commander-in-chief of all the Union forces; his plan was simply "to concentrate all the force possible against the Confederate armies in the field." So, with the armies of the Potomac,—122,000 men, he opposed himself to the armies of Lee,—62,000 men; while Sherman, with 100,000 men, was to capture Johnston's army and take Atlanta. On the 5th of May both armies began their advance. But Johnston retreated so skilfully through the mountains that Sherman was unable to gain any positive advantage over him. On reaching Atlanta, both armies prepared for battle; but just then, Mr. Davis replaced Johnston by Hood,

and in the three hard battles which followed, the Confederates

were beaten, and Sherman took possession of Atlanta.

Sherman's March to the Sea. — Hood now retreated back towards Tennessee, thinking to draw Sherman after him. Instead of this Sherman burned Atlanta, and issued the following orders:

The general commanding deems it proper at this time to inform the



ULYSSES S. GRANT (in 1863).

officers and men . . . that he has organized them into an army for a special purpose, well known . . . to General Grant. It is sufficient for you to know that it involves . . . a long and difficult march. . . . The army . . . will gather, near the route traveled, corn or forage of any kind, meat of any kind, vegetables, corn-meal, or whatever is needed by the command, aiming at all times to keep in the wagons at least ten days' provisions for his command, and three days' forage. Soldiers must not enter the dwellings of the inhabitants, or commit any trespass; but, during a halt or camp, they may be permitted to gather turnips, potatoes, and other vegetables, and to drive in stock in sight of their camp. . . .

To corps commanders alone is intrusted the power to destroy mills, houses, cotton-gins, etc... In districts and neighborhoods where the army is unmolested, no destruction of such property should be permitted.

Of the march from Atlanta to the sea, Sherman writes:

Behind us lay Atlanta, smouldering and in ruins, the black smoke rising high in air, and hanging like a pall over the ruined city.... The general sentiment was that we were marching for Richmond, and that there we should end the war, but how and when they seemed to care not; nor did they measure the distance, or count the cost in life, or bother their brains about the great rivers to be crossed, and the food required for man and beast, that had to be gathered by the way. The first night out the whole horizon was lurid with the bonfires of rail-ties, and groups of men all night were carrying the heated rails to the nearest trees, and bending them around the trunks.... I attached much importance to this destruction of the railroad, gave it my own personal attention, and made reiterated orders to others on the subject.

The next day we passed through the handsome town of Covington, the soldiers closing up their ranks, the color-bearers unfurling their flags, and the bands striking up patriotic airs. The white people came out of their houses to behold the sight, spite of their deep hatred of the invaders, and the negroes were simply frantic with joy. Whenever they heard my name, they clustered about my horse, shouted and prayed in their peculiar style, which had a natural eloquence that would have moved a stone. I have witnessed hundreds, if not thousands, of such scenes. . . .

We found abundance of corn, molasses, meal, bacon, and sweet-potatoes. We also took a good many cows and oxen, and a large number of mules. In all these the country was quite rich, never before having been visited by a hostile army; the recent crop had been excellent, had been just gathered and laid by for winter. As a rule, we destroyed none, but kept our wagons full, and fed our teams bountifully.<sup>372</sup>

On reaching Savannah in December, Sherman laid siege to it, and after eight days it fell into his hands. After remaining here until February, Sherman started northward toward Virginia. Of the march through South Carolina, a private writes:

I dreaded to start out on the road through South Carolina, knowing the settled hate of the soldiers toward the state, and their settled determination to destroy all they could, as they marched through it.... As I anticipated, fire and smoke and complete destruction marked our pathway.

We arrived at Columbia, the state capital, on the 16th February.... It was not the intention of our commanding officers that Columbia should be sacked and burned, and stringent orders were given to prevent this. But the saloons and cellars of the city were full of intoxicating drinks. The boys found them, got drunk, and broke from all restraint.... Nothing could stay them.... On Saturday morning the City of Columbia was in ashes....

But the great evil of all is the destitution in which we leave the poorer classes of these people. I have often seen them sitting with rueful faces as we passed, sometimes weeping. Not a thing has been left to eat in many cases; not a horse, or an ox, or a mule to work with... A woman told me, with her cheeks wet with tears, that she drew the plough herself while her husband, old and quite decrepit, held it, to prepare the soil for all the corn they raised last year... It was not the intention of the commanding officers that the poor people should be thus...stripped. But unprincipled stragglers ramble out of the lines,... and show no mercy or heart. They are the "bummers" of the army. 373

The aim of Sherman's march was to join Grant in Virginia, massing all forces against Lee. But Johnston had been recalled to the command, and gathering up all available forces, he threw himself in Sherman's way, and gave him battle near Goldsboro. The battle was long doubtful, but Sherman at last prevailed. Here both armies waited to see how things would go with Lee before Richmond.

#### STUDY ON 15.

1. When Grant took command of the armies, what important cities had fallen into the hands of the Union or Federal troops? (See list of events.)

2. What great armies confronted each other on the borders of Tennessee and Georgia, and who commanded each? 3. What great armies confronted each other in Virginia, and who commanded each? 4. Make a list of the ways in which Sherman's march injured the South. 5. Why should the commanding officers be allowed to destroy mills and cotton-gins? 6. What was done along this march that onght not to have been done? 7. What do you understand by a bummer? 8. Mark on your Outline Map for the Civil War, the Confederate victories of 1864 with red, the Union victories with blue. 9. What states were commanded by Union forces at the close of this year? 10. What Southern cities had fallen into the hands of the Union troops?

Supplementary Reading.—For Sherman's march, see Harper's Monthly, XXXI. 571; XXXII. 367.



## 16. THE LAST CAMPAIGNS OF THE WAR; GRANT'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST LEE.

LINCOLN, President.

Still in his veterans' hearts to-day His battle-drums are beating; His bugles always blew advance. With him was no retreating.

- Poem on Grant. 874

Honor followed as his shadow
Valor lightened all his cares;
And he rode — that grand Virginian —
Last of all the cavaliers.

- Poem on Lee, 875

Grant and Lee before Richmond.—At the opening of the campaign of 1864 in Virginia, heavy fighting began at once with the three days' battles of the Wilderness. Then came the battles of Spottsylvania Court-House, lasting for ten days. It was during this last series of battles that Grant sent Sheridan on a famous raid, of which Grant writes:

I directed Sheridan... to cut loose from the Army of the Potomac, [and] pass around... the entire rear of Lee's army.... He started at daylight the next morning, and accomplished more than

was expected. It was sixteen days before he got back to the Army of the Potomac. . . .

Sheridan in this memorable raid passed entirely around Lee's army; encountered his cavalry in four engagements and defeated them in all; recaptured 400 Union prisoners and killed and captured many of the enemy; destroyed and used many supplies and munitions of war; destroyed miles of railroad and telegraph, and freed us from annoyance by the cavalry for more than two weeks.<sup>376</sup>

But in spite of all this heavy fighting, in which tens of thousands of men perished, Lee could not force Grant to retreat, nor could Grant break through Lee's army to make a way to Richmond. After the short and terrible fight at Cold Harbor, in which Grant lost 15,000 men, as against Lee's loss of 1700, Grant decided to try the defences of Richmond from the south. But there Lee met him again behind the lines of Petersburg, and there both armies lay till the spring of 1865, neither general being able to get a positive advantage over the other.

Condition of Lee's Army.— The condition of Lee's army during this year may be seen in the following extracts from Lee's letters to Davis:

Jan. 18, 1864.—The want of shoes and blankets in this army continues to cause much suffering.... In one regiment I am informed that there are only fifty men with serviceable shoes, and a brigade that recently went on pickett was compelled to leave several hundred men in camp who were unable to endure the exposure..., being destitute of shoes and blankets....

Sept. 2, 1864.—... Our ranks are constantly diminishing by battle and disease, and few recruits are received.... The time has come when no man capable of bearing arms should be excused.<sup>317</sup>

The End at Appointation.—Grant was constantly trying to get around to the rear of Lee's army, while Lee steadily

lengthened his line of defence. This could not go on always, and Grant was able at last to break his way with his 100,000 men through Lee's weakened lines, and entered Petersburg and Richmond, April second and third. Mr. Davis and the Confederate government escaped by rail to Georgia. Lee began a rapid retreat to join Johnston's army; but before he reached Lynchburg, Sheridan had cut off his retreat, while Grant was in full pursuit. Between two strong Union armies, Lee surrendered his own at Appointant Court-House on the ninth of April. Grant's account of the surrender is as follows:

When I went into the house I found General Lee. We greeted each other, and after shaking hands took our seats. . . .

What General Lee's feelings were I do not know. As he was a man of much dignity, . . . it was impossible to say whether he felt inwardly glad that the end had finally come, or felt sad over the result, and was too manly to show it. Whatever his feelings, they were entirely concealed from my observation; but I felt like anything rather than rejoicing over the downfall of a foe who had fought so long and valiantly. . . .

General Lee... asked... from me the terms I proposed to give his army. I said that I meant merely that his army should lay down their arms, not to take them up again during the continuance of the war....

I... said to him that I thought this would be the last battle of the war—I sincerely hoped so; and I said further I took it that most of the men in the ranks were small farmers.... It was doubtful whether they would be able to put in a crop to carry themselves and their families through the next winter without the aid of the horses they were then riding. The United States did not want them and I would, therefore, instruct the officers... to let every man of the Confederate army who claimed to own a horse or mule take the animal to his home....

General Lee . . . remarked that . . . his men had been living for

some days on parched corn exclusively, and that he would have to ask me for rations and forage. I told him... to send... to Appomattox where he could have... all the provisions wanted.<sup>378</sup>

#### In Lee's Memoirs we read:

When, after his interview with Grant, General Lee again appeared, a shout of welcome instinctively ran through the army. But instantly recollecting the sad occasion that brought him before them, their shouts sank into silence, every hat was raised, and the bronzed faces of the thousands of grim warriors were bathed with tears.

As he rode slowly along the lines hundreds of his devoted veterans pressed around the noble chief, trying to take his hand, touch his person, or even lay a hand upon his horse.... The general then, with head bare and tears flowing freely down his manly cheeks, bade adieu to the army. In a few words he told the brave men who had been so true in arms to return to their homes and become worthy citizens.<sup>379</sup>

#### STUDY ON 16.

1. Take your Outline Map for the Civil War, and mark in blue the Union victories of 1865; mark in red Confederate victories. 2. What harm did Sheridan's raid do to Lee's army? 3. What made the Virginian campaigns of 1864 terrible? 4. Why could not Lee hold out longer? 5. What nobility did Grant show on the occasion of Lee's surrender? 6. What nobility did Lee show? 7. In what war had Grant and Lee both served before the time of the Civil War? 8. Why did the loss of Lee's army mean the ruin of the Confederacy? 9. How was it that Grant's army had more to eat than Lee's?

Supplementary Reading. — Thomas Buchanan Read's poem of Sheridan's Ride. Fall of Richmond, in Harper's Monthly, XXXIII. 92. John Esten Cooke's Mohun; or, The Last Days of Lee and his Paladins. Richardson's The Field, Dungeon, and Escape.

#### 17. ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

... Standing like a tower,
Our children shall behold his fame
The kindly-earnest, brave, foreseeing man,
Sagacious, patient, dreading praise no blame,
New hirth of our new soil, the first American.

-LOWELL, in Commemoration Ode.

The Death of Lincoln.— Throughout the war the friends of Lincoln had feared for his life, but he was unwilling to have any military guard. A few days after the surrender of Lee, while in the theatre, Lincoln was shot from behind by John Wilkes Booth, who with a band of conspirators had plotted this base deed, thinking thus to help the Confederacy. The whole country, South as well as North, lamented his death, and the land was filled with mourning.

Life of Lincoln.—The life of Lincoln before becoming President was thus summed up by himself, in 1858:

Born, February 12, 1809, in Hardin County, Ky.

Education, defective.

Profession, Lawyer.

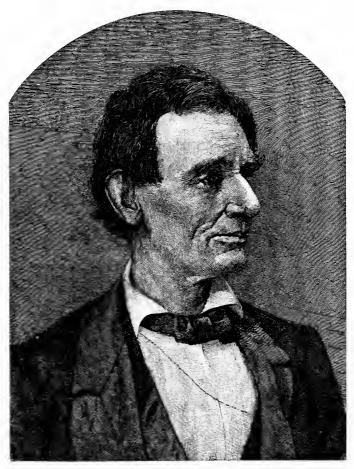
Have been a Captain of Volunteers in the Black Hawk War.

Postmaster at a very small Office.

Four times a Member of the Illinois Legislature, and was a Member of the Lower House of Congress.<sup>380</sup>

He described himself as belonging "to what they call down South the Scrubs," or poor whites. While he was still a boy, his father moved from Kentucky into Indiana, and thence into Illinois, where they built the house pictured on p. 226.

A man who used to work with Abraham occasionally during his first years in Illinois, says that at that time he was the roughest



Schercoln

looking person he ever saw. He was tall, angular and ungainly, and wore trousers made of flax and tow, cut tight at the ankle, and out at both knees.... He made a bargain with Mrs. Nancy Miller to split four hundred rails for every yard of brown jeans, dyed with white walnut bark, that would be necessary to make him a pair of trousers. In these days he used to walk five, six and seven miles to his work.<sup>381</sup>

After the Black Hawk War, Lincoln tried keeping a country store, but spent much of his time in studying law and surveying. At last he gave up the store altogether and began the practice of law. From this time his progress was quietly, steadily onward.

Stories and Words of Lincoln. — While a store-keeper in Illinois:

Just as he was closing the store for the night, a woman entered, and asked for half a pound of tea. The tea was weighed out and paid for, and the store was left for the night. The next morning, Abraham entered to begin the duties of the day, when he discovered a four ounce weight on the scales. He saw at once that he had made a mistake, and, shutting the store, he took a long walk before breakfast to deliver the remainder of the tea.

## After his first election to the Illinois Legislature:

At the close of the canvass which resulted in his election, he walked to Springfield, borrowed "a load" of books, ... and took them home with him.... He studied while he had bread, and then started out on a surveying tour, to win the money that would buy more. One who remembers his habits during this period says that he went, day after day, for weeks, and sat under an oak tree on a hill, and read.... When the time for the assembling the Legislature approached, Lincoln dropped his law books, shouldered his pack, and on foot, trudged to ... the capital of the State, about a hundred miles, to make his entrance into public life. 382

On leaving his home in Springfield for Washington in 1861, he said:

My friends,—No one... can appreciate the sadness I feel at this parting. To this people I owe all that I am. Here I have lived more than a quarter of a century; here my children were born, and here one of them lies buried.... A duty devolves upon me which is perhaps greater than that which has devolved upon any other man since the days of Washington.... I feel that I cannot succeed without the same Divine aid which sustained him, and on the same Almighty Being I place my reliance for support.<sup>383</sup>

## An officer of the army said:

The first week of my command, there were twenty-four deserters sentenced by court-martial to be shot; and the warrants for their execution were sent to the President to be signed. He refused. I went to Washington, and had an interview. I said: "Mr. President, unless these men are made an example of, the army itself is in danger. Mercy to the few is cruelty to the many." He replied: "Mr. General, there are already too many weeping widows in the United States. For God's sake, don't ask me to add to the number, for I won't do it." 384

At the dedication of a national burying-ground on the field of Gettysburg in 1863, Lincoln said:

It is for us...to...here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom, and that government of the people, by the people, and for the people, shall not perish from the earth.<sup>385</sup>

The closing words of his second inaugural address were:

With malice towards none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right, as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for who shall have borne the battle, and for his widow and orphans; to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and a lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations.<sup>386</sup>

On the last day of his life, while riding with Mrs. Lincoln,

He spoke of his old Springfield home, and recollections of his early days, his little brown cottage, the law office, the court-room, the green bag for his briefs and law papers... "We have laid by," said he..., "some money, and during this term we will try and save up more, but shall not have enough to support us. We will go back to Illinois, and I will open a law-office at Springfield or Chicago, and practice law, at least do enough to help give us a livelihood." <sup>287</sup>

## Judgments of Lincoln. — Emerson wrote of Lincoln:

A plain man of the people, . . . he grew according to the need. . . . If ever a man was fairly tested, he was. There was no lack of resistance, of slander, nor of ridicule. In four years — four years of battle-days — his endurance, his fertility of resources, his magnanimity, were sorely tried and never found wanting. Then by his courage, his even temper, his fertile counsel, his humanity, he stood a heroic figure in the center of an heroic epoch. §88

# The Southern orator Grady thus spoke of him:

From the union of these colonists, Puritans and Cavaliers, ... slow perfecting through a century, came he who stands as the first typical American, the first who comprehended within himself all the strength and gentleness, all the majesty and grace of this republic — Abraham Lincoln. 389

#### STUDY ON 16.

1. Why should Lincoln's friends fear for his life during the war? 2. Why was the assassination of Lincoln a cowardly act? 3. Why should the South lament his death? 4. The North? 5. What was there noble about Abraham Lincoln? 6. What, lovable? 7. How had he obtained an education? 8. What in his life had helped to make him independent? 9. Why should men remember him above all other presidents save Washington? 10. What

story shows the honesty of Lincoln? 11. His sympathy? 12. His religious nature? 13. His simplicity? 14. What was there in his history distinctively American? 15. In his character? 16. What resemblances between Washington and Lincoln? 17. What differences between them?

Supplementary Reading. — F. B. Carpenter's Six Months at the White House with Abraham Lincoln. New York, 1867. J. G. Holland's Life of Abraham Lincoln. Springfield, 1866. Henry J. Raymond's Life and Public Services of Abraham Lincoln. New York, 1865.



# 18. END OF THE WAR AND DISPERSION OF ARMIES.

JOHNSON, President.

Be proud! for she is saved, and all have helped to save her!
She that lifts up the manhood of the poor,
She of the open soul and open door,
With room about her hearth for all mankind!

— Lowell, in Commemoration Ode, July 21, 1865.

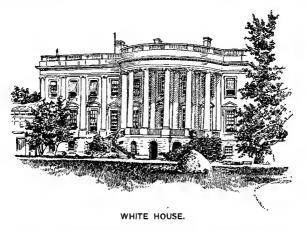
End of the War. — With Lee's surrender, the war was felt by both sides to be at an end. In a few days after Lincoln's death, Johnston surrendered his own army to Sherman, and with the capture of Jefferson Davis, the Confederacy fell, and the Union had been saved.

### Dispersion of Northern Army. —

Before the great army melted away into the greater body of citizens, the soldiers... were ordered to pass in review before General Grant and President Johnson, in front of the Executive Mansion.... For two whole days this formidable host, marched the long stretch of Pennsylvania Avenue, ... starting from the shadow

of the dome of the Capitol . . . and, moving with the easy, yet rapid pace of veterans.

It was not a mere holiday parade; it was an army of citizens on their way home after a long and terrible war. Their clothes were worn with toilsome marches and pierced with bullets; their banners had been torn with shot and shell and lashed in the winds of a thousand battles; the very drums and fifes that played... as each battalion passed the President, had called out the troops to numberless night alarms.... The whole country claimed these heroes as a part of themselves.... By the 7th of August, 641,000 troops had become citizens.<sup>290</sup>



The Dispersion of the Southern Army. — Grady, in a famous speech, said:

Will you bear with me while I tell you of another army that sought its home at the close of the late war? Let me picture to you the footsore Confederate soldier, as ... he turned his face southward from Appomattox in April, 1865. Think of him as ragged, half-starved, heavy-hearted, enfeebled by want and wounds.... He surrenders his gun, wrings the hands of his comrades in silence,

pulls the gray cap over his brow and begins the slow and painful journey.... What does he find when he reaches the home he left so prosperous and beautiful? He finds his house in ruins, his farm devastated, his slaves free, his stock killed, his barns empty, his trade destroyed, his money worthless... his people without law.... Without money, credit, employment, material, or training; and besides all this, confronted with the gravest problem that ever met human intelligence... his liberated slaves.

What does he do—this hero in gray with a heart of gold? Does he sit down in sullenness and despair? The soldier stepped from the trenches into the furrow; horses that had charged Federal guns marched before the plow, and fields that ran red with human blood in April were green with the harvest in June; women reared in luxury, cut up their dresses and made breeches for their husbands, and, with a patience and heroism that fit women always as a garment, gave their hands to work.<sup>391</sup>

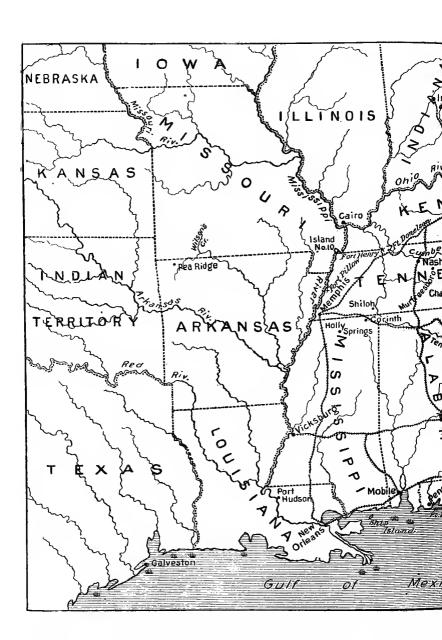
#### STUDY ON 18, AND GENERAL REVIEW OF WAR.

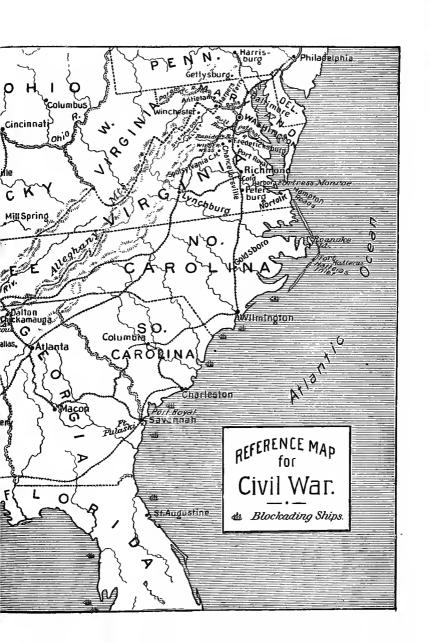
1. Why could not the Confederacy hold out any longer after the surrender of Lee and Johnston? 2. How many years had it held out? 3. In what ways did the North have the advantage of the South? 4. What had the North found to admire in the South? 5. What had the South found to admire in the North? 6. What questions had the war settled? 7. What became of the armies?

# 19. LIST OF LEADING EVENTS IN PERIOD OF CIVIL CONFLICT, 1849–1865.

 1849-1853. — Administration of Zachary Taylor, candidate of the Whig party.

Millard Fillmore, Vice-President. Taylor dying in 1850, Fillmore becomes President for the remainder of the term.





1849. — Struggle over admission of California. (See p. 278.)

Lowell, Longfellow, Holmes, Hawthorne, Whittier, Bryant, Emerson, Everett, Garrison, Phillips, Greeley, Beecher, Bancroft, Agassiz, continue their work through this period.

Francis Parkman begins his works in American history.

William H. Seward, Jefferson Davis, and Charles Sumner enter Senate.

1850. — Compromise bill of 1850. (See p. 292.)

California admitted as a free state.

1851. — Wells, Fargo & Company establish an overland stage express to California.

Maine law passed, prohibiting the sale and use of liquor in Maine.

1853. — Surveys for a Pacific railway ordered by Congress.

B. 1853-1857. — Administration of Franklin Pierce, candidate of Democratic party. Whig party rapidly disappearing. William R. King, Vice-President.

1853.—By the Gadsden Purchase the United States buys from Mexico that part of New Mexico and Arizona lying south of the Gila. Founding of Republican party. (See p. 300.)

1854. — Kansas-Nebraska bill.

1854-1858.—Civil conflict and border war in Kansas, between free-state and slave-state men. Free-state men prevail and form a state constitution forbidding slavery.

1855. — Opening of railway across the Isthmus of Panama.

Development of gold, silver, and copper mines in Arizona.

Walt Whitman begins work as a poet.

1856.—Charles Sumner assaulted and almost killed in the Senate on account of his anti-slavery speeches.

C. 1857-1861. — Administration of James Buchanan, candidate of the Democratic party.

John C. Breckinridge, Vice-President.

1857. — Trouble of the United States government with the Mormons in Utah; conflicts between Mormons and other settlers.

Dred Scott, a Missouri slave, taken by his master into a free state, appeals to the courts for his freedom under the Missouri Compromise bill. Final decision against him. Great indignation in the North.

First ocean telegraph between America and England laid. Unsuccessful.

1858. — Minnesota admitted as a free state.

Gold found at Pike's Peak, in Colorado.

Comstock silver mines discovered near Virginia City, in Nevada.

1859.—Petroleum Oil struck in Western Pennsylvania in great quantities. Petroleum industry begins.

Oregon admitted as a free state.

John Brown's raid. (See p. 305.)

1860. — Division of Democratic party into Northern and Southern parts. Nomination of **LINCOLN** by the Republicans. (See p. 315.)

Dec. 20, South Carolina proclaims her secession. (See p. 317.) — Dec. 26, Anderson moves to Fort Sumter. — Dec. 27–30, Carolinians take possession of United States property in their state, except Fort Sumter.

1861. — Jan., Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, pass ordinances of secession. The steamer Star of the West, sent to Sumter with supplies, fired upon and driven back by the secessionists of Charleston. Kansas admitted as a free state. — Feb., Texas secedes; completion of first area of secession. Peace Conference held at Washington, led by the border states, with the hope of finding some compromise between the North and South. The Southern Confederacy formed, with Jefferson Davis as its President. (See p. 322.)

# D. 1861-1865. — First Administration of ABRAHAM LINCOLN, candidate of the Republican party.

Hannibal Hamlin, Vice-President, 1861-1864.

1861.—April, attack on Sumter. (See p. 327.) CIVIL WAR begins. Virginia, except the western part, North Carolina, Tennessee, Arkausas, join the Confederacy; complete area of secession formed. Richmond becomes capital. The people of West Virginia refuse to secede and form a government of their own. Lincoln proclaims the blockade. (See p. 333.) Northern and Southern armies of volunteers formed.—May, the Confederates form lines of defence from Norfolk to Harper's Ferry in Virginia, and in the mountains of Virginia and Kentucky; they man batteries along the Missis-

sippi, and hold the forts of the Gulf and the Southern Atlantic coasts. — July, Congress meets, votes \$500,000,000 to support the war, and gives President Lincoln war-powers. Battle of Bull Run; Confederate victory, under General Beauregard. (See p. 331.) George B. McClellan made commander of the Army of the Potomac. Confederate success at Wilson's Creek, Mo.; Union forces capture Fort Hatteras, N.C.—Sept., Union fleet seizes Ship Island.—Oct., Confederate success at Ball's Bluff, Va.; Union forces capture Port Royal, S.C.—Nov., Trent affair; an American war-vessel stops au English steamer and forcibly takes Mason and Slidell, two Southern gentlemen, commissioned by the Confederacy to Enrope, who had succeeded in running the blockade. England threatens war, but the United States surrender Mason and Slidell.

1862. - Confederate lines in Kentucky and Tennessee commanded by General Albert Sudney Johnston. Union forces under Ulysses S. Grant and Buell. Virginia forces commanded by McClellan for the Union, and by Robert E. Lee, for the Confederacy. - Jan., Union forces victorious at Mill Spring, Ky. - Feb., Commodore Foote with the gun-boats captures Fort Henry, Tenn. Roanoke Island, N.C., captured by Union fleet. Grant and Buell capture Fort Donelson, Tenn. - March, Union victory at Pea Ridge, Ark. Battle of Monitor and Merrimac (see p. 335); Union advantage. - April, Union victory under Grant at Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing, in Tennessee; Albert Sydney Johnston killed. Union troops capture Island Number 10 in the Mississippi, which is now controlled by Union forces as far as Vicksburg. Fort Pulaski, in Georgia, taken by Fall of New Orleans. (See p. 338.) - May, Negroes begin to be organized into United States troops. - June, Confederate cavalry raids under Jackson and Stuart injure McClellan's army and threaten Washington. Seven days' battle between McClellan and Lee and Jackson; indecisive. End of McClellan's Peninsular campaign, and McClellan's army called to defend Washington. - Aug., Confederate victories in Virginia. -Sept., Lee invades Maryland, and Jackson seizes Harper's Ferry. At Antietam, McClellan forces Lee back into Virginia. President Lincoln announces his determination to emancipate the slaves. Confederates invade Kentucky, and carry back their plunder to Chattanooga. - Dec., Confederate victory of Fredericksburg, Va. Three days' indecisive battle at Stone River, near Murfreesboro.

During this year the Alabama and Florida, two fast sailing privateers, are fitted out by Confederates in English ports, and for the time being greatly injure American commerce.

Pacific Railway begun.

War with the Sioux Indians.

1863. - Jan. 1, Abraham Lincoln puts forth the EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION. (See p. 340.) - March, Draft act passed, and men begin to be drafted into the Northern army. - April, Confederate victory at Fort Sumter. — May, Confederate victory of Chancellorsville. (See p. 343.) Grant besieging Vicksburg. - June, West Virginia admitted as a state into the Union. Lee invades Maryland and Pennsylvania. - July, Union victory Vicksburg surrenders to Grant. Morgan's Confederate of Gettysburg. cavalry raid into Ohio. Arkansas passes under control of the Union. Capture of Port Hudson by Union troops. Three days' riot in New York City. on account of the draft. - Sept., Confederate victory at Chickamauga. Union army retreats to Chattanooga, where it is closely confined by the Confederates. - Oct. and Nov., Confederate siege of Chattanooga and Knoxville. Grant raises the siege of Chattanooga by battles of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge, and the Confederate armies retreat from Tennessee, leaving it in the hands of the Union, and retreating to Georgia under Joseph E. Johnston. (See p. 346.) Failure of Union troops in siege of Charleston.

1864. — March, Grant made commander-in-chief of the Union armies. Forms his plan of campaign. (See p. 354.) Sherman in command of Western armies at Chattanooga. Confederate victory at Fort Pillow. — May, Union advance begins — Grant against Lee, and Sherman against Johnston. Indecisive three days' Battles of the Wilderness. Ten days' indecisive battles at Spottsylvania Court-House. Union victories of Resaca and Dallas in Georgia.

June, Confederate victory at Cold Harbor. Siege of Petersburg begun.—July, Confederate raid on Washington.—Aug., Commodore Farragut and fleet gain possession of Mobile Bay.—Sept., Atlanta falls into possession of the Union troops. Sheridan gains a Union victory over Early at Winchester.

Oct., Nevada admitted as a state.

Nov., Sherman begins *March to the Sea*. (See p. 355.) Lincoln re-elected President. — Dec., Union victory at Nashville; Western Confederate army broken up. Savanuah besieged and taken by Sherman.

1865. — Feb., Sherman begins march northward. Union forces take Columbia and Charleston, S.C., and Wilmington, N.C.

E. 1865.—Second Administration of Abraham Lincoln, candidate of the Republican party.

Andrew Johnson, Vice-President. Lincoln being assassinated in 1865, Johnson becomes President.

March, Union victories in North Carolina. Sheridan's raid on Lynchburg.—April, Grant's army takes Petersburg and Richmond.—April 9, Lee surrenders to Grant. (See p. 360.)—April 14, Abraham Lincoln assassinated. (See p. 362.) Johnston surrenders to Sherman.—May, Jefferson Davis captured. End of Confederacy.

Northern and Southern armies disbanded.

#### STUDY ON 19.

1. What states were admitted to the Union during this period? 2. What had caused the development of each of these states? 3. What had been the causes of the civil strife of this period from 1850-1865? 4. In what two ways had these causes been removed by May of 1865? 5. Who had done the most to remove these causes? 6. What were the chief seats of the Civil War? (See your own Outline Maps.) 7. Who were the great leaders in this war on either side? 8. Why is 1863 marked as the most important year of the Civil War? 9. Learn by heart the following dates, with their most important events: 1850, 1854, 1861, 1863, 1865. 10. Of what importance was the blockade in the war? 11. Why did our country not develop so rapidly during this period as during the preceding one? 12. What new resources were discovered during this time?

Supplementary Reading for Period in General. — Edward Everett Hale's Stories of the War told by Soldiers. Boston, 1880. John Esten Cooke's Hammer and Rapier. C. C. Coffin's The Drum-beat of the Nation; Marching to Victory; Redeeming the Republic; Freedom Triumphant; The Boys of '61: or, Four Years of Fighting. Boston, 1882. George Cary Eggleston's Recollections of a Rebel. G. A. Henty's With Lee in Virginia. New York, 1889.

# GROUP VII.

#### THE COMPLETED UNION: 1865-1891.

## 1. SETTLEMENT OF WAR QUESTIONS.

And is the old flag flying still
That o'er your fathers flew,
With bands of white and rosy light,
And field of starry blue?
Ay! look aloft! its folds full oft
Have braved the roaring blast,
And still shall fly when from the sky
This black typhoon has past!

-Poem of time.892

Proclamation of Amnesty.—The first question at the close of the war was, How shall the government treat those who have been fighting against it? Many at the North were for very harsh measures, but in accordance with the ideas of Lincoln, the government put forth a proclamation of amnesty, by which Southerners were restored to all the rights and privileges of American citizens, on condition they would take this oath:

I, — —, do solemnly swear, or affirm, in presence of Almighty God, that I will henceforth faithfully support and defend the Constitution of the United States and the Union thereunder, and that I will, in like manner, abide by and faithfully support all laws and proclamations which have been made during the existing rebellion with reference to the emancipation of slaves, so help me God. \*\*SOLET CONTROL OF THE CONTROL OF THE

Plans of Reconstruction. — For six years after the close of the Civil War, the United States struggled with the question of Reconstruction, or the question as to how legal governments could best be re-established in the South. The attitude of leading Southerners was thus expressed by Alexander H. Stephens, in a speech before the Georgia Legislature:

I know how trying it is to be denied representation in Congress, while we are paying our proportion of the taxes — how annoying it is to be even partially under military rule — and how injurious it is to the . . . business of the country to be without post-offices. . . . All these, however, we must patiently bear. . . . We should accept the issues of the war, and abide by them in good faith. . . . The whole United States, therefore, is now without question one country, to be cherished and defended as such, by all our hearts and by all our arms. . . . Slavery . . . is abolished forever. . . This change should be . . . accepted as an irrevocable fact. . . This . . . will require of you . . . great changes in our former laws in regard to [the negroes]. . . . Ample and full protection should be secured to them, so that they may stand equal before the law, in the possession and enjoyment of all rights of person, liberty and property. . . . Schools . . . should be encouraged among them. 394

In the North some thought that the Southern states should be treated as a conquered country, and made into territories; others thought they should still be considered as states of the Union, and allowed to attend to their own affairs. The majority of the people, however, were divided between the Presidential and the Congressional plan of Reconstruction. By the former plan, which was Lincoln's as well as Johnson's, those who had voted before the war and who had taken the amnesty oath, were to form the new governments. By the latter plan, the freedmen were to vote, while those who had taken

a leading part in the war were not to vote, and the army was to see that the new governments thus formed were supported. After a long struggle and a partial trial of the Presidential plan, that of Congress was adopted. The way in which the state of Florida was reconstructed according to this plan is told us by a freedman who was a member of her reconstructed legislature. He says:

In May or June, 1867, the Republican National Committee sent to Florida, [men from Maryland, Illinois and New Hampshire] . . . as speakers and organizers of the Republican party, as they claimed. . . . [These carpet-baggers formed a] secret organization styled "The Loyal League of America." Before they could be recognized as Republicans . . . the freedmen were required to join the Loyal League. . . . [Five dollars had to be paid on joining, and when the carpet-baggers thought the freedman could raise it, | fifteen or twenty dollars.... Thousands of dollars were wrung from the hands of our people. . . . They were assured in these league meetings that the lands and all the property of their former masters would be equally divided among the former slaves, which led many to indolence. They were further instructed that the oath which they had taken in the League was of such a nature that they could not vote for any Southern white man for office; that to do so would cause their return into slavery. . . .

[The convention met; the President was a carpet-bagger, the delegates mostly Freedmen.] Some of the lesser lights, . . . who could neither read nor write, would be seen with both feet thrown across their desks smoking cigars, while the convention was in session, and would often address the President: "I ize to a pint off orter and deman' that the pages and mess'gers put some jinal on my des." The President would draw a long sigh and order journals to be carried and laid upon the desks of these eminent statesmen, who would seize them up and go through the motions of reading them, perhaps upside down. . . . These ridiculous scenes continued for two weeks

or more, when a portion of the members seceded, leaving the convention without a quorum. The sessions were continued, however, and in a few days adopted a constitution, which was said to have been prepared in Chicago....

On Monday, February 10th, between twelve and one o'clock' at night, the seceding delegates... returned to Tallahassee in a body, broke into the capitol,... and proceeded to reorganize the convention [which in due time prepared the constitution under which Florida came into the Union].<sup>385</sup>

The course of affairs in other Southern states was similar, but after the Federal troops were withdrawn, by force, fraud, or influence, the whites regained their political power.

The Geneva Arbitration.—Another important question arose out of the claims made upon England by Northern merchants who had lost property through the *Alabama* and other Confederate cruisers. (See list, p. 373, 1863.) One of those who helped arrange the matter writes:

We charged and we believed that, in all this, Great Britain... had... afforded to the United States just and ample cause for war.... We had on the sea hundreds of ships of war...; we had on land hundreds of thousands of veteran soldiers under arms; we had officers of land and sea, the combatants in a hundred battles: all this vast force of war was in a condition to be launched as a thunderbolt at any enemy....

At this stage of the question, President Grant came into office; and as the result of a new negotiation, the treaty of Washington was made between Great Britain and the United States, in which we read:

In order to remove... all complaints and claims on the part of the United States,... the High Contracting Parties agree that all the... "Alabama Claims," shall be referred to a Tribunal of Arbitration to be composed of five Arbitrators...: one shall be named by the President of the United States; one shall be named by Her Britannic Majesty; His Majesty the King of Italy shall be requested to name one; the president of the Swiss Confederation shall be requested to name one; and His Majesty the Emperor of Brazil shall be requested to name one....

The Arbitrators shall meet at Geneva, in Switzerland, at the earliest convenient day..., and shall proceed... carefully to examine and decide all questions that shall be laid before them on the part of the Governments of the United States and Her Britannic majesty....

The High Contracting Parties engage to consider the result of the proceedings of the Tribunal of Arbitration... as a full, perfect, and final settlement of all the claims... referred to.

In September, 1872, the arbitrators were ready with their decision, which was that Great Britain should pay the United States \$15,500,000 for the injury done by the various Confederate cruisers that had been fitted out from British ports. The decision was rendered in writing, and the paper signed in the presence of a great audience.

It is impossible that any one of the persons present on that occasion should ever lose the impression of the moral grandeur of the scene, where . . . two of the greatest nations of the world [resorted] . . . to peaceful reason as the arbiter of grave national differences, in the place of indulging in . . . the vulgar ambition of war. This emotion was visible on almost every countenance. . . . 396

#### FIRST STUDY ON I.

1. Why could not the United States government let the Southern states go on under their Confederate officers? 2. At the close of the war, what states of the Union were represented in Congress? 3. Why would it not have been in accordance with American ideas for the President and Congress to have ruled the South themselves? 4. What did an ex-Confederate swear to support before he could vote? 5. What was there noble in

Stephens' speech? 6. Why should he wish the negroes to have schools? 7. What reason had Southerners for not wishing the negro to vote? 8. Why should Congress wish him to do so? 9. Why should Congress not wish the Confederate leaders to vote? 10. Why would it be better for men like Lee and Stephens to vote than for negroes?

#### SECOND STUDY ON I.

1. How did the carpet-baggers in Florida get the negroes on their side?
2. What did the carpet-baggers want in Florida?
3. Why were the negroes not good men to go into the state legislatures?
4. Whom did the constitution of Florida really represent?
5. Why would the negroes naturally vote with their old masters after the Federal troops and the carpet-baggers went away?
6. What troubles did the South have to endure during the period of Reconstruction? (See list also.)
7. What were the Alabama claims?
8. How were they settled?
9. How else might they have been settled?
10. Why should it have seemed very easy to settle them in this latter way?
11. How would you go to work to decide a quarrel between you and some one else by arbitration?
12. Why did the arbitrators meet in Switzerland instead of meeting in Washington or London?



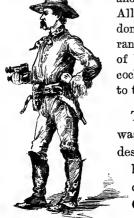
## 2. THE INDIAN QUESTION.

-----

We love our country; we know not other lands. We hear that other lands are better; we do not know. The pines sing, and we are glad. Our children play in the warm sand; we hear them sing, and are glad. The seeds ripen, and we have to eat, and we are glad. We do not want their good lands; we want our rocks, and the great mountains where our fathers lived. — An Arizona Indian to the white explorers. 297

Apaches in Arizona.—During Grant's administration, we had unusual trouble with the Western Indians. The following account of the state of affairs in Arizona in 1869 and 1870 is given by a cavalry officer who served with General Crook:

I have in my possession copies of the Arizona newspapers of those years which are filled with accounts of Apache raids and murders and of counter-raids and counter-murders. No man's life was safe for a moment outside the half-dozen large towns, while in the smaller villages and ranchos sentinels were kept posted by day



and packs of dogs were turned loose at night. All travel, even on the main roads, had to be done between sunset and sunrise; the terrorrized ranchmen who endeavored to till a few acres of barley or corn in the bottoms did so with cocked revolvers on hip and loaded rifles slung to the plow-handles.

To relieve these settlers, General Crook was sent out by the government; after most desperate encounters, in which great numbers of the Apaches resisted to the death, one of their head chiefs said to General Crook:

UNITED STATES CAVALRY OFFICER.

(After Photograph.)

"My friend, I have come to surrender my people, because you have too many copper cartridges; I want to be your friend; I want

my women and children to be able to sleep at night, and make fires to cook their food without bringing your troops down upon us. . . ." Crook took [the chief's] ... hand and said: "If your people will only behave yourselves and stop killing the whites, I will be the best friend you ever had. I will teach you to work, and will find you a market for everything you can sell."

It sounds like a fairy tale, I know, but . . . before the end of May 1873, Crook had all the Apaches in Arizona [except one tribe]... hard at work . . . digging irrigation ditches, planting vegetables of all kinds, - corn, melon, and squashes, - cutting hay and wood to sell . . . for the use of the troops, living in houses arranged in neatly swept streets, and in every way on the high road to prosperity and civilization. . . . Here were six thousand of the worst Indians in America . . . taking on a new life. . . . The future of these Indians

looked most promising, when a gang of politicians... exerted an influence in Washington, and had the Apaches ordered down to the desolate sand waste of the San Carlos [Reservation], where the water is brackish, the soil poor, and the flies a plague. It is the old old story of Indian mismanagement.<sup>388</sup>

On an Indian Reservation in Idaho.—In a letter written to the New York *Times* of 1889, we see how life is passed on an Indian reservation, near old Fort Hall:

There is a row of plain but reasonably comfortable cabins, the homes of the agent, the physician, the volunteer teachers, and other employees. . . .

Further away, partly hidden by clumps of dry bushes, are the cabins of some of Uncle Sam's red pensioners, . . . [made] of poles and cotton cloth. . . . There are not many Indians in sight, most of those about here being asleep. Three or four stand in a cluster about their ponies, tied to a post near the agency trader's store. . . . We go into the nearest [lodge]. . . . There are two or three bucks and two squaws lying down, with their heads to the edge of the lodge and their feet toward a scant fire of sage bush, from which there rises a curl of stinging smoke that blinds the unaccustomed eye. . . . All the adults are rolled up in their blankets and asleep, although it is just past noon. . . .

Every Saturday the whole batch of Indians on the reservation flock to the agency. They ride in on their ponies, with blankets flapping and hair streaming in the wind, some with their faces liberally coated with yellow ochre, to take their share of the fifteen beeves that Uncle Sam has killed and cut up for them. . . . When they have received their beef and flour they eat it up. He is a very prudent savage, indeed, who has anything to show of his weekly ration on Sunday night. . . . 399

The Indian at School. — Besides the scattered schools on the reservations, Indians are educated at the schools of *Hampton* and *Carlisle*. A Hampton teacher thus describes the work:

Besides . . . factories and shops where the students learn regular trades, we have what are called technical shops, where every student, boy or girl, is taught the ordinary use of ordinary tools. Here



INDIAN BOY ON ARRIVAL AT HAMPTON.

(After a Photograph.)

they learn how to make a plain box, bench, shelf or picture frame, how to paint them, and how to set window glass, etc., all which helps so much to make a house or a school room, convenient and attractive. 400

A Hampton student from the Sioux tribe writes back to his teachers:

the Hampton students — those who return to Dakota and what they are doing.... There are two girls teaching at the Agency school and two boys working at the blacksmith shop, and one is taking care of the Agency stable, one is interpreter and one girl married and she is teaching too.... Seven of them stay with their family and take care of their family.... When I was at home, I worked in the carpenter shop, and besides that I helped my people at everything as they want to help....

Dear friends, I heard that some white people say that the Indians don't want to go to school, and that was not true. The Indians really want to learn the white man's ways and they are trying very hard, and so somebody made a great mistake.<sup>401</sup>

The Cherokee Land. — The present condition of the Cherokees in Indian Territory is thus described in the government report of 1883 and 1884:

They number twenty-two thousand, a greater population than they have had at any previous period except, perhaps, just prior to

... the treaty of 1835.... They have twenty-three hundred scholars attending seventy-five schools, established and supported by themselves at an annual expense... of nearly \$100,000. To-day

thirteen thousand of their people can read, and eighteen thousand can speak the English language. To-day five thousand brick, frame, and log-houses are occupied by them, and they have sixty-four churches with a membership of several thousand... They raise annually 100,000 bushels of wheat, 800,000 of corn, 100,000 of oats and barley, 27,500 of vegetables, 1,000,000 pounds of cotton, 500,000 pounds of butter, 12,000 tons of hay, and saw a million feet of lumber. They own 20,000 horses, 15,000 mules, 200,000 cattle, 100,000 swine, and 12,000 sheep.

#### STUDY ON 2.

1. What is the Indian question? 2. Describe three ways in which our people have tried to answer it. 3. With what great tribes have we had war since the close of the Civil War? (See list at close of period.) 4. At what previous periods in our history have we had great troubles with the Indians? (See Index.) 5. How have we tried to settle those troubles? 6. What was the cause of the Apache war in Arizona? 7. What act of injustice was done in the case of the Apaches? 8. Give two proofs that Indians can be civilized.



INDIAN BOY AFTER WORK-ING AND STUDYING AT HAMPTON.

(After a Photograph.)

9. What do the Indian children learn in the Hampton School? 10. Why is it necessary to teach them these things? 11. What good does it do to teach them these things? 12. What do the Indians on a reservation do?

Supplementary Reading. — Mrs. E. B. Custer's Boots and Saddles; Tenting on the Plains; Following the Guidon. Longfellow's Revenge of Rainin-the-Face.



FOREIGN IMMIGRANTS, (From Life.)

IRISR. SWEDE, GERMAN. ITALIAN. RUSSIAN. CHINAMAN.

### 3. THE IMMIGRANT.

In the evening of their days, the brave grandparents will sit in the shadow of vines, sprung from the seed piously brought by them from the Neckar or the Rhine; and their sons, and their sons' sons, in the enjoyment of plenty, happiness, and human rights, will remember with blessings, the original immigrants, and founders of their name.<sup>408</sup>

Some Statistics of Immigration.—In 1790, our population, as nearly as we can judge, was 3,929,314. The great tide of immigration began about twenty years later. Between 1820 and 1890, more than 15,000,000 people came from Europe to live in America. Of these, 3,387,279 came from Ireland, 1,529,792 from England and Wales, 312,924 from Scotland, 4,359,121 from Germany, 857,083 from Norway and Sweden, 127,642 from Denmark, 357,333 from France, 160,201 from Switzerland, 320,796 from Italy. Three-fourths of these immigrants were common laborers.<sup>404</sup>

Some Irish Emigrants in the Old Country.—A gentleman who has been much interested in helping Irish to come

to this country thus describes two or three visits he paid in Ireland to those who wished to emigrate:

[One man had a] wife and one child. Could find part of the passage money; had sold his last cow . . . to give meal to his family. Recommended as a good workman — building walls, road-making, or farming. No employment whatever to be had; would work for 1s. a day and his food. . . . Had no means of supporting his family. . . . Poor Mich. Nee . . . was not at home; he had obtained two or three days' work at 1s. 4d. a day, helping a neighbor to dig his potatoground. His wife . . . asked me to enter the hovel, and, leaving the only seat, begged me to take it. The children were at school, four miles distant.... They were all getting weaker, she said. The potato-planting in which her husband was assisting, would soon be over, and then he would have no work. Let me . . . describe the dwelling in which I had been seated. It was too low to stand upright in, and to enter it needed that you should almost go on all fours. A great boulder which stood up above the roof cut off one corner, forming with the door, one side. In this . . . room, the sods forming the walls, and some rafters and other sods the roof, a man and wife, with four sons and two daughters, had been living since [he had been turned out of his former house on account of not being able to pay the rent. These cases were but few out of very many. 7405

Some Irish Immigrants in Minnesota.—This same gentleman seven years later writes a description of the way these emigrants were getting on in Minnesota:

The continuous growth... of the twin cities, St. Paul and Minneapolis, ... has been occasioning an unlimited demand for... common labour for men and boys, and housework for girls. With streets in every direction to be opened and graded, or widened, and again and again cut through for sewer-pipes, water-pipes, gas-pipes, there has been every year, ... work for every comer who could handle a pick or a shovel, and never at less than a dollar and a half a day, and during part of the time a dollar and three-quarters and

even two dollars a day.... In even the most poor-looking shanties there are abundant supplies of the very best kind of food: sacks of wheat-flour, loaves of the whitest bread (home-made and baker's), butter, groceries of the primest brand, meat, even fresh butcher's meat....



A NEW HOME IN THE WEST. (After a Photograph.)

[One immigrant,] at the cost of seventy dollars... got himself a roomy house, with good yard and shed for his cows. From the milk of these—and their grass costs him nothing—his wife, besides keeping the family in milk and butter, sells eight quarts a day. The combined earnings of man and wife are sometimes over sixty dollars the month. They have bought a lot for 500 dollars, and are on the high road to wealth. They educate their children too. 406

Chinese Question, Chinese View.—In 1874, a committee of San Francisco Chinamen thus addressed the city government:

We wish... to ask the American people to remember that the Chinese in this country have been for the most part peaceable and industrious. We have kept no whiskey saloons, and have had no drunken brawls, resulting in manslaughter.... We have toiled patiently to build your railroads, to aid in harvesting your fruits and grain, and to reclaim your swamp lands.... In the mining regions our people have been satisfied with claims deserted by the white men. As a people we have the reputation, even here and now, of paying faithfully our rents, our taxes and our debts.<sup>407</sup>

# Chinese Question, a Californian View. — In a recent number of a popular magazine, a Californian writes:

## Others, however, say with Hannibal Hamlin:

I believe in principles coeval with the foundation of government, that this country is the "home of the free," where the outcast of every nation, where the child of every creed and of every clime could breathe our free air and participate in our free institutions.<sup>409</sup>

#### STUDY ON 3.

1. Make a list of the countries of Europe from which our immigrants come, putting first the country which sends out the most people to us, second the country which sends the next largest number, etc. 2. Why do all these people come to us, instead of staying at home? 3. What reasons do you see in the case of the Irish immigrants described? 4. What proves that it was not their own fault they were so poor in the old country? 5. How cau they get rich in this country? 6. Why is it better for them to go out West than to stay in the East? 7. Why do some people think we ought to let everybody immigrate who wants to come? 8. Why can a Chinaman work for less than an American? 9. If both do their work equally well, which will get the work to do? 10. What will happen to the other? 11. What class of Americans will not want Chinamen to immigrate? 12. Who will want them to come? 13. Why should the Chinese think it strange that we do not like to have them come? 14. If the immigrants stay with us, what can we do to change them into Americans? 15. What use have we for those who stay? 16. Where did your own family come from as far back as you can find out about it? 17. What makes you an American?

### 4. THE NEW SOUTH.

----

Give us back the ties of Yorktown!
Perish all the modern hates!
Let us stand together Brothers
In defiance of the Fates,
For the safety of the Union
Is the safety of the States!

-From Centennial Poem read at Yorktown by a Virginian.410

Domestic Life in the South To-day. — A Southern gentleman writes:

Compare the old and the new houses. Those built recently are better in every way than those built before the war. I do not speak of an occasional mansion that in the old times lifted itself proudly among a score of cabins, but of the thousands of decent farm-houses and comely cottages that have been built in the last ten years. I know scores whose new barns are better than their old residences. Our people have better furniture. Better taste asserts itself: the new houses are painted; they have not only glass, but blinds. There is more comfort inside. There are luxuries where once there were not conveniences. Carpets are getting to be common among the middle classes. There are parlor organs, pianos, and pictures where we never saw them before. And so on, to the end of a long chapter.<sup>411</sup>

# The Industries of the South. — Henry W. Grady, writing in 1890, says:

The people of Atlanta in 1864 crept out of the diagonal holes cut, like swallows' nests, in the hillsides, in which they had abided the siege, to find their city in ruins. . . . There was no faltering — no repining — but Atlanta worked as she had fought, for all that was in her. Five hundred shanties were made of the iron roofing of destroyed buildings. Four posts were driven up — iron sheeting tacked about them, a cover laid, a door cut, and in these, with pitiful hnckstering, was established the commercial system that now boasts its palatial stores, its merchant princes, and is known and honored the Republic over.

... Atlanta now sends plows into Mexico, and ships agricultural implements to Central America.... The last census shows that Atlanta stands third in the list of American cities in the proportion of actual workers to entire population. Lawrence, Mass., is first; Lowell, Mass., second; and Fall River, Mass., and Atlanta, Ga., tie at third place!

## Of the South in general, Mr. Grady says:

In 1880 the South made 212,000 tons of iron.... In 1890 her output will be about 1,800,000 tons.... In 1870 the South miued but 3,193,000 tons of coal; in...1887 she mined 14,620,000 tons....

Rolling mills...followed the furnaces. Gins and cotton presses were close to these. Plows and cotton planters followed. Then came stoves, hollow-ware, nails.... After these came bridge works, engine and boiler factories, chain works, car works and locomotive works....

Cotton is a plant worthy of homage.... Let us see. This year's crop, 7,500,000 bales, ... would clothe in a cotton suit every human being on earth, and yield to Southern farmers \$350,000,000.... There will be left 3,750,000 tons of seed. This will supply 150,000,000 gallons of oil, which ... will bring \$60,000,000.... Then remains the hulls and the meal... which ... will furnish 6,568,500,000 pounds... the very best food for cattle and sheep....

Georgia now realizes more than \$1,000,000 a year from melons alone. From Chattanooga berry trains run solid to the North. Poultry trains traverse East Tennessee, three or four a day. Ships are loaded at Charleston and Savannah with early vegetables and fruits for the East. 412

The Blue and the Gray.— Ever since the war, the soldiers have had reunions on their old battle-fields from time to time, and Confederate and Union soldiers often meet on these occasions. At such a reunion held in Iowa, a Confederate general presented an Iowa regiment a flag captured from them at Atlanta, with the words:

In behalf of our ex-soldiers I beg leave to return to you the flag won from you on that memorable occasion. I trust you will bear it as honorably as you did on that former occasion; and I assure you, that should it ever again be assailed, the men who opposed you that day will stand by you in the future and vie with you in its defence. I hope that flag may float as long as the everlasting hills endure over a free, prosperous, happy, and united people, — as long as the waters flow to the great ocean. 418

Similar sentiments have been uttered wherever the veterans of the Blue and Gray have met on their old battle-fields.

The Freedman. — In an Atlanta newspaper of 1890 we read:

Here in Atlanta we have negro lawyers, physicians, and dentists; negro merchants, tailors, undertakers, shoemakers, tinners, painters, carriage-makers, blacksmiths, and wheelwrights; negro contractors, who employ white as well as colored workmen; negro machinists, carpenters, cabinet-makers, brick-masons, plasterers, and plumbers; negro workers in shops, in every trade and business for which their ambition and ability fit them; and opportunities open to them in every direction that their capabilities may suggest.<sup>414</sup>

A negro who is the president of a colored college in North Carolina said in a speech made in 1890:

It is not because of his color, but because of his condition, that the black man is in disfavor. Whenever a black face appears it suggests a poverty-stricken, an ignorant race. Change your conditions; exchange immorality for morality, ignorance for intelligence, poverty for prosperity, and the prejudice against our race will disappear... This sunny Southland, where lie the bleaching bones of my fathers, is dear to me... This soil is consecrated by the labor, the tears and the prayers of my ancestors. Talk about Ethiopia, talk of Africa, but I believe that God intends the negro race to work out here in the South the highest status he has ever attained... I am here to stay. I have an unbounded confidence in the future of the Southland. Her broad rivers, her rich fields and well-stored mines will one day produce the richest harvest of prosperity the world ever saw, and I want to help reap it and enjoy it. 415

#### STUDY ON 4.

1. How long is it since the close of the Civil War? 2. What is there about the South now that should make us call it the New South? 3. Which of these changes is due to the war? 4. Which to things done since the war? 5. Why should the South be able to sell things more cheaply in Mexico than the North can? 6. What industries in the South depend on

the opening of her mines of iron and coal? 7. What industries depend upon her climate? 8. What memories and sorrows have the North and the South in common? 9. What principles do they both care for? 10. What influences are at work to civilize and educate the negro? 11. If he is poor and has a bad time now, who is to blame? 12. If this happened before the war, who was to blame? 13. Why does the South need the negro as a workman?

### 5. THE GREAT WEST.

•••<del>•••</del>•••

Brave, hospitable, hardy, and adventurous, he is the grim pioneer of our race.... He lives in the lonely lands, where mighty rivers twist in long reaches between the barren bluffs; ... plains across whose endless breadth he can steer his course for days and weeks, and see neither man to speak to, nor hill to break the level; where the glory and the burning splendor of the sunsets kindle the blue vault of heaven and the level brown earth, till they merge together in an ocean of flaming fire.—Theodore Roosevell, on the Cow-boy. 416

Life on a Ranch. — Theodore Roosevelt, who has spent

much time on our great Western ranches, tells us how a cow-boy spends his life:

We breakfast early . . . and . . . the men ride off on their different tasks. . . . If any of the horses have strayed, one or two of the men will be sent off to look for them. . . . If the men do not go horse-hunting they may ride off over the range; for there is generally some work to be done among the cattle, such as driving in and branding calves . . . or getting some animal out of a boghole. . . .

One day [he] will ride out with his men among the cattle, or after strayed horses; the next he may hunt, so as to keep the ranch in meat; then he can make the tour of his



COW-BOY. (After Remington.)

outlying camps; or, again, may join one of the round-ups for a week or two. . . .

The cattle are fattest and in best condition during the fall, and it is then that the bulk of the beef steers are gathered and shipped.<sup>417</sup>

The Wheat-Fields of Dakota. — A recent traveller in the Red River country writes:

The grain is sown late in the spring, as soon as the hot suns of the northern latitudes have dried the soaked lands, and grows with marvelous rapidity. By August it is fully mature and ready for reaping. All the farm-work is done by machinery. The plowman rides upon a sulky plow; the grain is sown with a drill or a broadcaster; the reaping-machines bind the sheaves as they move over the ground, and the threshers do their work in the fields driven by portable steam-engines that burn the straw for fuel. . . .

Two hundred and fifty miles of rail transit brings the Red River wheat to Duluth, at the head of Lake Superior, from whence there is water carriage all the way to New York harbor. Dakota seems to have been fitted by nature for a vast permanent wheat-field.<sup>418</sup>

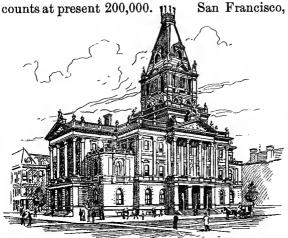
The Growth of Cities. — Chicago, which in 1830 was still

old Fort Dearborn, and which had in 1840 a population of a little less than 5000, counts to-day more than a million, and covers 175 square miles of land. Kansas City, which did not exist in 1850, is mounting rapidly to-



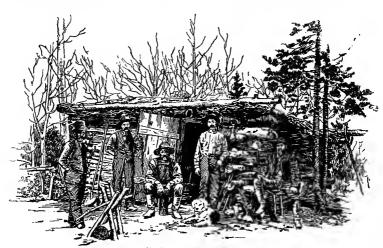
CHICAGO AUDITORIUM. (From Photograph.)

wards 200,000. Milwaukee, which counted only 1700 in 1840, counts at present 200,000. 113 San Francisco, which had only



COURT-HOUSE AND POST-OFFICE, DENVER. (After a Photograph.)

500 in 1840, in 1890 had passed 300,000. Denver, which counted but a few shanties in 1860, had a population of 4000 in 1870, and counts to-day 140,000. A traveller of 1879 writes of Denver:



A MINER'S CAMP. (After a Photograph.)

Cash! why, they create it here. Out in the smelting-works . . . I saw long rows of vats, pans, cover'd by bubbling, boiling water, and fill'd with pure silver, four or five inches\* thick, many thousand dollars' worth in a pan. 419

## A writer of to-day tells us:

Every year between twenty and thirty millions of dollars in gold and silver coin is heing shoveled down out of the mountains into the streets of Denver. Each year counts among its discoveries many new and valuable mines.<sup>420</sup>



HOW A RAILWAY CLIMBS A MOUNTAIN; THE LOOP ON A BRANCH OF THE CENTRAL PACIFIC. (After a Photograph.)

Railroad and Telegraph across the Continent.—The telegraph was completed across the continent by the beginning of the Civil War, and its first messages tendered to President Lincoln the support of California to the Union. But although surveys for a Pacific railroad had been ordered in

1853, and work was begun in 1862, it was not until 1869 that the president of the Union Pacific sent the following message to the Associated Press:

PROMONTORY SUMMIT, Utah, May 10.—The last rail is laid! The last spike driven! The Pacific Railroad is completed!...

[When the last spike was driven], the lightning came flashing eastward, vibrating over 2400 miles, between the junction of the two roads and Washington, and the blows of the hammer upon the spike were delivered instantly, in telegraphing accents, on the bell in the capitol.<sup>421</sup>

#### STUDY ON 5.

1. What are leading occupations in the Great West? 2. Why should we call the West the Great West? 3. What is a cow-boy? 4. By what routes does the Dakota wheat reach New York? 5. What has made Denver grow so fast? 6. Why should San Francisco grow so fast? 7. Western cities in general? 8. What effect has the railroad on settlement? 9. How can the people of one part of the country know very soon about what is happening in every other part of the country? 10. Why should every part of the East be so interested in the driving of the last spike in the first Pacific railroad? 11. How many Pacific railroads are there now in the United States? (See map of United States in 1891.) 12. In what ways does a western pioneer of to-day differ from a western pioneer of 1800?

Supplementary Reading.—Theodore Roosevelt's Hunting Trips of a Ranchman, 1886. See also Roosevelt's articles in Century of 1888. Bret Harte's poem, What the Engines Said. Samuel Adams Drake's Making of the Great West. New York, 1887.

# 6. THE QUESTIONS OF TO-DAY, 1890.

Thou, too, sail on, O Ship of State! Sail on, O Union, strong and great! Humanity with all its fears, With all the hopes of future years, Is hanging breathless on thy fate!

- Longfellow.

Questions we must answer.— And so we have come to the year of our Lord 1891. But we have many great troubles still to meet; many hard questions still to answer. Here are a few of them:

- 1. Why is it that some people are so very rich, and many people so very poor? and how can we help it? (Labor question.)
- 2. Shall we let all the people that want to come into our country come? (Immigration question; Chinese question; labor question.)
  - 3. How shall people get office? (Civil service reform.)
- 4. How can we keep people from selling their votes, and how can we hinder a rich employer from making all his men vote the same way that he does? (Ballot reform.)
  - 5. What shall we do with the Indian?

6. How shall we treat the negro? Race problems.

- 7. How shall we treat the Chinaman?
- 8. Shall we let everybody vote? (Woman suffrage question; limitation of the suffrage.)
- 9. Shall we take off the duties from imported goods? (Tariff reform; protection or free-trade.)
- 10. How can we keep people from getting drunk? (Temperance question; prohibition party; high license.)

Two or Three Answers. — To some of these questions we are already beginning to give positive answers. For instance, to 3 and 4. If a man wants to have the office of policeman in Brooklyn, he must first pass an examination; his examiners look him over to see if he is tall enough and strong enough; then they see what his friends and neighbors think of him. They next ask him to write answers to questions about his health and his former work. Then he has to answer some questions that will show what he knows. We give here a few of these questions, together with answers made by two candidates for this office; the answers of the successful candidate are in the first column, those of the unsuccessful candidate in the second:

[Simple questions in subtraction, multiplication, division, followed this.]

How would you proceed from the South Ferry to the City Hospital? Give the streets.

Up Atlantic ave to Court Court to city hall. fulton to Dekalb ave De Kalb ave to Hospital at raymond st.

I Wold go up atlantic St to henry St and down henry to the horspittal.

Give your idea of the duties of a policeman.

To prevent crime if possible and if crime is committed find out the guilty parties and arest them to preserve law and order in our streets and obey the orders of his superior Officers at all times.

My eyedear is as I think Wold be to arrest eney person viorlatin the laws. Name a few crimes which render the person committing them liable to arrest. . . .

[11 named by first candidate: 3 named by second.]

How should a Patrolman act toward citizens; and toward his superior officers?

He should act sivel and courteas to all citizens and obey the comands of his superior officers. No answer.

What experience, if any, have you had specially fitting you for Patrolman . . . ?

During my experience as Seaman & Life Saving crow I have been exposed to all sorts of weather and changes of climates and I have never worked any place but in the open air and can stand any kind of weather

I have no experience.

Have you ever been placed in any position where your courage has been tested? If so, give the circumstances fully.

I saved one boy from drowning at old penny bridge Newtown creek and a man at the foot of North 4th st—and 1 man & 1 woman in San Francisco, Cal. 422

I have not.

But many of our offices are still obtained in the old Jacksonian way. The following scene in the White House was reported in the *New York Times* of 1889:

A little while ago I stood in the President's room, with forty or fifty others, . . . while at least twice as many more were waiting for a chance at him in an adjoining room. . . . During the time these

gentlemen were waiting, a delegation of citizens were recommending their candidate, who was present, for the Postmastership of a town which had, perhaps, barely risen to the dignity of a place in the gazetteer. . . .

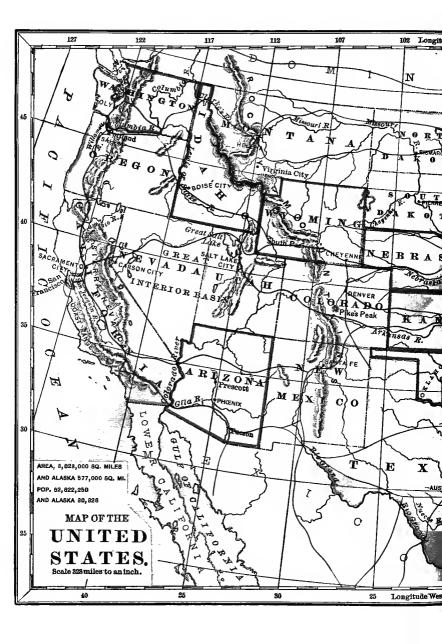
Those who are trying to have laws passed so that most of the offices of the country shall be obtained by the method of examination, are known as *Civil Service Reformers*.

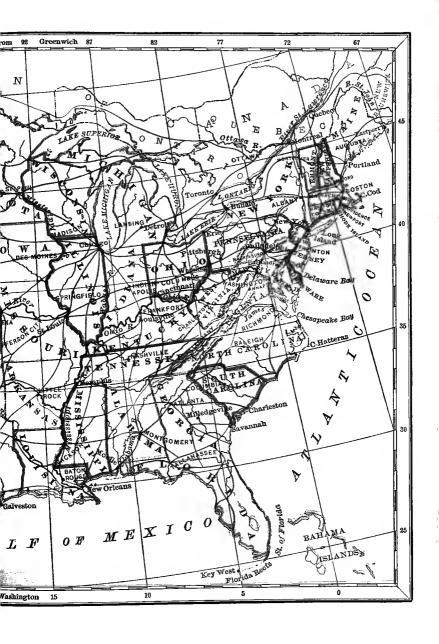
As for the question as to how a man can vote as he really thinks, so that he will neither be bribed nor frightened into giving his vote, many states have answered it by adopting the Australian ballot, which is so cast that no one except the voter can know what names are upon it.

Unanswered Questions. — But as to the labor question, the race problem, the suffrage questions, we are not yet sure as to which are the right answers out of the many which are given; to find these answers out are the next Studies in American History.

#### STUDY ON 6.

1. Look in to-day's newspaper and make a list of the questions of the day which you find mentioned in it. 2. How can we find answers to the





questions of to-day? 3. If we think we have found the right answer, how can we let other people know about it? 4. How can we make the government give the right answer in its laws and acts? 5. What question does giving money to poor people try to answer? 6. What question does a strike try to answer, and how? 7. What question do we try to answer by making a law that no idiots or criminals shall be allowed to immigrate? 8. What question did the McKinley bill try to answer? (See list, 1890.) 9. Give three reasons why the first candidate for the office of policeman should be chosen rather than the second? 10. Of what use was each question asked? 11. What is the Jacksonian way of obtaining office? 12. Whose time is taken up with deciding upon candidates by this plan? 13. What do they know about the candidates? 14. How did the postmaster get his office in your town? 15. How can a secret ballot make it easier for a workingman to vote as he thinks?

# 7. LIST OF IMPORTANT EVENTS, 1865-1891.

-----

A. 1865-1869. — Second administration of Abraham Lincoln.

Andrew Johnson, Vice-President. After Lincoln's assassination in 1865, Johnson becomes President.

1865. — Reorganization of Southern States on President's plan; he appoints provisional governors, who call conventions of white voters, who make new constitutions; these repeal the ordinances of secession, and ratify the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution.

Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution, abolishing slavery forever, adopted by all the states. Longfellow, Bryant, Whittier, Emerson, Bancroft, Parkman, Hawthorne, continue their work.

Francis Bret Harte begins his work, writing novels and poems on American subjects, largely Western.

Henry James begins to write his novels, dealing with American and foreign society.

1866.—Atlantic Ocean Telegraph successfully laid between Newfoundland and Ireland.

Tennessee readmitted to the Union.

1867. — Alaska bought from Russia by the United States for \$7,200,000. Nebraska admitted to the Union.

Congressional Reconstruction Acts passed over the veto of the President. (See p. 377.)

Congress passes the Tenure of Office Act over the veto of the President, forbidding him to remove high officers without the consent of the Senate.

1868.—President Johnson removes Edwin M. Stanton from his office as Secretary of War; impeached by House of Representatives; tried and acquitted by the Senate.

Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Louisiana, North Carolina, South Carolina, readmitted to the Union.

The Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution, giving negroes full rights as citizens, adopted. William Dean Howells begins his stories of American life and society.

B. 1869-1877. — Administrations of Ulysses S. Grant, candidate of the Republican party.

Schuyler Colfax, Vice-President, 1869–1873. Henry Wilson, Vice-President, 1873–1877.

1869. — First Pacific Railway completed.

Hubert Howe Bancroft begins arranging his materials for a great history of the states of the Pacific slope.

1870. — Georgia, Mississippi, Texas, and Virginia readmitted to the Union. Union complete. Continuous troubles in South with carpet-baggers and from the Ku Klux Klan.

1871.—Treaty of Washington with Great Britain, in regard to the Alabama Claims, the Fishing question, North-western boundary. According to this treaty, all these matters are referred to **Arbitration**.

1872.—The Geneva Arbitration decides the Alabama Claims. (See p. 379.)

The Credit Mobilier affair; bribery of members of Congress by the Pacific Railroad.

Prohibition party organized for a national campaign.

1873. — War with the Modoc Indians.

1875. — Whiskey ring in the West; a combination of whiskey dealers to cheat Congress out of the taxes on whiskey.

1876. — Colorado admitted to the Union.

War with Sionx Indians, led by Sitting Bull, on account of the invasion of the Black Hills by the miners; massacre of General Custer and his force.

Celebration of the Centennial of the Declaration of Independence.

Anti-Chinese crusade begins in California. (See p. 388.)

Disputed Presidential election; the matter referred to an electoral commission, which decides for the Republicans.

1877. — Silver discovered at Leadville, Col.

1877-1881. - Administration of Rutherford B. Hayes, candidate of the Republican party.

William A. Wheeler, Vice-President.

1877. — Indian War with Chief Joseph and the Nez-Percé Indians, on account of their removal from their old reservation.

Many railroad strikes: at Pittsburgh nearly a hundred lives are lost.

About this time electric lights, electric telephones, and other applications of electricity become common.

1879. — Great development of New Mexican mines begins.

George Washington Cable begins writing his stories of Southern

1880. — Treaty of United States | Henry W. Grady begins his work with China, limiting immigration.

as editor in Atlanta.

C. 1881-1885. - Administration of James A. Garfield, candidate of the Republican party.

> Chester A. Arthur, Vice-President. After Garfield's assassination in 1881, Arthur becomes President.

1881. — Cotton exposition at Atlanta.

1882. — Trouble with Mormons about polygamy.

Standard Oil Trust established. Beginning of Trusts.

1883. - Beginning of Civil Service Reform by act of Congress.

1884. — Armed mob of Cincinnati citizens tries to lynch murderers confined in the jail, because the courts are not severe enough.

Many independent voters (Mugwumps). Prohibition party enters Presidential field.

Bartholdi's statue of Liberty enlightening the World presented to America by France.

International cotton exposition held at New Orleans.

D. 1885–1889. — Administration of Grover Cleveland, candidate of Democratic party.

Thomas A. Hendricks, Vice-President.

1885. — Negotiations for building Nicaragua Canal begin.

Outrages against Chinamen.

1886. — Bartholdi's statue received.

Many great strikes; notably a street-car strike in New York and Brooklyn; one of railroad employees; and one of Chicago packers.

Knights of Labor strongly organized. Socialist riots in Chicago, in which eighty persons are killed. Anarchists arrested in Chicago for inciting to riot and bloodshed.

1887. — Chicago Anarchists executed. Labor riot in New York City. Important strikes during every month of the year.

Difficulties with England in regard to fishing rights in the Canadian waters and in Behring Sea.

1888. — Much bribing of voters in the Presidential election; ballot reform agitation begins; many mugwumps. Much talk of a political union with Canada.

Congress passes a bill prohibiting Chinese immigration for twenty years. Great railroad and other strikes, with riots.

E. 1889–1893. — Administration of Benjamin Harrison, candidate of the Republican party.

Levi P. Morton, Vice-President.

1889.—North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washington admitted to the Union.

Trouble with Germany over Samoa; settled by a conference.

Oklahoma in Indian Territory opened to settlement.

Three days' festival in New York in memory of the completion of the Constitution by the Inaugural of Washington.

Troops ordered out to disperse striking miners in Pennsylvania.

Legislation against trusts begins.

United States declares that it alone has fishing-rights in Behring Sea; England maintains that Behring Sea is a part of the Pacific Ocean, and free to all.

Ballot-reform laws passed in various states.

Pan-American Congress, representing ten American Republics, meets at Washington.

1890. — Wyoming and Idaho admitted as states of the Union.

Brazil recognized as a Republic by the United States.

Pan-American Congress recommends, among other things, a common coin for use in all the Americas; a common system of weights and measures (metric system); an intercontinental railroad.

A Farmer's Alliance formed through the South and parts of the West, to advance laws that shall help the farmer.

Strikes continue; a stubborn one on the New York Central.

President Harrison makes a tour of the West and South.

Great Sioux reservation of more than 9,000,000 acres opened to white settlement; about 3,000,000 acres of Indian lands opened in Minnesota. Invasion of Cherokee Strip repelled by United States troops. Fierce and bloody war with the Sioux.

1891. — The Behring Sea controversy submitted to arbitration.

New Orleans citizens lynch Italian murderers against whom they cannot get the courts to take satisfactory action.

Measures taken looking towards commercial union with Canada.

#### STUDY ON LIST.

1. What parts of the country have developed since the close of the Civil War? 2. What quarrels and troubles have arisen since that time, and between whom? 3. In which of these troubles has life been lost? 4. Which of them have been settled by arbitration? 5. Why is it better for nations to settle matters by arbitration than by war? 6. What territorial addition has been made to our country since the Civil War? 7. What proof of dishonesty in politics do you find since that time? 8. How have we tried to settle the Chinese question? 9. What new political parties have appeared? 10. How have we given the world a north-west passage? 11. What great new discoveries belong to the last quarter of a century?

#### GENERAL REVIEW STUDY.

1. How long is it since Columbus discovered America? 2. How long since we became a Republic? 3. How long since we abolished slavery? 4. What was the work of the period from 1492 to 1607? 5. From 1607 to 1763? 6. From 1763 to 1783? 7. From 1783 to 1850? 8. Of the period of civil strife? 9. Of the period since that time? 10. What is there in American history to make you proud of being an American?

# BOOKS FROM WHICH ARE TAKEN THE EXTRACTS USED IN THE STUDIES.

- 1. Homer, Odyssey; trans. by Butcher and Lang. London, 1879. Bk. XI.
- 2. Herodotus; trans. by Cary, in Bohn Library. Bk. III., pp. 106-115.
- 3. Pomponius Mela, De situ orbis. Bk. III., ch. VII.
- North Ludlow Beamish, Discovery of America by the Northmen. London, 1841. p. 93.
- Benjamin F. De Costa, Pre-Columbian discovery of America by the Northmen. Albany, 1890. pp. 85, 93, 106, 121-132.
- 7. Marco Polo, Book of the kingdoms and marvels of the East; trans. and ed. by H. Yule. London, 1875.
- 8. Repertorium Bibliographicum. Vol. I., p. 286. From what is generally called Gutenberg's Catholikon.
- 9. Pierre d'Ailly, Imago Mundi. 1482. Cap. VIII.
- Columbus, Select Letters; ed. by R. H. Major, in Hakluyt Society Publications. London, 1870. p. 153.
- John Pinkerton, General collection of royages and travels. London, 1808-14.
   Vol. XII., pp. 6-9. In The history of the life and actions of Admiral Christopher Colon... written by his own son, Don Ferdinand Colon.
- 12. Antonio Herrera, The general history of the vast continent and islands of America . . . ; trans. by Capt. John Stevens. London, 1725. Vol. I., p. 7.
- Personal narrative of the first voyage of Columbus to America; ed. by Samuel Kettell. Boston, 1827. p. 268. 14. Same as 12. Vol. I., pp. 27-97, passim. 15. Same as 10. Edition of 1847, p. 17. 16. Same as 13. 17. Same as 11. 18. Same as 12.
- Narrative and critical history of America; ed. by Justin Winsor. Boston, 1885-1890. Vol. II., p. 136; Vol. III., p. 54.
- Gaspar Correa, The three voyages of Vasco da Gama. In Hak. Soc. Pub. London, 1869. pp. 193, 194.
- 22. Same as 11.
- 23. Same as 10. pp. 178, 179, 209.
- 24, 25. The discovery and conquest of Terra Florida, by Ferdinand de Soto, written by a gentleman of Elvas; trans. by Richard Hakluyt, in Hak. Soc. Pub. London, 1851. Selected passages.

- Historical collections of Louisiana and Florida; ed. by French. New York, 1875. p. 234.
- Annals of the Cakchiquels; ed. by Daniel G. Brinton, in Brinton's Library of Aboriginal American Literature. Phil. 1885. p. 179.
- 28. Las Casas, The tears of the Indians; trans. by J. P. London, 1655.
- Voyages, relations et memoires orignaux pour servir à l'histoire de la decouverte de l'Amerique; ed. by Ternaux-Campans. Paris, 1838. 1X., Appendix.
- 30. Same as 12. Vol. V., p. 203, etc.
- 31. John T. Short, North Americans of antiquity. New York, 1880. p. 326.
- 32. Sir Walter Raleigh and his colony in America. In Prince Society Publications. Boston, 1884. p. 28.
- 33. The world encompassed by Sir Francis Drake. In Hak. Soc. Pub. London, 1854. p. 230, etc.
- 34. The principal navigations, voyages, traffiques, and discoveries of the English nation; collected by Richard Hakluyt; ed. by E. Goldsmid. Edinburgh, 1884. Vol. XII., p. 39.
- 35. The three voyages of Martin Frobisher; ed. by Collinson, in Hak. Soc. Pub. London, 1867. pp. 75-152.
- 36. Same as 32. pp. 95-122.
- The Iroquois book of rites; ed. by Daniel G. Brinton, in Library of Aboriginal American Literature. Phil. 1883. p. 117.
- 38. Life of Black Hawk; dictated by himself. Boston, 1834. pp. 72-80.
- A Library of American Literature; ed. by E. C. Stedman and E. M. Hutchinson. New York, 1889. Vol. I., p. 2. In poem of Michael Drayton, On the Virginian Voyage.
- 40. Ebenezer Hazard's Historical collections. Phil. 1792. Vol. I., p. 50.
- Edward D. Neill, History of the London Virginian Company. Albany, N.Y., 1869. p. 8.
- Capt. John Smith's General historie of Virginia. In Edward Arber's reprint of John Smith's Works. Birmingham, 1884. pp. 387-393, 439, 486, 498, 499. U's and v's modernized in the spelling.
- 43, 44. Champlain's Voyages. In publications of the Prince Society. Boston, 1880, etc. Vol. II., p. 13 of Introduction; ch. 3-6; Vol. III., p. 100.
- 45. Francis Parkman, Pioneers of France in the New World. Boston, 1867.
- History of Plymouth Plantation; by William Bradford, the second governor
  of the colony. Reprinted from the Mass. Hist. Coll. Boston, 1856. Ed.
  by Charles Deane. pp. 1-95. Extracts modernized in form.
- 47. The description of New England; by Capt. John Smith. Arber's reprint, as in 42, pp. 708, 713, 715, 721. Treated as 42.
- 48. Same as 46.

- Edward Winslow, A briefe narration. 1646. From selection given in Lib. Am. Lit. Vol. I., p. 131. (See 39.) Extract modernized.
- 50. Same as 46.
- Bradford and Winslow's journal; ed. by Alexander Young, in Chronicles
  of the Pilgrim Fathers. Boston, 1841. pp. 167-169.
- 52. Same as 46. pp. 90-95.
- Anthology of New Netherland; ed. by Henry C. Murphy, in Bradford Club Publications. New York, 1865.
- Documentary history of New York. Gov't pub. Albany, 1851. Vol. IV., p. 4.
- J. Thomas Scharf, History of Maryland. Baltimore, 1879. Vol. I., pp. 53, 78.
- 57. James D. Knowles, Memoir of Roger Williams. Boston, 1834. p. 394.
- 58. Rhode Island Historical Collections. Vol. III., p. 3.
- 59, 60, 61, 62. Relations des Jesuites. Quebec, 1858. p. 71 of Relation for 1637; Relation of the year 1635. pp. 25-32; Relation for 1643. pp. 3, 4; Relation for 1649. pp. 10-14.
- 63, 64. Colonial records of Virginia; ed. by Thomas H. Wynne, in Senate Documents. Richmond, 1874. pp. 80, 10, etc.
- 65. Same as 46. p. 89.
- 66, 67. George Ellis, The Puritan age and rule. Boston and New York, 1888. pp. 58, 59; 257; 263; 186.
- Eulogy on King Philip; by the Reverend William Apes, an Indian minister. Boston, 1836. p. 35.
- John Easton, Narrative of the causes which led to Philip's Indian War. In Munsell's Hist. Series. Albany, 1858.
- Robert Boody Caverly, The heroism of Hannah Duston, and Indian wars in New England. Boston, 1875. pp. 184, 185.
- Rev. William Hubbard, The history of the Indian wars in New England; ed. by Samuel G. Drake. Roxbury, 1865. Vol. I., pp. 95; 105; 145; 152; 265.
- Cotton Mather, Life and death of the renowned Mr. John Elliott. London, 1691. p. 95.
- 73. Lib. Am. Lit. Vol. I., p. 465. (See 39.) From Burwell Papers.
- 74, 75. Francis Parkman, La Salle and the discovery of the Great West. Boston, 1884. pp. 110, 111, 175, 194.
- Charles E. A. Gayarré, History of Louisana; French domination. New York, 1866. p. 24.
- 77. Pierre Margry, Découvertes et établissements des Français dans l'ouest et dans le sud de l'Amérique septentrionale. Paris, 1867. Vol. II., p. 190.
- 78, 79. Same as 19. Vol. III., pp. 473, 477-479.

- William Penn, A further account of the Province of Pennsylvania and its improvements. London, 1685.
- Thomas Curson Hansard, Parliamentary history of England, vol. for 1729. London, 1806-20.
- 82. Benjamin Perley Poore, The federal and state constitutions, colonial charters and other organic laws of the United States. Washington, 1878.
- 83. T. M. Harris, Biographical memorials of James Oglethorpe. Boston, 1841. p. 59.
- A brief account of the establishment of the colony of Georgia, under General Jas.
   Oglethorpe, Feb. 1, 1733. In Peter Force, Tracts and other papers. Washington, 1836-1846.
- South Carolina Gazette, of March 22, 1733; quoted by R. Wright, in Memoir of General Oglethorpe. London, 1867.
- 86, 87. Jeremiah Dummer, A defence of the New England Charters. London, 1721.
- 88. Increase Mather, A Narrative of the miseries of New England. In Prince Soc. Pub., Andros Tracts. Boston, 1869. Vol. II., p. 3.
- An account of the late revolutions in New England. Boston, 1689. In Prince Soc. Pub., as above. For 88 and 89, see Old South Leaflets.
- 90. The writings of George Washington; ed., Worthington C. Ford. New York and London, 1889. Vol. I., p. 17.
- Macalaster College contributions. Saint Paul, Minn. Series I., pp. 106-108, 131.
- Pownall's Topographical description of North America. London, 1776. Appendix.
- 93. Notes from journal of Capt. William Trent, 1752. Published in Western Reserve Historical Society. Cincinnati, 1871. p. 72.
- 94. Same as 90. Vol. I., p. 11.
- 95, 96. Benjamin Franklin, Autobiography, Works; ed. by John Bigelow. Vol. I., p. 258.
   97. Same as 90. Vol. I., pp. 164, 252.
- 98. London Gazette, Aug. 26, 1755. 99. Gentleman's Magazine. Vol. XXV., p. 426.
- 100. Remarkable occurrences in the life and travels of Jas. Smith. In J. Pritt's Incidents of Border life. Chambersburg, 1841. p. 15. Also in Drake's Tragedies of the wilderness.
- 101. Same as 95. Vol. III., p. 39.
- 102. Knox, Capt. John. Historical journal of the campaigns in North America, for the years 1757-60. London, 1769. Vol. I., p. 322; Vol. II., pp. 51, 79-84.
- Joseph Doddridge, Notes on the settlement and Indian wars of the western parts of Virginia and Pennsylvania, 1763-83. Albany, 1876. p. 312.
- 104. Same as 92. Journal of Capt. Harry Gordon. 105. Same as 103. p. 118.
- John Filson, The discovery, settlement and present state of Kentucke. Wilmington, 1784.
   p. 50 of Appendix. 107. Same as 39. Vol. II., p. 427.
- 108. Moses Coit Tyler, History of American Literature. Vol. II., p. 282.

- 109. Same as 19. Vol. I., p. 420.
- Burnaby's Travels through the middle settlements of North America, in 1759-60.
   London, 1798. p. 17, etc.
- 111. Rhode Island Historical Collections. Vol. III., p. 134. 112. Same as 110.
- Edmund Burke, Speech on conciliation with America; Select Works, in Clarendon Press Series. Oxford, 1885. Vol. I., p. 175.
- 114. E. M. Stone, Our French Allies. Providence, 1884. p. 3.
- 115. Statutes at large, for 1699 and 1732.
- John Adams' Works; ed. by Charles Francis Adams. Boston, 1850. Vol. II., p. 523.
- George Bancroft, History of the United States of America. New York, 1884.
   Vol. III., pp. 177, 181. 118. Same as 115. For 1763.
- 119. Same as 117. Vol. III., p. 100. 120. Same as 81. Vol. XVI., p. 38.
- 121. James Otis, A vindication of the British colonies. Boston, 1765. pp. 22-25.
- William V. Wells, Life and public services of Samuel Adams. Boston, 1865.
   Vol. I., pp. 75-77.
- 123. Moses Coit Tyler, Patrick Henry. In American Statesmen Series. Boston and New York, 1887. pp. 62, 63. 124. Same as 116. Vol. II., p. 173.
- 125. Original broadside in old State-House, Boston.
- 126, 127, 128. Same as 19. Vol. VI., pp. 86, 77, 80, 89.
- Correspondence of George the Third with Lord North, 1768-1783; ed. by W. B. Donne. London, 1867. Vol. I., p. 202.
- 130. B. B. Thacher, Traits of the Tea Party. New York, 1835. p. 260.
- 131. Same as 123. p. 99. 132. Same as 122. Vol. II., p. 158.
- 133. Richard Frothingham, Rise of the Republic. Boston, 1873. p. 326.
- 134. Jared Sparks' Washington. Vol. II., pp. 488-495.
- 135. Same as 116. Vol. II., p. 340.
- 136. Same as 123. p. 128. 137. Same as 19. Vol. VI., p. 176.
- 138. Diary of Rev. Mr. William Emerson; ed. by Ralph Waldo Emerson, in 1835.
- 139. Charles Stedman, History of the American war. London, 1794. p. 117.
- 140. Frank Moore, Diary of the American Revolution. Vol. I., p. 105.
- 141. Same as 39. Vol. III., p. 257.
- Richard Frothingham, History of the siege of Boston. Boston, 1873. pp. 415, 125, 390, 137, 415.
   Same as 19. Vol. VI., p. 196.
- 144, 145. Same as 140. Vol. I., pp. 121-123, 219, 223.
- Thomas Paine, Political writings. Charlestown, Mass., 1824. Vol. I., p. 47, in Common Sense.
- Benson J. Lossing, Pictorial field-book of the Revolution. New York, 1852.
   Vol. II., pp. 618-620. 148. Same as 116. Vol. II., p. 513.
- 149, 150. Same as 140. Vol. II., p. 145; Vol. I., p. 270.

- Extracts from the diary of Christopher Marshall, 1774-1781; ed. by William Duane. Albany, 1877. p. 83.
- Joseph Stansbury and Jonathan Odell, Loyal verses relating to the American Revolution. In Munsell's Hist. Series. Albany, 1860.
- 153. Same as 140. Vol. I., p. 43. Rivington's Gazette.
- 154. William L. Stone, Life of Joseph Brant. New York, 1838. Vol. II., App. X.
- 155. William L. Stone, Campaign of Gen. John Burgoyne. Albany, 1877. p. 237.
- 156. New York City during the American Revolution. Privately printed for Mercantile Library Ass. New York, 1861.
- 157. Account of a part of the sufferings and losses of Jolley Allen. Boston, 1883. pp. 6-38. Reprint from Mass. Hist. Soc., February, 1878.
- 158. Same as 39. Vol. III., p. 349. 159. Same as 90. Vol. V., pp. 109, 126.
- 160. The debates . . . on the adoption of the Federal Constitution; ed. Jonathan Elliott. Phil. 1876. Vol. I., p. 79.
- 161. Same as 90. Vol. II., pp. 257, 379. 162. Same as 122. Vol. II., p. 492.
- James Thacher, A military journal during the American Revolutionary War. Boston, 1827. pp. 80-111.
- 164. The London Chronicle, Dec. 30, 1776.
- 165. Memoirs, correspondence and manuscripts of Gen. Lafayette; published by the family. Vol. I., p. 220.
- 166, 167. Edward Everett Hale and Edward Everett Hale, Jr., Franklin in France. Boston, 1887. Vol. I., pp. 90, 363, 159.
- 168. Same as 134. Vol. V., pp. 447, 452. 169. Same as 140. Vol. I., p. 147.
- 170, 171. Same as 106. p. 57, etc.
- George Lewis Clark, Sketch of his campaign in Illinois in 1778-1779. Cincinnati, 1869.
- 173. Lyman C. Draper, King's Mountain and its heroes. Cincinnati, 1881. p. 591.
- 174. Same as 90. Vol. V., p. 304, note.
- 175. Robert Dale Owen. Threading his way. New York, 1874. pp. 309-311.
- 176. Talleyrand, Mémoires; ed. Duc de Broglie. Paris, 1891. Vol. I., p. 231.
- 177. Same as 173. pp. 540-543, 524.
- 178, 179. Same as 39. Vol. HI., p. 356. 180. Same as 163. pp. 276-283.
- 181. John Fiske. The weakness of the United States Government under the Confederation. Atlantic Monthly, May, 1886. p. 579.
- 182. Same as 134. Vol. VIII., p 441. Also in Old Sonth Leaflets.
- 183. The Independent Chronicle. Boston, April 1, 1784.
- 184. Same as 166. Part IL, p. 42.
- 185. James Madison, Letters and other writings. Phil. 1867. Vol. I., p. 226.
- 186. Massachusetts Historical Proceedings. Vol. IX., p. 10.
- 187. Same as 185. Vol. 1., p. 246. 188. Same as 106. pp. 44-48.
- 189. John Fiske; in Atlantic Monthly, March, 1886, p. 354.

- Abbé de Mably, Observations sur le Gouvernement et les loix des États Unis d'Amerique. Amsterdam, 1784.
- George Washington Greene, Historical view of the Revolution. Boston, 1876.
   p. 406.
- Joseph Story. A familiar exposition of the Constitution. New York, 1883.
   p. 329. Also in Old South Leaflets.
- 193. American Pioneer. Cincinnati, 1842-43. Vol. II., pp. 139-162.
- 194. John Fiske, The Federal Convention. In Atlantic Monthly, Feb. 1887, p. 226.
- 195. Same as 185. Vol. I., p. 239. 196. Same as 160. Vol. V., p. 126, etc.
- 197. Same as 134, Vol. XII., p. 217.
- 198. Alexander Hamilton, in Federalist, No. 2. Also in the Old South Leaflets.
- 199. Thomas Jefferson, Writings. Phil. 1869. Vol. II., p. 316.
- 200. Same as 160. Vol. III., pp. 58-60. Also in Old South Leaflets.
- 201. Same as 116. Vol. IX., p. 541. 202. Same as 134. Vol. X., p. 463.
- 203. Old South Leaflet on Washington's First Inaugural.
- 204, 205, 206. Same as 134. Vol. XII., p. 178; Vol. IX., p. 159; Vol. XII., p. 217.
- 207. Benson J. Lossing, Field-book of the War of 1812. New York, 1869. p. 133.
- 208. Same as 199. Vol. IV., p. 432, 209. Same as 207.
- 210. Nicholas Biddle, Travels to the source of the Mississippi River and across the American Continent to the Pacific, by Captains Lewis and Clarke. London, 1814. 211. Same as 39. Vol. VI., p. 408.
- 212. The Oracle of Dauphin. Nov. 15 or 22, 1806.
- 213. The Massachusetts Centinel. Oct. 28, 1789.
- 214. Same as 199. Vol. III., p. 128.
- 215. The diary of Washington from 1789 to 1791. New York, 1860.
- 216. Macey's History; quoted in Harper's Monthly. Vol. XXI., p. 758.
- 217. Sarah N. Randolph, Domestic life of Jefferson. New York, 1871. p. 238.
- Dolly Madison, Memoirs and letters; ed. by her grand-niece. Boston, 1886.
- 219. Captain Canot; or, twenty years of an African slaver; ed. from the captain's journals, memoranda, and conversations, by Brantz Mayer. New York, 1854. pp. 86, 87.
- The life and adventures of Zamba; written by himself; ed. by Peter Neilson. London, 1847. p. 18.
- 221. B. R. Hall (Will Carlton), The new purchase. New York, 1855. p. 175.
- 222. Daniel Drake, Pioneer life in Kentucky. Cincinnati, 1870. Passim.
- 223. Same as 38. pp. 70-80.
- 224. Alexander Mackenzie, Voyages from Montreal, on the river St. Lawrence, through the continent of North America, to the frozen and Pacific oceans; in the years 1789 and 1793. London, 1801. p. 44.

- Calvin Colton, Life, correspondence and speeches of Henry Clay. Vol. V., pp. 38-40.
- 226, 227. Niles' Weekly Register. Baltimore. Vol. II., p. 349; Vol. IV., p. 39.
- 228. Same as 207. p. 541.
- 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234. Same as 226. Vol. V., p. 190; Vol. IV., pp. 83, 85; Vol. V., p. 60; Vol. V., p. 190; Vol. VII., p. 190; Feb. 25, 1815; Vol. VIII., p. 239.
- Carl Schurz, Henry Clay. In American Statesman Series. Boston, 1887.
   Vol. II., p. 18.
- 236. The Annual Register; or, a view of the history, politics, and literature for the year 1809. London, 1811. p. 725.
- 237. Same as 226. Vol. VII., p. 197.
- 238. Thomas Benton, Thirty years' view. New York, 1885. Vol. I., p. 145.
- 239, 240. Same as 226. Vol. XXXV., pp. 61, 63; Vol. XLIII., pp. 261, 264.
- 241. Same as 235. Vol. I., p. 304.
- 242. John Quincy Adams, Memoirs; ed. by Charles Francis Adams. Phil. 1875. Vol. IV., p. 4.
- 243. William Lloyd Garrison: the story of his life, told by his children. New York, 1885-89. Vol. I., p. 410.
- 244. John C. Calhoun, Works. New York, 1874. Vol. V., pp. 203-206.
- 245. Same as 220. p. 7, etc.
- T. F. Buxton, The African slave trade and its remedy. London, 1840. pp. 232, 241.
- Alexis de Tocqueville, Memoir, letters and remains. London, 1861. Vol. I.,
   p. 140. 248. Same as 226. Vol. VII., p. 197.
- 249. Same as 221. p. 32.
- 250. Western Annotator. Salem, Ind., Nov. 17, 1830.
- Capt. Basil Hall, Travels in North America in the years 1827-28. Edinburgh, 1829. Vol. III., p. 320, etc.
- Henry R. Schoolcraft, Narrative journal of travels from Detroit northwest in the year 1820. Albany, 1821. pp. 134-141, 383, 385.
- 253. Indian Phanix. Salem, Ind., Nov. 30, 1831.
- 254. Same as 235. Vol. I., p. 335; Vol. II., p. 192.
- 255, 256. Same as 226. Vol. XXXIV., p. 297; Aug. 2, 1817.
- William H. Seward, Autobiography, with life and letters; by Frederick W. Seward. New York, 1877. Vol. I., p. 195.
- 258, 259. Same as 226. Dec. 26, 1829; Aug. 2, 1817.
- Nathan Sargent, Public men and events from the commencement of Mr. Monroe's administration in 1817, to the close of Mr. Fillmore's administration in 1853, Phil. 1875. Vol. II., p. 193.
- 261. Same as 238. Vol. I., pp. 27, 690.

- 262. Life and adventures of Black Hawk. Cincinnati, 1856. p. 69.
- 263. Walt Whitman, Poems.
- 264. Congressional Globe. Vol. XIII., Part I., p. 637.
- Thomas J. Farnham, Travels in the great Western prairies. London, 1842.
   Passim. 266. Same as 39. Vol. VII., p. 189.
- Ranch and Mission days in Alta, California. Century Magazine, December, 1890.
- 268. Californiana. In Century Magazine, December, 1890.
- David Crockett, Col. Crockett's exploits and adventures in Texas. Phil. 1836.
- 270. Same as 238. Vol. I., p. 675.
- Philip St. George Cooke, Conquest of New Mexico and California. New York, 1878. p. 69.
- 272, 273. Horace Greeley, The American conflict... Hartford, 1864. Vol. I., pp. 159-161; p. 158.
- William Cary Crane, Life and literary remains of Sam Houston. Phil. 1885.
   p. 232.
- 275. The other side; or, notes for the history of Mexico and the United States, written in Mexico; trans. by Albert C. Ramsay. New York and London, 1850.
- 276. Same as 272.
- 277, 278. John C. Fremont, Memoirs. Chicago, 1887. Vol. I., pp. 503, 522-524.
- 279. Charles F. Hoffman, Poems, 1873; Lib. Am. Lit., Vol. VI., p. 279.
- Frank H. Alfriend, The life of Jefferson Davis. Cincinnati and Chicago, 1868. p. 56.
- 281. Winfield Scott, Memoirs. New York, 1864. pp. 415, 477, etc.
- 282. Ulysses S. Grant, Personal memoirs. New York, 1886. Vol. I., pp. 167-169.
- 283. Joaquin Miller, Songs of the sunlands. Boston, 1873.
- 284. G. G. Foster, The gold mines of California. New York, 1848.
- A. Delano, Life on the plains and among the diggings. Auburn and Buffalo, 1854. pp. 102-237.
- 286. H. H. Bancroft, Works. San Francisco, 1882. Vol. XXIII., p. 268.
- 287. Peter H. Burnett, Recollections and opinions of an old pioneer. New York, 1880. p. 296.
- 288. Stewart Sheldon, Gleanings by the way. Topeka, Kan., 1890. p. 65.
- 289, 290, 291, 292. Congressional Globe. Vol. XXI., pp. 127, 265–269. In Appendix.
- 293. Same as 260. Vol. II., p. 365. 294, 295, 296. Same as 289.
- 297. Frederick Douglass, My slavery and freedom. New York, 1855. p. 220.
- 298. Samuel J. May, Recollections of our anti-slavery conflict. Boston, 1869. p. 361.
- 299. Same as 297. pp. 423-426, 282. 300. Same as 298. pp. 374-384.
- 301. Congressional Globe. Vol. XXIX., p. 769. March 25, 1854.

- Nicolay and Hay, Abraham Lincoln: a history. New York, 1890. Vol. I., p. 348.
- 303. Eli Thayer, Kansas crusade. New York, 1889. p. 25.
- 304. William Lawrence, Life of Amos Lawrence. Boston, 1888. pp. 81-83.
- 305, 306, 307. Report of the special committee appointed to investigate the troubles in Kansas. Washington, 1856. pp. 894, 895, 114, 95.
- 308, 309. F. B. Sanborn, Life and letters of John Brown. Boston, 1885. pp. 611, 295.
- 310. E. P. Dangerfield, John Brown at Harper's Ferry. Century, June, 1885.
- 311. Same as 308. p. 585. 312. Same as 303.
- 313. Wendell Phillips, Speeches, lectures, and letters. Boston, 1863. pp. 274, 293.
- 314. Battles and leaders of the Civil War. New York, 1887. Vol. I., p. 160.
- 315, 316. Forty days in a Western hotel. Putnam's Monthly Magazine, December, 1854.
- Frederick Law Olmsted, A journey through Texas. New York, 1859. pp. 55, 56.
- 318. Horace Greeley, Recollections of a busy life. New York, 1868. pp. 365-367.
- J. Leander Bishop, A history of American manufactures, from 1608-1860.
   Phil. 1864. Vol. II., chapter on 1860.
- 320. David Christy. Cotton is king. New York, 1856. p. 73.
- Benson J. Lossing, Pictorial history of the Civil War in America. Phil. 1866-68. Vol. I., p. 30.
- 322. Francis E. Browne, Bugle-echoes. p. 103. Henry Timrod's Carolina.
- 323. Mrs. Mary A. Livermore, My story of the Civil War. Hartford, 1889. pp. 550-552. 324. Same as 303. Vol. II., p. 187.
- 325. Congressional Globe, for Feb. 23, 1859, p. 1247. Second extract from Globe of May 17, 1860, p. 2155. 326. Same as 303. Vol. II., pp. 306-311.
- 327. From broadside in the Libby Prison Museum, Chicago, Ill.
- 328. Four years under fire in Charleston. Harper's Monthly Magazine, August, 1865.
- 329. Same as 302. Vol. III., pp. 327-344. Also in Old South Leaflets.
- 330. Jefferson Davis, Rise and fall of the Confederacy. New York, 1881. Vol. I., p. 221.
- 331. Same as 272. Vol. II., pp. 342, 344.
- 332, Same as 274. pp. 599-608. 333. Same as 314. Vol. I., p. 36.
- 334. Same as 272. Vol. II., p. 342.
- 335. Bryant, W. C., and Gay, S. H., A popular history of the United States. New York, 1876-80. Vol. IV., p. 440.
- 336. Same as 272. Vol. II., pp. 389, 393. 337. Same as 302. Vol. III., pp. 327-344.
- 338. Lib. Am. Lit. Vol. VIII., p. 368. 339. Same as 330. Vol. I., pp. 593, 648.

- Frank Moore, The Rebellion record. New York, 1862, etc. Vol. I., p. 42.
   Same as 272. Vol. II., p. 416.
- 342. Lib. Am. Lit. Vol. VIII., p. 368.
- 343. Abner Doubleday's reminiscences of Forts Sumter and Moultrie. New York, 1876. pp. 14, 15, 79, 80, 100, 126.
- 344. Same as 272. Vol. II., p. 449.
- 345. Same as 340. Vol. I., pp. 298, 266, 76, 90, 102, 107, Doc.
- 346. Same as 314. Vol. I., pp. 86-93.
- 347. Battle-fields of the South, by an English combatant. New York, 1864.
- 348. Same as 322. p. 51. 349. Same as 314. Vol. I., p. 203.
- 350, 351. Same as 340. Vol. II., pp. 82-87, 109-122.
- 352. George Cable, New Orleans after the capture; in Century Magazine, April, 1885. 353. Same as 341.
- 354. Same as 314. Vol. I., pp. 713, 702, 692. 355. Same as 352.
- 356. Edward King, Great South. Hartford, 1875. p. 616.
- 357. Same as 302. Vol. VI., p. 422. Also in Old South Leaflets.
- J. B. T. Marsh, The story of the Jubilee Singers. New York, 1883. pp. 111, 117, 3.
- 359. U.S. Grant; in Century Magazine, September, 1885.
- 360. Henry W. Grady, New South. New York, 1890. p. 190.
- 361. Same as 322. p. 191.
- A. L. Long, Memoirs of Robert E. Lee. New York, Philadelphia, and Washington, 1886. p. 259.
- 363, 364, 365. Same as 314. Vol. III., pp. 387–390, 726.
- 366. A woman's diary of the siege of Vicksburg. Century Magazine, September, 1885.
- David Dodge, Domestic life in the Confederacy. Atlantic Monthly, August, 1886.
- 368, 369. Same as 323. pp. 659, 126, 127, 130–132, 145–147. 370, 371. Same as 324. p. 272.
- William T. Sherman. Memoirs. New York, 1875. Vol. II., pp. 174, 178– 181.
- 373. Same as 323. pp. 696-698. 374. Lib. Am. Lit. Vol. X., p. 528.
- 375. Poem read on the unveiling of the Lee Monnment in Richmond, 1887.
- 376. Same as 282. Vol. II., pp. 154-157. 377. Same as 362. p. 638.
- 378. Same as 282. Vol. II., pp. 483-498. 379. Same as 362. p. 423.
- Henry J. Raymond, Life and public services of Abraham Lincoln. New York, 1865. p. 17.
- 381, 382. J. G. Holland, The life of Abraham Lincoln. Springfield, 1866. pp. 40, 43, 65.

- 383. John M. Ludlow, President Lincoln self-pourtrayed. London, 1866. p. 19.
- 384. Same as 381. p. 432.
- 385, 386. Same as 302. Vol. VIII., p. 202; Vol. X., pp. 143-145. Also in Old South Leaflets.
- 387. Isaac N. Arnold, The life of Abraham Lincoln. Chicago, 1885. p. 429.
- 388. Same as 302. Vol. X., p. 348. 389. Same as 360. p. 37.
- 390. Same as 303. Vol. X., p. 330, etc.
- 391. Joel Chandler Harris, Life of Henry W. Grady. New York, 1890. p. 86.
- 392. War poem. Atlantic Monthly. Vol. IX., p. 398.
- 393. Same as 330. Vol. II., p. 719.
- Henry Cleveland, Alexander H. Stephens in public and private. Nat. Pub. Co., 1866. pp. 806-815.
- 395. John Wallace, Carpet-bag rule in Florida. Jacksonville, Fla. pp. 42-58.
- Caleb Cushing, The Treaty of Washington. New York, 1873. pp. 15-17, 258-263, 127, 186.
- John W. Powell, Exploration of the Colorado River of the West. Smithsonian Pub., 1875. p. 130.
- 398. John G. Bourke, General Crook in the Indian country. In Century, March, 1891, pp. 650-660.
- 399. New York Weekly Times, Oct. 2, 1889.
- 400. The head, the heart, and the hand. Address of Gen. J. F. B. Marshall, at Kamehameha school. Honolulu, 1890.
- 401. Talks and thoughts. Indian paper at Hampton, May, 1886.
- 402. Fifth annual report of the Bureau of Ethnology, 1883-84. Washington, 1887.
- 403. Same as 315.
- 404. Richmond M. Smith, Emigration and immigration. New York, 1890. pp. 67, 38.
- 405. J. H. Tuke, With the emigrants. Nineteenth Century, July, 1882.
- J. H. Tuke, News from some Irish emigrants. Nineteenth Century, March, 1889.
- 407. The Chinese in America. Cincinnati, 1887.
- 408. The Exclusion of the Chinese. North American Review. Vol. 139, p. 358.
- 409. Same as 404. p. 135.
- Report of the Commission . . . on the Centennial celebration at Yorktown. Washington, 1883. p. 124.
- 411. Lalor's Cyclopædia. New York, 1888. Vol. III., p. 730.
- 412. Same as 361. pp. 165-167, 200-202, 191, 198, 199, 210, 212, 223.
- 413. The blue and the gray. Century Magazine, March, 1885. p. 797.
- 414. Atlanta Constitution; quoted in Nation, Aug. 28, 1890.
- 415. New York Weekly Herald, Jan. 8, 1890.
- 416. Theodore Roosevelt. Century, October, 1888, p. 843.
- 417. Theodore Roosevelt, The home ranch. Century, March, 1888.

- 418. The new Northwest. Century, August, 1882, p. 504.
- 419. Walt Whitman, Specimen days. p. 146.
- 420. The Cosmopolitan, May, 1890.
- 421. Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper, June 5, 1869.
- Economic Tracts, No. XXII., Civil Service Examinations; ed. by R. R. Bowker. Soc. for Political Education. New York, 1886.
- 423. New York Weekly Times, July 10, 1889.

### PRONOUNCING AND REFERENCE INDEX.



ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, are procouced with the long sound, as in mate, mete, mite, mote, mute. a, e, i, o, u, are procounced with the short sound, as in mat, met, mit, not, out. sounds are indicated by the spelling.

Abolitionists, 191, 214, 242, 243, 286, 296. A cā'di a. 123. Adams, John, 146, 159, 160, 161, 212, 282; John Quincy Adams, 242, 267, 268, 286; Samuel Adams, 136, 142, 144, 146, 148, 152, 161, 163, Africa, Portuguese discovery, 17, 21.

Agassiz (ag'ah see), 288, 371. Alabama, 285.

Alabama claims, 373, 379, 404. Alamo (ah'lah mō), 264, 265. Alaska, 191, 403.

Alexander the Great, 16. Algonquins (ăl gŏn'kin), 75, 76. Alien and Sedition Laws, 282.

Allen, Ethan, 191. Alt'on riot, 287.

Anarchists, 406.

Anderson, 326, 327, 372.

André (ăn drā), 182. Andros, 97, 99, 121.

Annapolis Convention, 203.

Anne. 121.

Antietam (ăn tee'tam), 373.

Anti-Federalists, 209, 216.

Apaches (ah pah'chā), 381.

Appomat'ox, 359.

Arizona, 38-40, 48, 121, 192, 269, 288, 371,

Arkansas (ark'an saw), 120, 121, 287. Arnold, Benedict, 151, 171, 172, 181-183,

191-193.

Arthur, 405.

Ashburton treaty, 288.

Astor, 283.

Ast ō'ria, 283, 284.

Atlantic Telegraph, 403.

Atlanta, 347, 354, 356, 374, 391, 392, 405.

Attorney-General, 213.

Austin, 285.

Azores, 20, 27.

Bacon's Rebellion, 86, 120.

Bainbridge, 284.

Balboa, 47.

Ballot-reform, 399, 406.

Ball's Bluff, 373.

Bancroft, George, 287, 371, 403.

Bancroft, Hubert Howe, 404.

Barbary pirates, 285. Barré (bah rā), 135.

Bartholdi's (bar told v) statue, 392, 405.

Battles of the Wilderness, 358, 374.

Bay Psalm Book, 119.

Bear-flag revolt, 270, 289.

Beauregard, 274, 327, 331, 373.

Beecher, 371.

Behring Sea controversy, 406, 407.

Bell, 315.

Bemis' Heights, 171, 192.

Bengala (ben'gah lah), 14.

Bennington, 171, 192. Benton, 256.

Bering's Straits, 122.

Berkeley, Governor, 86.

Biarne (hē ahrn), 7, 8.

Bienville (bē ăn vīl), 91.

Black Hawk, 254.

Black Hawk War, 287.

Blockade, 324, 333, 372.

Boone, 115, 177, 190.

Boston, 80, 118; siege of, 152-157; massacre, 140, 190; Port Bill, 144, 191; tea party, 142, 191.

Bowie, 264.

Braddock's defeat, 106, 123.

Bradford, 66, 118.

Brandywiue, 192.

Braut, 192, 193.

Brattalid (brăt'tah lid), 7-9.

Brazil, 407.

Brebeuf (hrŭ hĕf'), 74.

Breckinridge, 315, 371.

Brewster, 68.

Brown, John, 308, 310, 372.

Bryant, 285, 371, 403.

Buchanan, 371.

Buell, 373.

Buena Vista (bwān'ah vis'tah), 272, 289.

Bull Run, 331, 373.

Bunker Hill, 152-156, 191.

Burgoyne's invasion, 170-172, 175, 192.

Burr, 283. Butler, 338.

Cabinet, 213.

Cable, George, 405.

Căb'öt, John, 27, 28, 46; Sebastian, 27.

Cabrillo (cab breel'yo), 48.

Cale (cah'ly), 33.

Căl'ĕ căt, 28.

Calhoun, 243, 284, 286, 291–293, 295.

California, 121, 190, 262, 269, 270, 276–280, 286, 288, 289, 292, 295, 371.

Calvert, George, 70; Cecil, 71.

Calvin, 48.

Căm'ba lŭc, 13.

Cambridge, 98.

Camdén, 193.

Canada, 406.

Canaries, 17.

Cā nŏn'i cus, 72.

Cape of Good Hope, 17, 28, 46.

Cape Verde Islands, 17.

Carlisle, 383.

Carolinas, 120, 122, 125.

Carpenter's Hall, 147.

Carpet-baggers, 378, 404.

Cartier, Jacques (zbăck kart'y ā), 47.

Carver, 80.

Cass, 217, 247.

Cataia, Cataya (kat ī'yah). See Cathay. Cathay (kah thā), 12, 43, 44, 47.

Catholics, 46, 47, 120.

Centennial, 405.

Central America, 47.

Cerro Gordo (thā'ro gōr'dō), 289.

Cevlon, see Seilan.

Champlain (shăm plane), 49, 62-64, 118. Chancellorsville, 343, 374.

Chapultepec (chah pool'tū pěk), 274, 289.

Charles I., 118; Charles II., 97, 120; Charles V., 47.

Charleston, S.C., 120, 125, 191, 193, 194, 374.

Charters, 44, 57, 67, 71, 92, 94, 120; Charters, New England, 96-100.

Chattanooga, 346, 374.

Cherokees, 286, 384.

Cherry Valley 193

Cherry Valley, 193. Chicago, 248, 285, 309, 395.

Chickamauga, 374.

China, 90. See Cathay.

Chinese discovery of America, 16; Chinese question, 388, 405, 406.

Chipangu (chee păn'goo), 14, 26.

Cibola (thĭb ō'lah), 38, 39.

Cincinnati, 193; lynchers in, 405.

Cipangu (chee păn'goo), see Chipangu.

Civil service under Jackson, 249; civil service reform, 386-389, 392, 405.

Clark, 178, 193.

Clay, 240, 267, 268, 283, 287, 291-3.

Cleveland, Grover, 406.

Clinton, Gen., 193; George, 283.

Coinage, 281.

Cold Harbor, 359, 374.

Colfax, 404.

Colorado (kŏl ō rah'do), 48, 404.

Columbia, ship, 282; River, 217-219, 228, 282, 285; in S.C., 374.

Columbus, 19, 31, 46.

Commonwealth, 120.

Company of New France, 75.

Compass, mariner's, 16.

Compromise bill of 1850, 292, 371.

Comstock mines, 372.

Concord, 149, 150, 191.

Confederacy, Southern, 322-325, 372.

Confederation, Articles of, 168, 192; troubles of, 188, 196-199; opinious of, 198, 199.

Congo discovered, 17.

Congress, Continental, 146, 159, 168, 191, 192; under the Constitution, 200, 204, 208.

Connecticut, 119; Western claims, 281; Connecticut Reserve, 281; Constitution in, 81, 119.

Constitution, 119, 206, 207-210; agreed to hy states, 282.

Constitutional Convention, 203, 206, 281. Constitution and Guerriere, 232, 284. Cook, 193,

Cooper, J. F., 285.

Contrahand of war, 340.

Contreras (kon trā rahs), 289.

Cornwallis, 168, 185-188, 193, 194.

Coronada (kō rō nah'do), 48.

Cortez (kŏr'tĕz), 47.

Cotton, 282; cotton-gin, 282, 334; cotton king, 312; cotton exposition, 405.

County-meeting, 145.

Cow-boy, 394.

Cowpens, 194.

Crěd'it Mobilier (mô beel'yer), 404.

Creek Indians, 95; war, 284.

Cromwell, 120.

Crockett, 264.

Crook, Gen., 381.

Crown Point, 111, 123.

Crusades, 16.

Cuba, 26,

Custer, 405.

Dakota, 395; North and South, 406.

Dallas, 374.

Dallas, G. M., 288.

Dalles (dălz) mission, 260.

Darien (dah ry ĕn'), 47.

Davis, Jefferson, 272, 291–293, 324, 315, 319, 360, 361, 372, 375.

Decatur, 284, 285.

Delaware, 119, 122.

Democratic party, 286; split in, 372.

Denver, 311, 396.

Departments, State, War, Treasury, 213; of Interior, 289, 291; Navy, 282; Post-office, 286.

Detroit, 122, 177, 180, 201, 284.

Dinwiddie, 103, 108.

Dickinson, 162.

Douglas, Stephen A., 292, 300, 315, 316, 327.

Douglass, Fred., 296.

Draft act, 374; riot, 363.

Drake, 41, 48, 49.

Dred Scott, 372.

Dunmore's War, 191.

Dutch, 69, 118.

Edward VI., 47.

Edwards, 122.

Electricity, 123, 174, 405.

Eliot, 119.

Elizabeth, 45, 48, 49.

Emancipation, 281, 340, 373, 374.

Embargo, 230, 237, 283.

Emerson, 287, 371, 403. Emigration, see Immigration.

Erie Canal, 285.

E'rik, 7, 8, 16.

Eriksson, 287, 338.

Eutaw Springs, 194.

Everett, 284, 371.

Express, 371.

Faneuil Hall (fan'nŭl), 139, 140.

Farmer's Alliance, 407.

Farragut, 338, 374.

Federalist, 209, 216, 281.

Federalist party, 209, 282.

Ferdinand and Isabella, 19, 21, 23, 25, 29-31, 46.

Fillmore, 289, 370.

Fisheries, 46, 65, 67, 128, 129, 189, 222, 286, 404, 406.

Flag, American, 192.

Flamborough Head, 193.

Flores (flo'ras), 20.

Florida, 31-36, 47, 189, 285, 288.

Foote, 373.

Forts; Boisé, 259; Caroliue, 35, 44, 48; Crévecoeur (krāve kŭr), 89; Dearhorn, 248, 283; Donelson, 373; Du Quesne (dew kāne'), 106, 107, 123; Erie, 284; Frontenac, 89, 90; Hatteras, 373; Henry, 373; Mims, 284; Necessity, 106, 123;

Niagara, 89; Pillow, 374; Pitt, 123, 192; Poutchartrain (pōn shahr trăn'), 122; Pulaski, 373; St. Joseph, 89; Stanwix,

170; 171, 192; Sumter, 326-330; 372, 374; Walla-Walla, 260; Washington, 192.

Forty-niners, 277.

Fourteenth amendment, 404.

-----

France, war with, 282. Francis I., 47.

Franklin, 123, 160, 161, 173-175, 191, 192, 193, 197, 205, 206; Franklin's plau of union, 105, 123.

Fredericksburg, 344, 373.

Freedmen, 342, 393.

Fremont, 270, 271, 288.

French Alliance, 173, 175, 193, 194.

French and Indian War, 105-112, 123.

French-Town, 233.

Friends, 92, 120.

Fröb'ish er, 44, 48.

Front'e nac, 88.

Fugitive Slave Law, 291-299.

Fugitive slaves, 295-300.

Fulton, 283.

Fü săng, 16.

Gadsden, 137.

Gadsden Purchase, 371.

Gage, 148, 152.

Garfield, 405.

Garrison, 243, 286, 287, 371.

Gaslights, 285.

Gates, 171, 172, 185, 192, 193.

Geneva Arbitration, 379, 404.

George 1., 101, 122; George II., 101, 122; George 111., 122, 132, 134, 138, 139, 141, 142, 144, 190, 192; King George's War,

122.

Georgia, 94, 122; cedes Western claims, 281-283.

Germantown, 192.

Gerry, (g as in get) 283.

Gettysburg, 345, 346, 374. Gilbert, 43.

01-4 101

Gist, 101.

Gold discovery, 276, 289.

Goldshoro', 357.

Grady, 405.

Grant, 275, 343, 354, 358–361, 373, 375, 404.

Gray, 282.

Greeley, 320, 371.

Greene, 151, 185, 186, 193, 194.

Green Mountain Boys, 171.

Guilford Court-House, 194.

Guerriere (gŭrry ār), 232.

Gunpowder discovered, 17.

Hamilton, 182, 281, 209, 213,

Hamlin, 372, 389.

Hampton, 383.

Hancock, 148, 152, 161.

Harmar, 282.

Harper's Ferry, 305, 373.

Harrison, W. H., 284, 288.

Harrison, Benjamin, 406.

Harte, 403.

Hartford Convention, 238, 284.

Harvard College, 119.

Hawkins, 48.

Hawthorne, 286, 371, 403.

Hayes, 405.

Haynes, 237.

Hĕll'ū land, 8.

Henry VII., 47; Henry VIII., 47; Henry the Navigator, 20, 28.

Hendricks, 406.

Hěn'ně pĭn, 120.

Henry, Patrick, 136, 140, 142, 178, 209, 210.

Herkimer, 171, 192.

Hē rŏd'o tus, 4, 16.

Hessians, 171, 191, 192.

Hillsborough, 194.

Holmes, 286, 371.

Hood, 354.

Hornet, 234.

House of Representatives, 204, 205, 208. Houston (hū ston), 265, 267, 287, 319-

327.

Howe, Gen., 53.

Howe, Elias, 288.

Howells, 406.

Hudson, 118; Hudson's Bay, 118; Hudson Bay Company, 101, 120, 217, 218, 259.

Hnguenots (hū'gŭn nŏt), 35, 36, 44, 48, 121.

Hull, 284.

Huron Missions, 74, 76, 118, 119.

Iceland, see Thule.

Idaho, 407.

Illinois, 89, 90, 104, 115, 193, 285.

Immigration, 250, 309, 310, 386–389, 399.

Impressment, 230, 236.

Independence, premonitions of, 125, 126; Declaration of, 158–162, 191.

India, 4, 5, 14, 16, 20, 22, 23, 28–30, 46.

Indiana, 246, 285.

Indians, first meetings with, 25, 33, 34, 37-39, 43; life and remains, 51-56; colonial relations with, 59, 63, 71, 72, 75, 79, 83, 84, 95, 118, 122; in Revolution, 177-180, 193; from 1783-1850, 202, 228, 233, 247, 253, 284; since the Civil War, 381-385.

Iowa, 288.

Iroquois (ĭr'ō quoy), 64, 76, 89, 102, 120.

Irving, 285.

Isabella, 46. See Ferdinand.

Jackson, Andrew, 235, 236, 240, 249, 253, 284-286; Thomas J., 344, 373.

Jamaica, 46.

James I., 57, 118; James II., 97, 120.

James, Henry, 403.

Jamestown, 57-61, 70, 118, 120.

Java, 14.

Jay, 281.

Jay's Treaty, 282.

Jefferson, 140, 142, 160, 161, 178, 209, 210, 213, 216, 221, 282, 283.

Jesuits, 48, 74, 118, 120.

John of Portugal, 21, 26.

Johnson, Andrew, 372, 374, 390; Richard M., 289, 402.

Johnston, Albert S., 373, 375; Joseph E., 354, 357, 360, 374.

Joliet, 87, 120.

Jones, Paul, 192, 193.

Joseph, Chief, 405.

Kansas, 48, 361; conflict for, 299-303, 372; Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 299-300, 371.

Kăs kăs' kies, 114.

Kearney (karn'y), 268, 288.

Kentucky, 115, 177, 190, 191, 225, 281, 282.

Khan (kăn), 12, 13, 20.

King George's War, 122.

King Philip's War, 83.

King William's War, 121.

King, William R., 371.

King's Mountain, 183, 193.

Knights of Lahor, 406.

Knox, 213.

Knoxville, 374.

Kosciusko (kös sy ŭsk'ō), 175.

Ku Klux Klan, 404.

Lahor question, 399.

Labrador, 47.

Lafayette, 175, 182, 186, 194.

Lake Champlain, 63, 118; Huron, 64;Michigan, 75, 119; Ontario, 63, 118;Superior, 120.

La Salle (lah săl), 88, 104, 120, 121.

Las Casas (lahs cahs'ahs), 22, 37, 38, 46.

Lawrence, 234, 284, 300.

Le Caron (lŭ kah'rōn), 64, 74, 118.

Lee, Robert E., 274, 320, 322, 344, 354, 358-361, 373-375.

Lee, Richard Henry, 159.

Leif Eriksson (leef ĕ rik sun), 7, 16.

Leisler (lis ler), 121.

Leme (lā mā), 20.

Leopard and Chesapeake, 231.

Lewis and Clarke's expedition, 217, 283.

Lexington, 148-150, 191.

Leyden, 66, 67.

Liberator, 243, 587.

Lincoln, Abraham, 171, 314, 321, 333, 362-367, 372-375, 403.

Lincoln, Gen., 71, 193.

Livingston, 212.

Longfellow, 286, 371, 403.

London Company, 57, 58, 77.

Long Island, Battle of, 192.

Lookout Mountain, 347, 374.

Louis the Great, or Louis XIV., 88, 90, 120, 190; Louis XV., 122, 190; Louis XVI., 192.

Louisburgh, 122, 123.

Louisiana, 120-123, 283, 284.

Louisiana Purchase, 215-219, 227, 241.

Lowell, 288, 371.

Loyola (loi ō'la), 48.

10,014 (1010 14), 10

Lundy's Lane, 284.

Luther, 47.

Lynchburg, 375.

Mackenzie, 228, 282.

McClellan, 373.

McCormick, 287.

Madeiras, 17.

Madison, 197, 203, 204, 281, 283.

Mā' dŏc, 17.

Magellan, 47.

Maine, 285; boundary, 288.

Maine Law, 371.

Măndeville, 17.

Manufactures, 126, 131, 132, 221, 222, 239, 248, 311.

Marco, 38, 48.

Marion, 183, 185.

Marquette, 87, 120.

Mary, 47, 48.

Maryland, 69, 86, 119, 121.

Mason and Dixon's line, 123.

Mason and Slidell, 373.

Massachusetts, 129; Western claims, 281; Emigrant Aid Company, 301; colonial

government, 80.

Massacre at River Raisin, 233, 284.

Măssasoit', 68.

Măth'er, Cotton, 83, 85, 121; Increase, 97,

120.

May, Samuel J., 296.

Mayflower, 66; Mayflower compact, 80.

Meade, 345.

Mecklenburgh declaration, 158.

Menendez (mā něn'děth), 35.

Merrimac, 335-338, 362.

Mexican War, 267-275, 288, 289.

Mexico, 33, 47, 264, 268, 273, 285.

Mexico City, 268, 273, 274, 289.

Miamis, 102.

Michigan, 287.

Michilimackinac (mishily mack'in ak),

88, 90, 120, 247.

Mill Spring, 373.

Minute-men, 148.

Minnesota, 120, 372.

Missionary Ridge, 347, 374.

Missions, Eliot's, 119; French, 64, 118-

120, 121; Huron, 74-76; Oregon, 260, 287; Spanish, 118, 122, 262, 263.

287; Spanish, 118, 122, 262, 263.

Mississippi, exploration of, 33, 34, 88-91, 103, 120; settlements on, 113, 114, 121; parigration of 17, 189, 107, 108, 200, 282

navigation of, 17, 189, 197, 198, 200, 282, 287; in Revolution, 193; state of, 285.

Missouri, 242, 284, 285.

Missouri Compromise, 241, 242, 285, 293, 300.

Mobile Bay, 374.

Modoc War, 404.

Molinos del Rey (mō lēn'ōs del rā), 274, 289.

Monitor, 325-328, 373.

Monmouth, 193.

Monroe, 242, 285; Monroe doctrine, 285.

Montana, 406.

Montcalm, 112, 123.

Monterey, 272, 289.

Montgomery, 191.

Montreal, 47, 123.

Morgan, 194, 374.

Mormons, 288, 372, 405.

Mormon battalion, 269, 288.

Morris, Gouverneur, 205.

Morse, 252, 288.

Morton, 393, 406.

Monltrie, 191.

Mound-builders, 54, 55.

Mount Vernon, 126.

Mugwumps, 405.

Murfreesboro, 373.

Mntfili (moot'fē lē), 14.

Napoleon, 217.

Narragansett country, 72; Indians, 84.

Narvaez (nar'vah ĕth), 32, 38, 47.

Navigation laws, 31.

Navy, 191; Navy department, 282.

Nebraska, 403.

Negroes as soldiers, 373, see Emancipation; on Jefferson's plantation, 223.

Nevada, 374.

New Albion, 41, 43, 48.

New Amsterdam, 70.

New England, 49, 65, 70; New England Confederacy, 119.

Newfoundland, 46.

New Hampshire, 118.

New Jersey, 120.

New Mexico, 38, 40, 48, 49, 288, 371, 405.

New Netherlands, 120.

New Orleans, 91, 104, 115, 122, 192, 202, 246, 334, 338, 373; battle of, 235, 284; exposition, 405; lynching in, 407.

Newspaper, first, 122.

New York, 69, 70, 118, 120, 127; in Revolution, 191, 192, 194.

Nez Perce War, 405.

Niagara, 111, 123.

Nicarauga Canal, 406.

Nicolet (nē'cō lā), 75, 119.

Non-importation agreements, 139.

Non-Intercourse Act, 230, 283.

North Carolina, 120, 121, 222.

Northmen, 6-10, 16.

North-west boundary, 404.

North-west coast, 193, 228, 241.

North-west Passage, 43, 48; North-west Territory, 199-202, 247.

Nova Albion, see New Albion.

Nova Scotia, 49.

Nullification, 238-240, 287.

Oglethorpe, 94, 122.

Ohio River, 88, 116, 283; Ohio Company, 101, 123; settlement, 115, 190, 201, 281.

Ŏklahō'ma, 406.

Ordinance of '87, 200, 281.

Oregon, 288, 372; Oregon Question, 256, 285, 287; Oregon Trail, 256-259; Oregon Treaty, 260, 288.

Otis, 133, 135.

Pacific Ocean, 47; railways, 290, 374, 391, 397, 404.

Paine, 191.

Palo Alto (pah'lō ahl'tō), 288.

Pà'lŏs, 22, 23.

Panama, 371.

Pan-American Congress, 406, 407.

Parkman, 371, 403.

Peace of 1815, 236, 284; with Mexico, 289; of Paris, 123; Paris and Versailles (ver salz), 189, 194.

Peace conference, 372.

Peacock, 234.

Pea Ridge, 373.

Peekskill, 193.

Peninsular campaign, 373.

Penn, 92-94, 121.

Pennsylvania, 93, 121, 126.

Pensacola, 284, 285.

Pequots, 119.

Perry, 234, 284.

Peru, 32, 47.

Petersburg, 359, 374, 375.

Petroleum, 372.

Philadelphia, 93, 121, 192, 193.

Philip's War, 83-85, 120.

Phillips, 287, 371.

Pierce, 371.

Pike, 383.

Pike's Peak, 372.

Pilgrims, 65-68, 71, 80, 118.

Pillory, 79.

Pitt, 123.

Pittsburgh, 123, 245.

Pittsburgh Lauding, 373.

Pittsburgh strike, 405.

Pizarro (pē zar'ō), 32, 47.

Plains of Abraham, 111.

Plymouth, 118; Plymouth Company, 57, 65, 66.

Poe, 286.

Polo Marco, 12-16, 17.

Polk, 268, 288.

Pom pon'i us Me la, 16, 17.

Ponce de Leon (pôn'thả da la'ôn), 47.

Pontiac's War, 123.

Population, 313.

Porter, 284.

Port Hudson, 374.

Port Royal, S.C., 35, 48, 373; Port Royal,

Nova Scotia, 49.

Portugal, 27.

Portuguese discoveries, 17, 28, 29.

Post-office department 286.

Prescott, 287.

President, 204, 208, 209.

Princeton, 167, 192.

Printing invented, 17.

Printing-press, 47, 119.

Privateers in Revolution, 191, 193; in War of 1812, 235, 284; in Civil War,

373.

Prohibition party, 404.

Protective tariff, 238-240, 286.

Protestants, 47; German protestants, 94, 95, 121. See Huguenots.

Providence, 119.

Ptolemy (tolly mi), 6, 16, 17.

Pueblos, 39. Pulaski, 175.

Puritans, 72, 80-82, 118, 120.

Putnam, 145, 151.

Quakers, see Friends.

Quebec, 62, 109-112, 113, 123, 191.

Queen Anne's War, 121.

Quivira (kee vee'rah), 48.

Raid, John Brown's, 361.

Railroads, 251, 285, 286. See Pacific.

Raleigh (raw'ly), 44, 48, 49.

Ranches, 394. Randolph, 204, 213.

Reaping-machine, 287.

Reconstruction, 376-379, 403.

Representation, 136, 204, 205.

Republican party, 300, 371.

Resaca de la Palma (rā sah cab dǔ lah palm'ah), 288.

Resaca, 374.

Revere, 148.

Revolt of Revolutionary troops, 188, 189,

193.

Rhode Island, 69, 119, 127, 128.

Richelieu (reesh'v lew), 118.

Richmond, 372, 375.

Rio Grande (re'o grand'y), 268.

Roanoke, 45, 49, 373.

Rochambeau (rōsh'ăm bō), 187.

Rocky Mountains, 122, 218.

Russians, 228.

Saguenay, 49.

St. Augustine, 34-36, 48.

St. Clair, 282.

St. Lawrence, 46, 47, 49, 62.

St. Leger, 192.

Salem, 72, 118, 121.

Salt Lake City, 269.

Samoa (sah mō'ah), 406.

San Autonio, 122, 429,

San Francisco, 192, 396.

Sanitary Commission, 351.

San Jacinto (sahn hah theen'tō), 265, 287. San Juan de Ullua (sahn whau dā ooloo'ah), 273.

Santa Anna, 265, 273.

Santa Fé, 118, 268, 269; Santa Fé Trail, 261; Santa Fé traders, 258, 262.

Saratoga, 171, 192.

Sault St. Marie (soo săn mah rē, now generally called Soo St. Mary), 120, 247.

Savannah, 95, 193, 194, 356, 374.

Schools, 81, 119, 121, 200, 226.

Schuyler (ski ler), 170, 171, 191, 192.

Scott, 240, 268, 272, 289.

Seal fisheries, 406.

Secession, 240, 294, 316-319, 372.

Seilan (see lahn), 14.

Senate, 204, 205, 208.

Seminole War, 285, 287.

Separatists, 49, 66.

Serapis (sŭ rā'pis), 193.

Sevier (se veer), 183, 184, 193.

Seward, 292-294, 295, 324, 371.

Sewing-machine, 288.

Shay's Rebellion, 281.

Shelby, 183, 184.

Sheridan, 358, 364, 374.

Sherman's march, 354-357, 374.

Shiloh, 373.

Ship Island, 373.

Sioux (soo), 53, 91, 374, 405.

Sioux Reservation, 407.

Sitting Bull, 405.

Skrellings, 11.

Slavery Slave in Africa, 243; slavery introduced, 48, 118; slavery question, 200, 205, 213, 214-219, 222-229, 241-244; slave trade, 128, 146, 206, 223, 282. See Negro, Emancipation, Fugitive Slave Law, Kansas, Freedmen.

Smith, 58-60, 65, 118.

Socialist, 000.

Sons of Liberty, 135, 163.

Soto, 31-34, 48.

South America, 46, 121. See Spanish Main.

South Carolina, 121, 240.

Spain in Revolution, 193.

Spanish Maiu, 41.

Spanish settlemeut, 262.

Spanish treaty, 197, 282.

Spoils system, 244, 286, 402.

Spottsylvania Court-House, 358. Squanto, 68.

Stamp Act. 134-137, 190.

Stage-coaches, 220, 221.

Standish, 68.

Stark, 151, 171.

Star of the West, 372.

States, admission of, 205; first formation of, 191; powers of, 204, 208.

Steamboats, 281; on ocean, 282, 285.

Steam-engines, 283.

Stephens, 321, 324.

Stephenson, 251, 285.

Steuben, 175, 193, 194.

Stillwater, 171, 192.

Stone River, 373.

Strabo (strā bō), 16. Strikes, 405, 406.

Stuart, 373.

Swedes, 119.

Sullivan, 193.

Sumner, 371.

Sumter, 183, 185.

Supreme Court, 209.

Sutter's Fort, 276.

Dutter S Port,

Tā mös, 5.

Tariff, 287, 288, 290.

Tariff Reform, 399.

Tarleton, 94.

Taylor, 268, 272, 288-289, 370.

Tea, tax on, 142, 143, 190.

Tecumseh, 284.

Telegraph, 252, 288, 397; ocean, 372.

Telephone, 405.

Temperance, 287, 399.

Tennessee, 282, 403.

Tenure of Office Act, 404.

Texas, 121, 122, 264–268, 285, 286, 287, 288, 310.

Thames, battle of, 284.

Thayer, 300, 303.

Thirteenth Amendment, 402.

Thor'finn, 10, 11, 16.

Three Rivers, 76.

Thule (thū'ly), 19.

Ticonderoga, 111, 123, 170, 171, 191, 192.

Tippecanoe, 284.

Tomkius, 285.

Topeka Convention, 303.

Tories, 163-6, 171, 193, 194.

Toscanelli (tōs cah nĕl'ē), 20.

Town-meeting, 139, 143.

Townshend, 135.

Trade, colonial, 125-130; from 1800-1812, 220-229; 1815-1845, 245-254; in the fifties, 310-312.

Travis, 265.

Treaty with France, 193; with Spain, 284.

Treaties of Peace, see Peace of Washington, 404.

Trent affair, 373.

Trenton, battle of, 167, 168, 192.

Tripoli, 283.

Trusts, 405, 406.

Tyler, 288.

Tyrker (turk er), 9.

Underground railway, 297.

Union, 210, 240; in the colonies, 119, 137, 144-147, 151; threats to, 237-243. SeeSecession and Nullification.

Utah, 288.

Valley Forge, 169, 193.

Van Buren, 286, 287.

Vasco da Gama (vah'skō dah gah'mah), 28, 46.

Vera Cruz (vā'rah kroos), 273, 289.

Venango, 104.

Vermont, 122, 282.

Verrazano (vā raht zahn'ō), 47.

Vespucci, Amerigo (vās pūt'chē, ah mārē gō), 46.

Vicksburg, 346, 349, 374.

Vikings, 7–10.

Vincennes (vin sens), 179, 193.

Vinland, 9.

Virginia, 45, 57, 65, 70, 77, 86, 125; yields Western claims, 194; invites states to a convention, 203; Western claims, 281.

Wampum, 53.

War of 1812, 229-236, 284.

Washington, in French and Indian War, 103, 106, 123; home of, 126; in Revolution, 139, 145, 166-169, 182, 186-189, 191-194, 204, 214; as President, 211-215, 282.

Washington City, 283, 284. Washington (state), 406.

Wayne, 282.

Webster, 268, 284, 287, 291-294.

Welsh discovery of America, 17.

West Indies, 29, 30, 37, 46.

West India Company, 69.

West Point, 181, 193.

West Virginia, 372, 374.

Wheeler, 391, 405.

Whigs, 176, 286, 371.

Whiskey Insurrection, 282; Whiskey ring, 404.

White Plains, 192.

Whitman, Marcus, 260, 289; Walt Whitman, 371.

Whitney, 284.

Whittier, 286, 371, 403.

Wiandots, 102.

Wilkinson, 281.

Willamette, 260.

William and Mary, 121; William and Mary College, 121; King William's War, 121.

Williams, 71, 72, 119.

Wilmington, 374.

Wilson, 404.

Wilson's Creek, 373.

Winchester, 374.

Winnebagoes, 76.
Winslow, 66, 118.
Winthrop, 72.
Wisconsin, 76, 291.
Witchcraft excitement, 121.
Wolfe, 110, 111, 123.
Woman Snffrage, 399.
Writs of Assistance, 132.

Wyeth, 259. Wyoming, 407; Wyoming massacre, 193.

Yale College, 122. Yeardley (yeerd'ly), 77. Yellowstone, 218. York, Congress at, 168, 192. Yorktown, 186–188, 194.

Cornell University Library

arV192

Studies in American history /

3 1924 031 172 350

